

MACE'S ELEMENTARY HISTORY



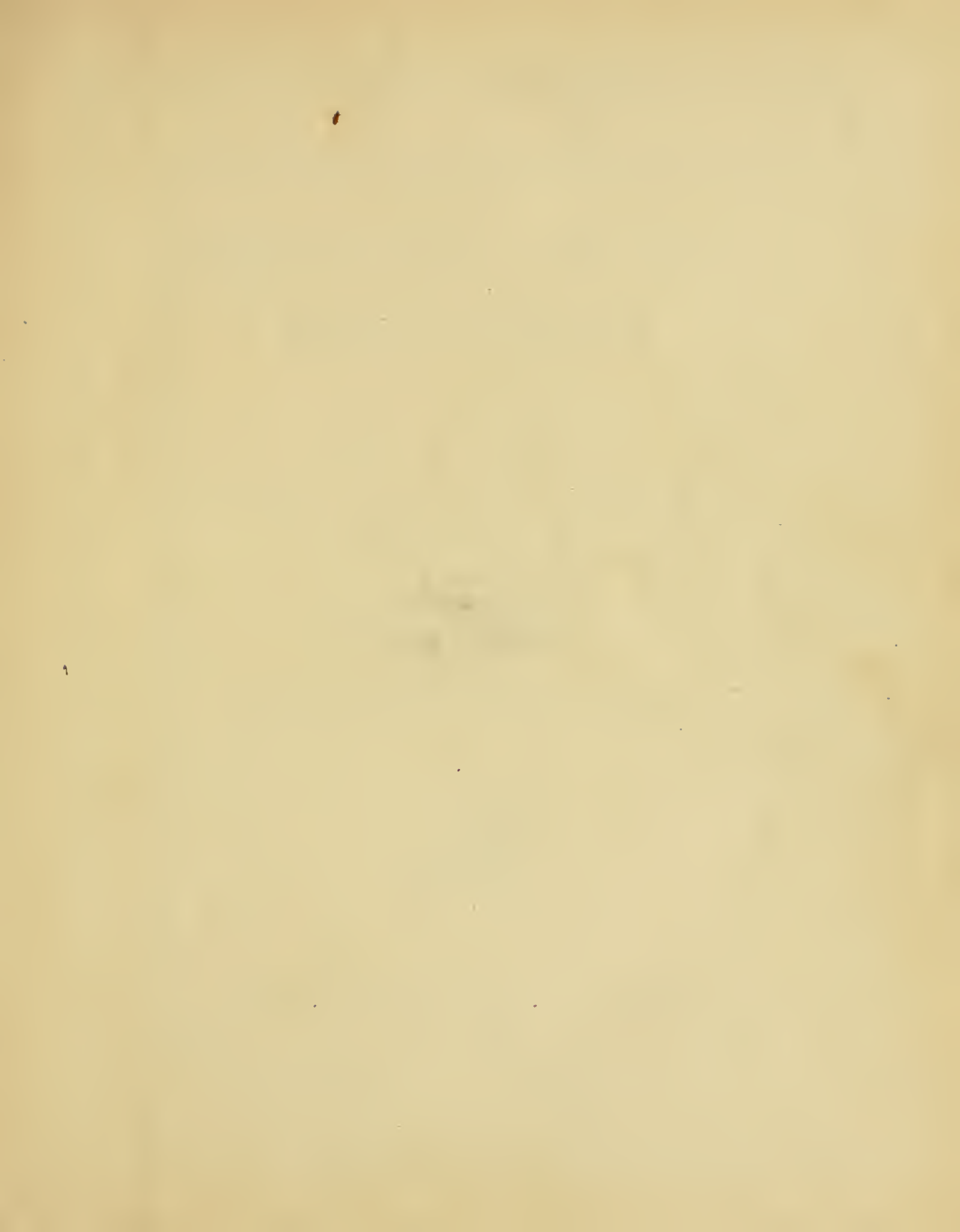


Class E178

Book .M1452

Copyright N^o

COPYRIGHT DEPOSIT.



An
Elementary History
Stories of Heroism

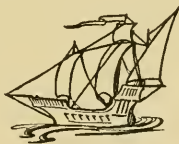
by

WILLIAM H. MACE

*Professor of History in Syracuse University, Author of
"Methods in History," "A Working Manual of
American History," and "A School
History of the United States"*

Illustrated by
HOMER W. COLBY

Portraits by
JACQUES REICH and P. R. AUDIBERT



RAND McNALLY & COMPANY

Chicago

New York

London

E 178
.1
M1452

A Primary History
Copyright 1900.
By WILLIAM H. MACE
All rights reserved
An Elementary History
Copyright, 1914.
By WILLIAM H. MACE



The Rand-McNally Press
Chicago

AUG 24 1914

✓
©CLA379228

no,

THE TABLE OF CONTENTS

	PAGE
THE NORTHMEN, WHO WERE THE FIRST TO REACH AMERICA	1
Leif Ericson Who Discovered Vinland	1
EARLY EXPLORERS IN AMERICA	2
Christopher Columbus, the First Great Man in American History	2
Ponce de Leon, Who Sought a Marvelous Land and Was Disappointed	15
Cortés, Who Found the Rich City of Mexico	17
Pizarro, Who Found the Richest City in the World	21
Coronado, Who Penetrated Southwestern United States but Found Nothing but Beautiful Scenery	22
De Soto, the Discoverer of the Mississippi	23
Magellan, Who Proved that the World is Round	26
THE MEN WHO MADE AMERICA KNOWN TO ENGLAND AND WHO CHECKED THE PROGRESS OF SPAIN	30
John Cabot also Searches for a Shorter Route to India and Finds the Mainland of North America	30
Sir Francis Drake, the English "Dragon," Who Sailed the Spanish Main and Who "Singed the King of Spain's Beard"	33
Sir Walter Raleigh, the Friend of Elizabeth, Plants a Colony in America to Check the Power of Spain	38
THE MEN WHO PLANTED NEW FRANCE IN AMERICA, EXPLORED THE GREAT LAKE REGION, FOUNDED QUEBEC, AND PENETRATED THE MISSISSIPPI VALLEY	44
Samuel de Champlain, the Father of New France	44
Joliet and Marquette, Fur Trader and Missionary, Explore the Mississippi Valley for New France	47
WHAT THE DUTCH ACCOMPLISHED IN THE COLONIZATION OF THE NEW WORLD	49
Henry Hudson, Whose Discoveries Led Dutch Traders to Colonize New Netherland	49
FAMOUS PEOPLE IN EARLY VIRGINIA	54
John Smith, the Savior of Virginia, and Pocahontas its Good Angel	54
Industries, Manners, and Customs of the First Settlers	61
SOME OLD ENGLAND PURITANS IN NEW ENGLAND	63
Miles Standish, the Pilgrim Soldier, and the Story of "Plymouth Rock"	63

	PAGE
John Winthrop, the Founder of Boston	71
John Eliot, a Successful Missionary to the Indians	73
King Philip, Indian Chief and Hater of White Men	73
Industries, Manners, and Customs	74
THE MEN WHO PLANTED COLONIES FOR MANY KINDS OF PEOPLE	79
Peter Stuyvesant, the Great Dutch Governor	76
Manners and Customs of New Netherland	80
William Penn, the Quaker, Who Founded the City of Brotherly Love	82
Quaker Ways in Old Pennsylvania	87
James Oglethorpe, the Founder of Georgia as a Home for English Debtors, as a Place for Persecuted Protestants, and as a Barrier against the Spaniards	89
Industries, Manners, and Customs of the Southern Planters	92
ROBERT CAVELIER DE LA SALLE, WHO FOLLOWED THE FATHER OF WATERS TO ITS MOUTH, AND ESTABLISHED NEW FRANCE FROM CANADA TO THE GULF OF MEXICO	94
La Salle Pushed Forward the Work Begun by Joliet and Marquette	94
Men of New France	100
GEORGE WASHINGTON, THE FIRST GENERAL AND FIRST PRESIDENT OF THE UNITED STATES	101
The "Father of His Country"	101
THE MAN WHO HELPED WIN INDEPENDENCE BY WINNING THE HEARTS OF FRENCH- MEN FOR AMERICA	128
Benjamin Franklin, the Wisest American of His Time	128
PATRICK HENRY AND SAMUEL ADAMS, FAMOUS MEN OF THE REVOLUTION, WHO DEFENDED AMERICA BY TONGUE AND PEN	139
Patrick Henry, the Orator of the Revolution	139
Samuel Adams, the Firebrand of the Revolution	146
THE MEN WHO FOUGHT FOR AMERICAN INDEPENDENCE WITH GUN AND SWORD	157
Nathan Hale	157
Generals Greene, Morgan, and Marion, the Men Who Helped Win the South from the British	160
THE MEN WHO HELPED WIN INDEPENDENCE FIGHTING ENGLAND ON THE SEA	171
Paul Jones, a Scotchman, Who Won the Great Victory in the French Ship, "Bon Homme Richard"	171
John Barry, Who Won More Sea Fights in the Revolution than Any Other Captain	175

The Table of Contents

v

	PAGE
FOREIGNERS WHO CAME OVER THE SEA TO HELP WASHINGTON WIN INDEPENDENCE	180
Marquis de Lafayette	180
Baron von Steuben	183
Tadeusz Kosciuszko	183
Casimir Pulaski	183
Johann de Kalb	184
THE MEN WHO CROSSED THE MOUNTAINS, DEFEATED THE INDIANS AND BRITISH, AND MADE THE MISSISSIPPI RIVER THE FIRST WESTERN BOUNDARY OF THE UNITED STATES	185
Daniel Boone, the Hunter and Pioneer of Kentucky	185
John Sevier, "Nolichucky Jack"	192
George Rogers Clark, the Hero of Vincennes	198
DEVELOPMENT OF THE NEW REPUBLIC	207
Eli Whitney, Who Invented the Cotton Gin and Changed the History of the South	207
Thomas Jefferson, Who Wrote the Declaration of Independence, Founded the Democratic Party, and Purchased the Louisiana Territory	210
Lewis and Clark, American Explorers in the Oregon Country	218
Oliver Hazard Perry, Victor in the Battle of Lake Erie	224
Andrew Jackson, the Victor of New Orleans	225
THE MEN WHO MADE THE NATION GREAT BY THEIR INVENTIONS AND DISCOVERIES	235
Robert Fulton, the Inventor of the Steamboat	235
Samuel F. B. Morse, Inventor of the Telegraph	241
Cyrus West Field, Who Laid the Atlantic Cable between America and Europe	245
Thomas A. Edison, the Greatest Inventor of Electrical Machinery in the World	248
THE MEN WHO WON TEXAS, THE OREGON COUNTRY, AND CALIFORNIA	254
Sam Houston, Hero of San Jacinto	254
David Crockett, Great Hunter and Hero of the Alamo	258
John C. Fremont, the Pathfinder of the Rocky Mountains	260
Spanish Missions in the Southwest	265
THE THREE GREATEST STATESMEN OF THE MIDDLE PERIOD	269
Henry Clay, the Founder of the Whig Party and the Great Pacificator	269
Daniel Webster, the Defender of the Constitution	275
John C. Calhoun, the Champion of Nullification	280
ABRAHAM LINCOLN, THE LIBERATOR AND MARTYR	286
A Poor Boy Becomes a Great Man	286

	PAGE
THE MAN WHO LED THE CONFEDERATE ARMIES	298
Robert Edward Lee	298
OTHER HEROES OF THE CIVIL WAR	305
Ulysses S. Grant	305
"Stonewall" Jackson	307
David Glascoe Farragut	308
RESOURCES AND INDUSTRIES OF OUR COUNTRY	310
How Farm and Factory Helped Build the Nation	310
Mines, Mining, and Manufactures	313
<i>The Index</i>	316

MACE'S ELEMENTARY HISTORY STORIES OF HEROISM

THE NORTHMEN DISCOVER THE NEW WORLD

LEIF ERICSON, WHO DISCOVERED VINLAND

1. The Voyages of the Northmen. The Northmen were a bold sea-faring people who lived in northern Europe hundreds of years ago. Once when on one of their voyages of adventure, the boldest sailed so far to the west that they reached the shores of Iceland and Greenland, where many of them settled. Among these were Eric the Red and his son Leif Ericson.

The
North-
men
discover
Iceland
and
Green-
land

Now Leif had heard of a land to the south of Greenland from some Northmen who had been driven far south in a great storm, and he determined to set out in search of it. After sailing for many days he reached the shore of this New World. Because of the abundance of grapes that the Northmen found along the shore, they named the new land Vinland, a country of grapes.

Leif's discovery caused great excitement among his people, and ever after he was known as Leif the Lucky. After hearing his story of Vinland, some of them could hardly wait until the winter was over, and the snow and ice broken up, so as to let their ships go out once more.

This time Thorvald, one of Leif's brothers, led the expedition. On reaching land, as they stepped ashore, he exclaimed: "It is a fair region and here I should like to make my home." Thorvald was killed in a battle with the Indians and was buried where he had wanted to build his home. The Northmen continued to visit the new land, but the Indians finally became so unfriendly that the Northmen went away and never came again.

EARLY EXPLORERS IN AMERICA

CHRISTOPHER COLUMBUS, THE FIRST GREAT MAN IN AMERICAN HISTORY

2. Old Trade Routes to Asia. More than 450 years ago Christopher Columbus spent his boyhood in the queer old Italian town of Genoa on the shore of the Mediterranean Sea. Even in that far-away time, the Mediterranean was dotted with the white sails of ships busy in carrying the richest trade in the world. But no merchants were richer or had bolder sailors than those of Columbus's own town.



THE BOY COLUMBUS
After the statue by Giulio Monteverde in the Museum
of Fine Arts, Boston

Genoa had her own trading routes to India, China, and Japan. Her vessels sailed eastward and crossed the Black Sea to the very shores of Asia. There they found stores of rich shawls and silks and of costly spices and jewels, which had already come on the backs of horses and camels from the Far East. As fast as winds and oars could carry them, these merchant ships hastened back to Genoa where other ships and sailors were waiting to carry their goods to all parts of Europe.

Every day the boys of Genoa, as they played along the wharves, could see the ships from different countries and could hear the stories of adventure told by the sailors. No wonder Christopher found it hard to work at his father's trade of combing wool; he liked to hear stories of the sea and to make maps and to study

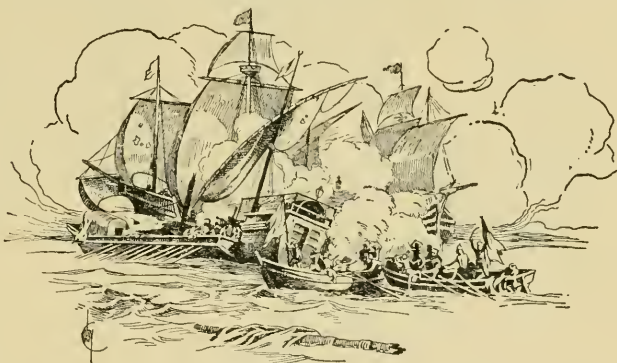
Boyhood
of
Colum-
bus

Why
Colum-
bus
learned
to like
the sea

geography far better than he liked to comb wool or study arithmetic or grammar. He was eager to go to sea and while but a boy he made his first voyage. He often sailed with a kinsman, who was an old sea captain. These trips were full of danger, not only from storms, but from sea robbers with whom the sailors often had hard fights.

While Columbus was growing to be a man, the wise and noble Prince Henry of Portugal was sending his sailors down the unknown west coast of Africa to find a new way to India. The Turks, by capturing Constantinople, had destroyed Genoa's overland trade routes.

Prince
Henry's
work



A SEA FIGHT BETWEEN GENOESE AND TURKS

The Genoese were great seamen and traders. When the Turks tried to ruin their trade with the Far East by destroying their routes many fierce sea fights took place

The bold deeds of Henry's sailors drew many seamen to Lisbon, the capital of Portugal. Columbus went, too, where he was made welcome by his brother and other friends. Here he soon earned enough by making maps to send money home to aid his parents, who were very poor.

Colum-
bus goes
to Lisbon

Columbus was now a large, fine-looking young man with ruddy face and bright eyes, so that he soon won the heart and the hand of a beautiful lady, the daughter of one of Prince Henry's old seamen. Columbus was in the midst of exciting scenes. Lisbon was full of learned men, and of sailors longing to go on voyages.

Sailors
hope to
reach
India



THE HOME OF COLUMBUS, GENOA

Colum-
bus's
new idea

A tricky
king

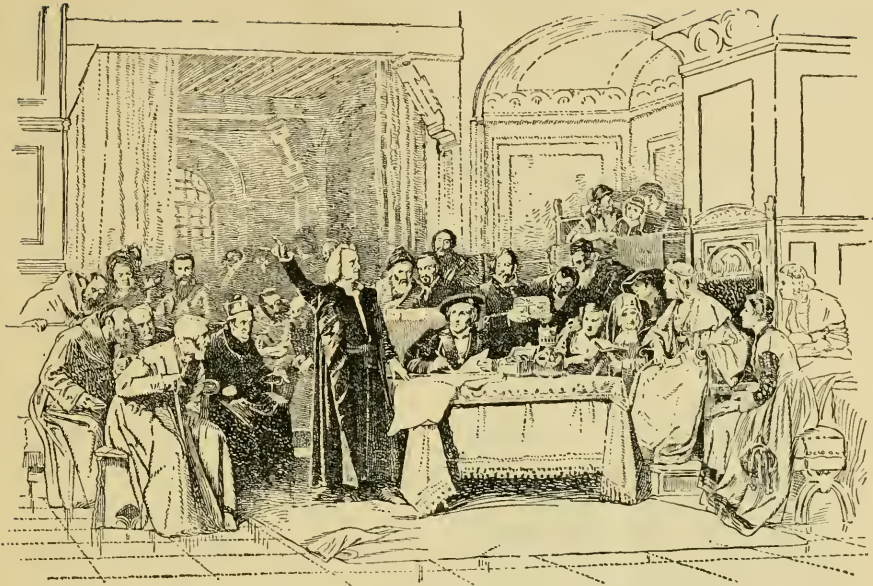
Year after year new voyages were made in the hope of reaching India, but after many trials, the sailors of Portugal had explored only halfway down the African coast.

It is said that one day while looking over his father-in-law's maps, Columbus was startled by the idea of reaching India by sailing directly west. He thought that this could be done, because he believed the world to be round, although all people, except the most educated, then thought the world flat. Columbus also believed that the world was much smaller than it really is.

The best map of that time located India, China, and Japan about where America is. For once, a mistake in geography turned out well. Columbus, believing his route to be the shortest, spent several years in gathering proof that India was directly west. He went on long voyages and talked with many old sailors about the signs of land to the westward.

Finally Columbus laid his plans before the new King of Portugal, John II. The king secretly sent out a ship to test the plan. His sailors,

Christopher Columbus



COLUMBUS SOLICITING AID FROM ISABELLA

From the painting by the Bohemian artist, Vaczlav Brozik, now in the Metropolitan Museum, New York

however, became frightened and returned before going very far. Columbus was indignant at this mean trick and immediately started for Spain (1484), taking with him his little son, Diego.

3. Columbus at the Court of Spain. The King and Queen of Spain, Ferdinand and Isabella, received him kindly; but some of their wise men did not believe that the world is round, and declared Columbus foolish for thinking that countries to the eastward could be reached by sailing to the westward. He was not discouraged at first, because other wise men spoke in his favor to the king and queen.

It was hard for these rulers to aid him now because a long and costly war had used up all of Spain's money. Columbus was very

What the Spaniards thought of Columbus

poor and his clothes became threadbare. Some good people took pity on him and gave him money but others made sport of the

Some
thought
him
crazy



LA RABIDA CONVENT NEAR PALOS

At this monastery, on his way to France, Columbus met the good prior

homeless stranger and insulted him. The very boys in the street, it is said, knowingly tapped their heads when he went by to show that they thought him a bit crazy.

4. **New Friends of America.** Disappointed and discouraged, after several years of weary waiting, Columbus set out on foot to try his fortunes in France. One day while passing along the road, he came to a convent or monastery. Here he begged a drink of water and some bread for his tired and hungry son, Diego, who was then about twelve years of age. The good prior of the monastery was struck by the fine face and the noble bearing of the stranger, and began to talk with him. When Columbus explained his bold plan of finding a shorter route to India, the prior sent in haste to the little port of Palos, near by, for some old seamen, among them

Begs
bread
for his
son



COLUMBUS AT THE CONVENT OF LA RABIDA

Columbus explaining his plan for reaching India to the prior and Pinzon, the great sailor

a great sailor, named Pinzon. These men agreed with Columbus, for they had seen proofs of land to the westward.

The prior himself hastened with all speed to his good friend, Queen Isabella, and begged her not to allow Columbus to go to France, for the honor of such a discovery ought to belong to Isabella and to Spain. How happy was the prior when the queen gave him money to pay the expenses for Columbus

The prior
goes to
Queen
Isabella

to visit her in proper style! With a heart full of hope, once more Columbus hastened to the Spanish Court, only to find both king and queen busy in getting ready for the last great battle of the long war. Spain won a great victory, and while the people were still rejoicing, the queen's officers met Columbus to make plans for the long-thought-of voyage. But because the queen refused to make him governor over all the lands he might discover, Columbus mounted his mule and rode away, once more bent on seeking aid from France.



Isabella's
kindness

CHRISTOPHER COLUMBUS

From the portrait by Antonis van Moor, painted in 1542, from two miniatures in the Palace of Pardo. Reproduced by permission of C. F. Gunther, Chicago

Some of the queen's men hastened to her and begged her to recall Columbus. Isabella hesitated, for she had but little money in her treasury. Finally, it is said, she declared that she would pledge her jewels, if necessary, to raise the money for a fleet. A swift horseman overtook Columbus, and brought him back. The great man cried with joy when Isabella told him that she would fit out an expedition and make him governor over all the lands he might discover.

Why
Colum-
bus did
not go to
France

Columbus now took a solemn vow to use the riches obtained by his discovery in fitting out a great army which should drive out of the holy city of Jerusalem those very Turks who had destroyed the greatness of his native city.

Colum-
bus's
unselfish
vow



THE SANTA MARIA, THE FLAGSHIP OF COLUMBUS

*From a recent reconstruction
approved by the Spanish
Minister of Marine*

First
voyage
begun

sorrowing friends, and the little fleet of three vessels and ninety stout-hearted men sailed bravely out of the harbor, August 3, 1492.

Columbus commanded the Santa Maria, the largest vessel, only about ninety feet long. Pinzon was captain of the Pinta, the fastest vessel, and Pinzon's brother of the Niña, the smallest vessel. The expedition stopped at the Canary Islands to make the last

The stop
at the
Canary
Islands



COLUMBUS BIDDING FAREWELL TO THE PRIOR
From the painting by Ricardo Balaca

preparations for the long and dangerous voyage. The sailors were in no hurry to go farther, and many of them broke down and cried as the western shores of the Canaries faded slowly from their sight.

After many days, the ships sailed into an ocean filled with seaweed, and so wide that no sailor could see the end. Would the ships stick fast or were they about to run aground on some hidden island and their crews be left to perish? The little fleet was already in the region of the trade winds whose gentle but steady breezes were carrying them farther and farther from home. If these winds never changed, they thought, how could the ships ever make their way back.

The sailors begged Columbus to turn back, but he encouraged them by pointing out signs of land, such as flocks of birds, and green branches floating in the sea. He told them that according to the maps they were near Japan and offered a prize to the one who should first see land. One day, not long after, Pinzon shouted, "Land! Land! I claim my prize." But he had only seen a dark bank of clouds far away on the horizon. The sailors, thinking land near, grew cheerful and climbed into the rigging and kept watch for several days. But no land came into view and they grew more downhearted than ever. Because Columbus would not turn back, they threatened to throw him into the sea and declared that he was a madman leading them on to certain death.

6. Columbus the Real Discoverer. One beautiful evening, after the sailors sang their vesper hymn, Columbus made a speech, pointing out how God had favored them with clear skies and gentle winds for their voyage, and said that since they were so near land the ships must not sail any more after midnight. That very night Columbus saw, far across the dark waters, the glimmering light of a torch. A few hours later the Pinta fired a joyful gun to tell that land had been surely found. All was excitement on board

The sailors lost heart, but Columbus grew hopeful

Land at last discovered

the ships and not an eye was closed that night. Overcome with joy, some of the sailors threw their arms around Columbus's neck, others kissed his hands, and those who had opposed him most, fell upon their knees, begged his pardon, and promised faithful obedience in the future.

On Friday morning, October 12, 1492, Columbus, dressed in a robe of bright red and carrying the royal flag of Spain, stepped upon the shores of the New World. Around him were gathered his officers and sailors, dressed in their best clothes and carrying flags, banners, and crosses. They fell upon their knees, kissed the earth, and with tears of joy, gave thanks. Columbus then drew his sword and declared that the land belonged to the King and Queen of Spain.

7. How the People Came to be Called "Indians." When the people of this land first saw the ships of Columbus, they imagined that the Spaniards had come up from the sea or down from the sky



THE ARMOR OF
COLUMBUS

Now in the Royal
Palace, Madrid



THE LANDING OF COLUMBUS

From the painting by Dioscoro Puebla, now in the National
Museum, Madrid

and that they were beings from Heaven. They, therefore, at first ran frightened into the woods. Afterwards, as they came back, they fell upon their knees as if to worship the white men.

Taking
possession of
the
country
for
Spain

Columbus called the island on which he landed San Salvador and named the people Indians because he believed he had discovered an island of East India, although he had really discovered one of the Bahama Islands, and, as we suppose, the one known to-day as San Salvador. He and his men were greatly disappointed at the appearance of these new people, for instead of seeing them dressed in rich clothes, wearing ornaments of gold and silver, and living in great cities, as they had expected, they saw only half-naked, painted savages living in rude huts.

8. Discovery of Cuba. After a few days Columbus sailed farther on and found the land now called Cuba, which he believed was Japan. Here his own ship was wrecked, leaving him only the Niña, for the Pinta had gone, he knew not where. He was now greatly alarmed, for if the Niña should be wrecked he and his men would be lost and no one would ever hear of his great discovery. He decided to return to Spain at once, but some of the sailors were so in love with the beautiful islands and the kindly people that they resolved to stay and plant the first Spanish colony in the New World. After collecting some gold and silver articles, plants, animals, birds, Indians, and other proofs of his discovery, Columbus spread the sails of the little Niña for the homeward voyage, January 4, 1493.

First
Spanish
colony
planted
in the
New
World

9. Columbus Returns to Spain. On the way home a great storm knocked the little vessel about for four days. All gave up hope, and Columbus wrote two accounts of his discovery, sealed them in barrels, and set them adrift. A second storm drove the Niña to Lisbon, in Portugal, where Columbus told the story of his great voyage. Some of the Portuguese wished to imprison Columbus, but the king would not, and in the middle of March, the Niña sailed into the harbor of Palos.

The
home-
ward
voyage



THE RECEPTION OF COLUMBUS AT BARCELONA

From the celebrated painting by the distinguished Spanish artist, Ricardo Balaca

The joy
of Palos

What joy in that little town! The bells were set ringing and the people ran shouting through the streets to the wharf, for they had never given up Columbus and his crew as lost. To add to their joy, that very night when the streets were bright with torches, the *Pinta*, believed to have been lost, also sailed into the harbor.

The
people's
reception

Columbus immediately wrote a letter to the king and queen, who bade him hasten to them in Barcelona. All along his way, even the villages and the country roads swarmed with people anxious to see the great discoverer and to look upon the strange people and the queer products which he had brought from India, as they thought.

As he came near the city, a large company of fine people rode out to give him welcome. He entered the city like a hero. The streets, the balconies, the doors, the windows, the very house tops were crowded with happy people eager to catch sight of him.

In a great room of the palace, Ferdinand and Isabella had placed their throne. Into this room marched Columbus surrounded by the noblest people of Spain, but none more noble looking than the hero. The king and queen arose and Columbus fell upon his knees and kissed their hands. They gave him a seat near them and bade him tell the strange story of his wonderful voyage.

Recep-
tion by
the king
and
queen

When he finished, the king and queen fell upon their knees and raised their hands in thanksgiving. All the people did the same, and a great choir filled the room with a song of praise. The reception was now over and the people, shouting and cheering, followed Columbus to his home. How like a dream it must have seemed to Columbus, who only a year or so before, in threadbare clothes, was begging bread at the monastery near Palos!

10. The Second Voyage. But all Spain was on fire for another expedition. Every seaport was now anxious to furnish ships, and every bold sailor was eager to go. In a few months a fleet of seventeen fine ships and fifteen hundred people sailed away under the command of Columbus (1493) to search for the rich cities of their dreams. After four years of exploration and discovery among the islands that soon after began to be called the West Indies, Columbus sailed back to Spain greatly disappointed. He had found no rich cities nor mines of gold and silver.

Fails to
find rich
cities

11. The Third and Fourth Voyages. On his third voyage (1498) Columbus sailed along the northern shores of South America, but when he reached the West Indies, the Spaniards who had settled there refused to obey him, seized him, put him in chains,

Death of
Colum-
bus



COLUMBUS IN CHAINS

After the clay model by the Spanish sculptor, Vallmitjana, at Havana

Naming
the
country

he had discovered a new world. In 1501 Amerigo Vespucci made a voyage to South America. Without intending to wrong Columbus, the country he saw, and afterward all land to the northward, was called America. Spain was too busy exploring the new lands to give proper heed to the death of the man whose discoveries would, after a few years, make the kingdom richer even than India. But it was left to the greatest nation in all the western world to do full honor to the memory of Columbus in the World's Columbian Exposition at Chicago (1892-1893).

Honor to
his mem-
ory

and sent him back to Spain. But the good queen set Columbus free and sent him on his fourth voyage (1502). He explored the coast of what is now Central America, but afterward met shipwreck on the island of Jamaica. He returned to Spain a broken-hearted man because he had failed to find the fabled riches of India. He died soon afterward, not knowing that



THE HOUSE IN WHICH COLUMBUS DIED

This house is in Valladolid, Spain, and stands in a street named after the great discoverer

SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

The Leading Facts. 1. Columbus was born near the shores of the Mediterranean and trained for the sea by study and by experience. 2. The people of Europe traded with the Far East, but

the Turks destroyed their trade routes. 3. Columbus was drawn to Portugal because of Prince Henry's great work. 4. Columbus thought he could sail west and reach the rich cities of the East. 5. After many discouragements he won aid from Isabella and discovered the Bahama Islands, Cuba, and Haiti. 6. The king and queen of Spain received Columbus with great ceremony. 7. Columbus made three more voyages, but was disappointed in not finding the rich cities of India.

Study Questions. 1. Make a list of articles which the caravans (camels and horses) of the East brought to the Black Sea. 2. What studies fitted Columbus for the sea? 3. Why were there so many sailors in Lisbon? 4. How did Columbus get his idea of the earth's shape? 5. What did men in Portugal and Spain think of this idea? 6. Tell the story of Columbus in Spain. 7. What is the meaning of the vow taken by him? 8. Make a picture in your mind of the first voyage of Columbus. Read the poem "Columbus," by Joaquin Miller. 9. Shut your eyes and imagine you see Columbus land and take possession of the country. 10. Why was Columbus so disappointed? 11. How did the people of Palos act when Columbus returned? 12. Picture the reception of Columbus by the people, and by the king and queen. 13. Why was Columbus disappointed in the second expedition? 14. What did Columbus believe he had accomplished? 15. What had he failed to do that he hoped to do?

Suggested Readings. COLUMBUS: Hart, *Colonial Children*, 4-6; Pratt, *Exploration and Discovery*, 17-32; Wright, *Children's Stories in American History*, 38-60; Higginson, *American Explorers*, 19-52; Glascock, *Stories of Columbia*, 10-35; McMurry, *Pioneers on Land and Sea*, 122-160; Brooks, *The True Story of Christopher Columbus*, 1-103, 112-172.

PONCE DE LEON, WHO SOUGHT A MARVELOUS LAND AND WAS DISAPPOINTED

12. Ponce de Leon. When the Spaniards came to America they were told many strange stories by the Indians about many marvelous places. Perhaps most wonderful of all was the story of Bimini, where every day was perfect and every one was happy. Here was also the magic fountain which would make old men young once more, and keep young men from growing old.

When Columbus sailed to America for the second time he brought with him a brave and able soldier, named Ponce de Leon.

De Leon spent many years on the new continent fighting for his king against the Indians. After a while he was made governor of Porto Rico. While thus serving his country he too heard the story of this wonderful land which no white man had explored. Like most Spaniards, he loved adventure. Also he was weary of the cares of his office, and soon resolved to find this land and to explore it.

In the spring of 1513 De Leon set sail with three ships from Porto Rico. Somewhere to the north lay this land of perfect days. Northward he steered for many days, past lovely tropical islands. At last, on Easter Sunday, an unknown shore appeared. On its banks were splendid trees. Flowers bloomed everywhere, and clear streams came gently down to the sea. De Leon named the new land Florida and took possession of it for the King of Spain.

Various duties kept him away from the new land for eight years after its discovery. In 1521 he again set out from Porto Rico, with priests and soldiers, and amply provided with cattle and horses and goods. He wrote to the King of Spain: "Now I return to that island, if it please God's will, to settle it." He was an old man then and hoped to found a peaceful and prosperous colony of which he was to be governor. But Indians attacked his settlement and sickness laid low many of his men. He had been in Florida only a short time when he himself was wounded in a fight with the Indians. Feeling that he would soon die, he hastily set sail with all his men for Cuba, where he died shortly after.

De Leon had failed to find the wonderful things of which the Indians had told him. He had failed even to establish the colony of which he was to be governor. But De Leon did discover a new and great land which is now one of the states of the Union. To him also goes the honor of having been the first man to make a settlement in what is now the United States.

De Leon
sets out
to find
Bimini

The first
settle-
ment in
America
founded

CORTÉS, WHO FOUND THE RICH CITY OF MEXICO

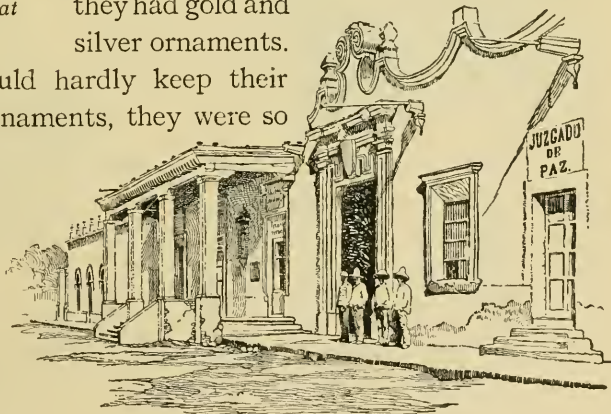
13. **Cortés Invades Mexico.** Columbus died disappointed because he had not found the rich cities which everybody believed were somewhere in India. Foremost among Spanish soldiers was Hernando Cortés, who, in 1519, sailed with twelve ships from Cuba to the coast of what is now Mexico. His soldiers and sailors were hardly on land before he sank every one of his ships. His men now had to fight. They wore coats of iron, were armed with swords and guns, and they had a few cannon and horses. Every few miles they saw villages and now and then cities. The Indians wore cotton clothes, and in their ears and around their necks and their ankles they had gold and silver ornaments.

Cortés
sank
his
ships



THE ARMOR OF CORTÉS
Now in the museum at
Madrid

The Spaniards could hardly keep their hands off these ornaments, they were so eager for gold. They were now sure that the rich cities were near at hand, which Columbus had hoped to find, and which every Spaniard fully believed would be found.



Spaniards
saw signs
of riches

HOUSE OF CORTÉS, COYOACAN, MEXICO
Over the main doorway are graven the arms of the Conqueror,
who lived here while the building of Coyoacan, which
is older than the City of Mexico, went on

Difference in
Spanish
and Indian
ways of
fighting



GUATEMOTZIN

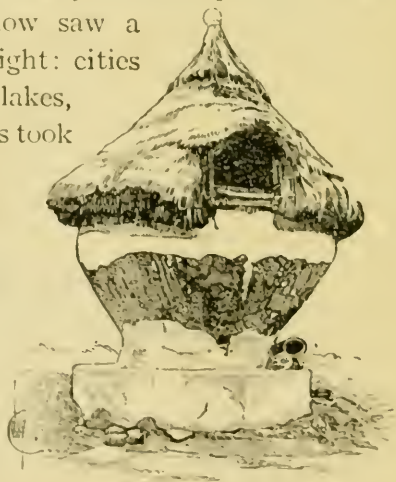
The nephew of Montezuma and the last Indian emperor of Mexico. After the statue by Don Francisco Jimenez.

where canoes carried people from place to place. It all seemed like a dream. But they hastened forward to the great capital city. It, too, was built over a lake, larger than any seen before and it could be reached only along three great roads of solid mason work.

These roads ran to the center of the city where stood, in a great

The people of Mexico had neither guns nor swords, but they were brave. Near the first large city, thousands upon thousands of fiercely painted warriors wearing leather shields, rushed upon the little band of Spaniards. For two days the fighting went on, but not a single Spaniard was killed. The arrows of the Indians could not pierce iron coats, but the sharp Spanish swords could easily cut leather shields. The simple natives thought they must be fighting against gods instead of men, and gave up the battle.

Day after day Cortés marched on until a beautiful valley broke upon his view. His men now saw a wonderful sight: cities built over lakes, where canals took the place of streets and



AN INDIAN CORN BIN, TLAXCALA

These are community or public bins, stand in the open roadway, and are still fashioned as in the days of Cortés

A great
Indian
City

square, a wonderful temple. The top of this temple could be reached by one hundred fourteen stone steps running around the outside. The city contained sixty thousand people, and there were many stone buildings on the flat roofs of which the natives had beautiful flower gardens.

Montezuma, the Indian ruler, received Cortés and his men very politely and gave the officers a house near the great temple. But Cortés was in danger. What if the Indians should rise against him? To guard against this danger, Cortés compelled Montezuma to live in the Spanish quarters. The people did not like to see their beloved ruler a prisoner in his own city.

But no outbreak came until the Spaniards, fearing an attack, fell upon the Indians, who were holding a religious festival, and killed hundreds of them. The Indian council immediately chose Montezuma's brother to be ruler and the whole city rose to drive out the now hated Spaniards. The streets and even the house tops were filled with angry warriors. Cortés compelled Montezuma to stand upon the roof of the Spanish fort and command his people to stop fighting.

But he was ruler no longer. He was struck down by his own warriors, and died in a few days, a broken-hearted man. After several days of hard fighting, Cortés and his men tried to get out of

**Cortés
makes
Monte-
zuma a
prisoner**



HERNANDO CORTÉS

*From the portrait painted by Charles
Wilson Peale, now in Independence
Hall, Philadelphia*

**The
Span-
iards
driven
out of
the city**



CORTÉS BEFORE MONTEZUMA

After the original painting by the Mexican artist, J. Ortega, now in the National Gallery of San Carlos, Mexico

the city but the Indians fell on the little army and killed more than half of the Spanish soldiers before they could get away.

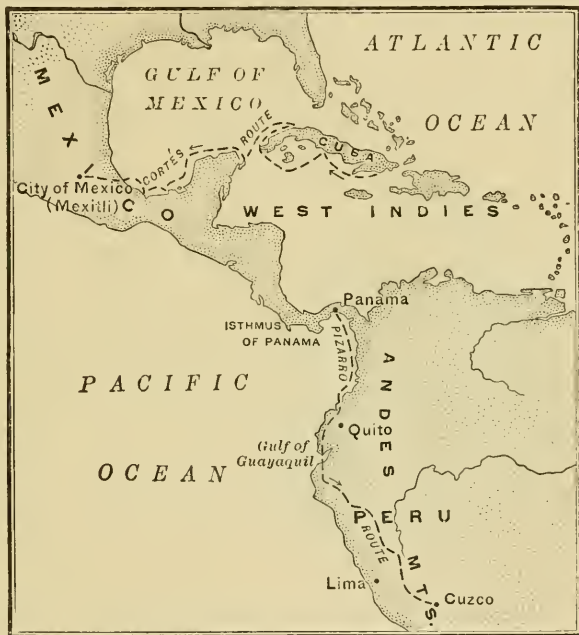
14. Cortés Conquers Mexico. Because of jealousy a Spanish army was sent to bring Cortés back to Cuba. By capturing this army Cortés secured more soldiers. Once more he marched against the city. What could bows and arrows and spears and stones do against the terrible horsemen and their great swords, or against the Spanish foot soldiers with their muskets and cannon? At length the great Indian city was almost destroyed, but thousands of its brave defenders were killed before the fighting ceased (1521). From this time on, the country gradually filled with Spanish settlers.

15. Cortés Visits Spain. After several years, Cortés longed to see his native land once more. He set sail, and reached the little

The great
Indian
city
almost
destroyed

port of Palos from which, many years before, the great Columbus had sailed in search of the rich cities of the Far East. Here now, was the very man who had found the cities and had returned to tell the story to his king and countrymen. All along the journey to the king the people now crowded to see Cortés, as they had once crowded to see Columbus.

Cortés afterwards returned to Mexico, where he spent a large part of his fortune in trying to improve the country. The Spanish king permitted great wrong to be done to Cortés and, like Columbus, the discoverer, Cortés, the conqueror, died neglected by the king whom he had made so rich. For three hundred years the mines of Mexico poured a constant stream of gold and silver into the lap of Spain.



Cortés
shares
Colum-
bus's fate

ROUTES OF THE CONQUERORS, CORTÉS AND PIZARRO
*Their conquests of Mexico and of Peru brought untold
stores of riches to Spain*

PIZARRO, WHO FOUND THE RICHEST CITY IN THE WORLD

16. Pizarro's Voyages. Another Spaniard, Francisco Pizarro, dreamed of finding riches greater than De Leon or Cortés had ever

Pizarro
finds
great
riches in
Peru

heard of. He set out for Peru with an army of two hundred men. Reaching the coast, he started inland and in a few days came to the foot of the Andes. Marching down the eastern side of the mountains, the Spaniards came upon the Inca, the native ruler, and his army. By trickery they made the Inca a prisoner, put him to death, and then subdued the army. The Spaniards then marched on to Cuzco, the capital of Peru, where they found enormous quantities of gold and silver. Never before in the history of the world had so many riches been found. This great wealth was divided among the Spaniards according to rank.

But the greedy Spaniards fell to quarreling and fighting among themselves, and Pizarro fell by the hand of one of his own men.

CORONADO, WHO PENETRATED SOUTHWESTERN UNITED STATES
BUT FOUND NOTHING BUT BEAUTIFUL SCENERY

17. Coronado's Search for Rich Cities. Stories of immensely rich cities to the north of Mexico led Francisco Coronado with a thousand men into the rocky regions of New Mexico and Arizona. They looked with wonder at the Grand Cañon of the Colorado, but they found no wealthy cities or temples ornamented with gold and silver.

They pushed farther north into Kansas and Nebraska, into the great western prairies with their immense seas of waving grass and herds of countless buffalo. "Crooked-back oxen" was the name the Spaniards gave the buffalo.

Coronado
finds no
gold or
silver

But Coronado was after gold and silver, and cared nothing for beautiful and interesting scenes. Disappointed, he turned southward and in 1542, after three years of wandering, reached home. He reported to the King of Spain that the region he had explored was too poor a place for him to plant colonies.

DE SOTO, THE DISCOVERER OF THE MISSISSIPPI

18. The Expedition to Florida. While Coronado and his men were searching in vain for hidden cities with golden temples, another band of men was wandering through the forests farther to the eastward. Hernando De Soto had been one of Pizarro's bravest soldiers. The news that this bold adventurer was to lead an expedition to Florida stirred all Spain. Many nobles sold their lands to fit out their sons to fight under so great a leader.

The Spanish settlers of Cuba gave a joyful welcome to De Soto and to the brave men from the home-land. After many festivals and solemn religious ceremonies, nine vessels, carrying many soldiers, twelve priests, six hundred horses, and a herd of swine, sailed for Florida (1539).

What a grand sight to the Indians as the men and horses clad in steel armor landed! There were richly-colored banners, beautiful crucifixes, and many things never before seen by the Indians. But this was by far the most cruel expedition yet planned.

Wherever the Spaniards marched Indians were seized as slaves and made to carry the baggage and do the hard work. If the Indian guides were false, they were burned at the stake or were torn to pieces by bloodhounds. Hence the Indians feared the Spaniards, and Indian guides often misled the Spanish soldiers on purpose to save the guides' own tribes from harm.



HERNANDO DE SOTO

After an engraving to be found in the works of the great Spanish historian, Herrera

The
settlers
of Cuba
welcome
De Soto

The
Span-
iards'
cruelty
to the
Indians

De Soto fought his way through forests and swamps to the head of Apalachee Bay, where he spent the winter. In the spring a guide led the army into what is now Georgia, in search of a country supposed to be rich in gold and ruled by a woman. The soldiers suffered and grumbled, but De Soto only turned the march farther northward.

The Appalachian Mountains caused them to turn south again until they reached the village of Mavilla (Mobile), where the Indians rushed

Attacked
by
Indians



DE SOTO DISCOVERS THE MIGHTY MISSISSIPPI

on them in great numbers and tried to crush the army. But Spanish swords and Spanish guns won the day against Indian arrows and Indian clubs. De Soto lost a number of men, at least a dozen horses, and the baggage of his entire army, yet he boldly refused to

send to the coast for the men and supplies waiting for him there.

19. The Discovery of the Mississippi. Again De Soto's men followed him northward, this time into what we know as northern Mississippi, where the second winter was spent in a deserted Indian village. In the spring he demanded two hundred Indians to carry baggage, but the chief and his men one night stole into camp, set fire to their own rude houses, gave the war whoop, frightened many horses into running away, and killed several of the Spaniards.

The army then marched westward for many days, wading swamps and wandering through forests so dense that at times they could not see the sun. At last, in 1541, a river was reached greater than any the Spaniards had ever seen. It was the Mississippi, more than a mile wide, rushing swiftly on at full flood toward the Gulf.

They
reached
a great
river

On barges made by their own hands, De Soto and his men crossed to the west bank of the broad stream. There they marched northward, probably as far as the region now known as Missouri, and then westward two hundred miles. Nothing but hardships met them on every hand. In the spring of 1542, the little army came upon the Mississippi again.

De Soto was tiring out. He grew sad and asked the Indians how far it was to the sea. But it was too far for the bold leader. A fever seized him, and after a few days he died, and at dead of night his companions buried him in the bosom of the great river he had discovered.

Burial of
De Soto

20. Only Half the Army Returns to Cuba. There were bold leaders still left in the army. They turned westward again, but after finding neither gold nor silver, they returned to the Mississippi and spent the winter on its banks. There they built boats, and then floated down to the Gulf. Only one half of the army returned to tell the sad tales of hardships, battles, and poverty.

Thus it came about that Coronado and De Soto proved that northward from Mexico there were no rich cities, such as Columbus had dreamed about, and such as Cortés and Pizarro had really found. Hence it was that the King of Spain and his brave adventurers took less interest in that part of North America which is now the United States, and more in Mexico and in South America.

What
Coronado
and De
Soto
proved to
the King
of Spain

MAGELLAN, WHO PROVED THAT THE WORLD IS ROUND

21. Magellan's Task. Columbus died believing that he had discovered a part of India. But he had not proved that the earth is round by sailing around it. This great task was left for Ferdinand Magellan, a Portuguese sailor. Columbus's great voyage had stirred up the Portuguese. One of their boldest sailors, Vasco da Gama, had reached India in 1498 by rounding Africa, and Magellan had made voyages for seven years among the islands of the East.

After returning to Portugal, Magellan sought the king's aid, but without success; then, like Columbus, he went to Spain, and in

Magellan,
too,
goes to
Spain



FERDINAND MAGELLAN

*From the portrait designed and engraved by
Ferdinand Selma in 1788*

less than two years his fleet of five vessels sailed for the coast of South America (1519). Severe storms tossed the vessels about for nearly a month. Food and water grew scarce. The sailors threatened to kill Magellan, but the brave captain, like Columbus, kept boldly on until he reached cold and stormy Patagonia.

It was Easter time, and the long, hard winter was already setting in. Finding a safe harbor and plenty of fish, Magellan

decided to winter there. But the captains of three ships refused to obey, and decided to kill Magellan and lead the fleet back to Spain. Magellan was too quick for them. He captured one of the ships, turned the cannon on the others, and soon forced them to surrender.

There were no more outbreaks that winter. One of the ships was wrecked. How glad the sailors were when, late in August,

His
sailors
rebel

they saw the first signs of spring! But they were not so happy when Magellan commanded the ships to sail still farther south in search of a passage to the westward.

In October, his little fleet entered a wide, deep channel and found rugged, snow-clad mountains rising high on both sides of them. Many of the sailors believed they had at last found the westward passage, and that it was now time to turn homeward.

But Magellan declared that he would "eat the leather off the ship's yards" rather than turn back. The sailors on one ship seized and bound the captain and sailed back to Spain. Magellan with but three ships sailed bravely on until a broad, quiet ocean broke upon his sight. He wept for joy, for he believed that now the western route to India had indeed been found. This new ocean, so calm and smooth, he named the Pacific, and all the world now calls the channel he discovered the Strait of Magellan.



Magellan's bold resolution

MAGELLAN'S FIRST VIEW OF THE PACIFIC OCEAN
Beyond the stormy strait he found the waters of the ocean smooth and quiet; hence its name Pacific, meaning peaceful

No man had yet sailed across the Pacific, and no man knew the distance. Magellan was as bold a sailor as ever sailed the main, and he had brave men with him. In November (1520) the three little ships boldly turned their prows toward India. On and on they sailed. Many of the crew, as they looked out upon a little island, saw land for the last time. Many thousand miles had yet to be sailed before land would again be seen. After long

The first voyage across the Pacific begins

weeks their food supply gave out and starvation stared them in the face. Many grew sick and died. The others had to eat leather taken from the ship's yards like so many hungry beasts.

How big the world seemed to these poor, starving sailors! But the captain never lost courage. Finally they beheld land. It was the group of islands now known as the Mariannes (Ladrones). Here they rested and feasted to their hearts' content.

Visits
the
Philip-
pines

Then Magellan pressed on to another group of islands which were afterwards called the Philippines, from King Philip of Spain.

Magellan
loses his
life for
his men

Here in a battle with the inhabitants, while bravely defending his sailors, Magellan was killed. Their great commander was gone and they were still far from Spain. Sadly his sailors continued the voyage, but only one of the vessels with about twenty men ever reached home to tell the story of that wonderful first voyage around the world.

What the
voyage
proved

Thus Magellan proved that Columbus was right in thinking the world round and that India could be reached by sailing to the west, while other men like Cortés and Pizarro found rich cities like those which Columbus had dreamed of finding.



MAGELLAN'S ROUTE AROUND THE WORLD

Magellan, the bold Portuguese sailor, discovered the strait that bears his name and planned the first successful trip made around the world

SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

The Leading Facts. 1. Ponce de Leon sailed from Porto Rico to find a land of which strange stories had been told of riches and of a fountain of eternal youth. 2. He reached Florida on Easter Sunday, 1513. 3. Eight years later he returned to found a settlement. 4. He was attacked by the Indians, wounded, and forced to return to Porto Rico, where he died of his wounds. 5. His is the distinction of being the first white man to plant a settlement in the United States after the discovery of America by Columbus. 6. Cortés marched against a rich city, afterward called Mexico, captured the ruler, and fought great battles with the people. 7. Cortés captured the city and ruled it for several years. 8. From this time on Mexico gradually filled with Spanish settlers. 9. Pizarro invaded Peru, the richest of all countries, captured and put to death the ruler. 10. Pizarro was killed by his own men. 11. Coronado marched north from Mexico into Arizona and New Mexico, but found no rich cities. 12. He wandered into the great prairies and the rocky country of Colorado but finally turned back in disappointment. 13. De Soto wandered over the country east of the Rocky Mountains in search of rich cities, but found a great river, the Mississippi, and later was buried in its waters. 14. Hence the Spaniards, eager for gold, went to Mexico and South America rather than farther to the north. 15. Columbus thought the world was round, but Magellan proved it. 16. Magellan sailed around South America into the Pacific Ocean, and across this new sea to the Philippine Islands, where he was killed. 17. His ship reached Spain—the first to sail around the world.

Study Questions. 1. Why did Ponce de Leon go in search of the new land? 2. What was the strange tradition about the country? 3. What did Ponce de Leon set out to do on his second trip? 4. Did he succeed? 5. What is his distinction?

6. Why did Cortés sink his ships? 7. How were Spaniards armed and how were Indians armed? 8. Describe the city of Mexico. 9. Who began the war, and what does that show about the Spaniards? 10. How did Cortés get more soldiers? 11. How did the people and king receive Cortés in Spain? 12. How was he treated on his return to Mexico?

13. What did Pizarro find in Peru? 14. How did he treat the Inca? 15. What was Pizarro's fate?

16. What was Coronado searching for and why were the Spaniards disappointed? 17. What things did the Spaniards see that they never before had seen? 18. What report did Coronado make?

19. Why were De Soto's Indian guides false? 20. Show that De Soto was a brave man. 21. How far north did the Spaniards go both east and west of the Mississippi? 22. Tell the story of De Soto's death and burial. 23. What proof can you give to show that the Spaniards were more cruel than necessary?

24. What part of the problem of Columbus did Magellan solve? 25. What was Magellan's preparation? 26. Where is Patagonia and how could there be signs of spring late in August? 27. What did Magellan's voyage prove, and what remained of Columbus's plans yet to be accomplished? 28. Who accomplished this?

Suggested Readings. PONCE DE LEON: Pratt, *Explorations and Discoveries*, 17-23.

CORTÉS: McMurry, *Pioneers on Land and Sea*, 186-225; Hale, *Stories of Adventure*, 101-126; Ober, *Hernando Cortés*, 24-80, 82-291.

PIZARRO: Hart, *Colonial Children*, 12-16; Towle, *Pizarro*, 27-327.

CORONADO: Griffis, *Romance of Discovery*, 168-182; Hale, *Stories of Adventure*, 136-140.

DE SOTO: Hart, *Colonial Children*, 16-19; Higginson, *American Explorers*, 121-140.

MAGELLAN: McMurry, *Pioneers on Land and Sea*, 186-225; Butterworth, *Story of Magellan*, 52-143; Ober, *Ferdinand Magellan*, 108-244.

THE MEN WHO MADE AMERICA KNOWN TO ENGLAND AND WHO CHECKED THE PROGRESS OF SPAIN

JOHN CABOT ALSO SEARCHES FOR A SHORTER ROUTE TO INDIA AND
FINDS THE MAINLAND OF NORTH AMERICA

22. Cabot's Voyages. When the news of Columbus's great discovery reached England, the king was sorry, no doubt, that he had not helped him. The story is that Columbus had gone to Henry VII, King of England, for aid to make his voyage. But England had a brave sailor of her own, John Cabot, an Italian, born in Columbus's own town of Genoa, who also had learned his lessons in voyages on the Mediterranean. Cabot had gone to live in the old town of Venice. Afterward he made England his home and lived in the old seaport of Bristol, the home of many English sailors.

The
effect in
England
of Colum-
bus's dis-
covery

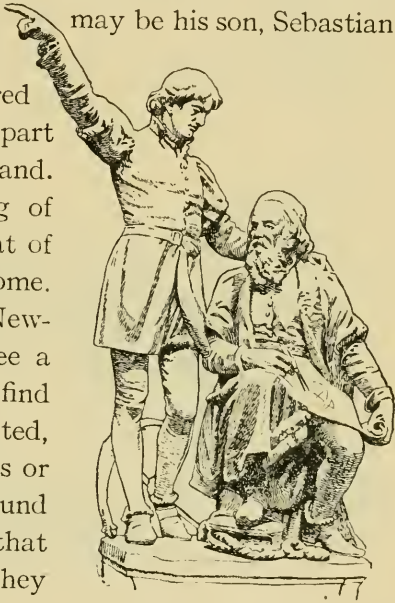
He, too, believed the world to be round, and that India could be reached by sailing westward. King Henry VII gave Cabot permission to try, providing he would give the king one-fifth of all the gold and silver which everybody believed he would find in India.

Accordingly, John Cabot, and it may be his son, Sebastian, set out on a voyage in May, 1497.

After many weeks, Cabot discovered land, now supposed to be either a part of Labrador or of Cape Breton Island. He landed and planted the flag of England, and by its side set up that of Venice, which had been his early home.

Later, he probably saw parts of Newfoundland, but nowhere did he see a single inhabitant. He did, however, find signs that the country was inhabited, but he found no proof of rich cities or of gold and silver. In the seas all around Cabot saw such vast swarms of fish that he told the people of England they would not need to go any more to cold and snowy Iceland to catch fish.

How John Cabot was treated by the king and people of England when he came back is seen in an old letter written from England by a citizen of Venice to his friends at home. "The king has promised that in the spring our countryman shall have ten ships, armed to his order. The king has also given him money wherewith to amuse himself till then, and he is now at Bristol with his wife, who is also a Venetian, and with his sons. His name is John Cabot, and he is called the great admiral. Vast honor is paid to him; he dresses



JOHN CABOT AND HIS SON SEBASTIAN
From the statue modeled by John
Cassidy, Manchester, England

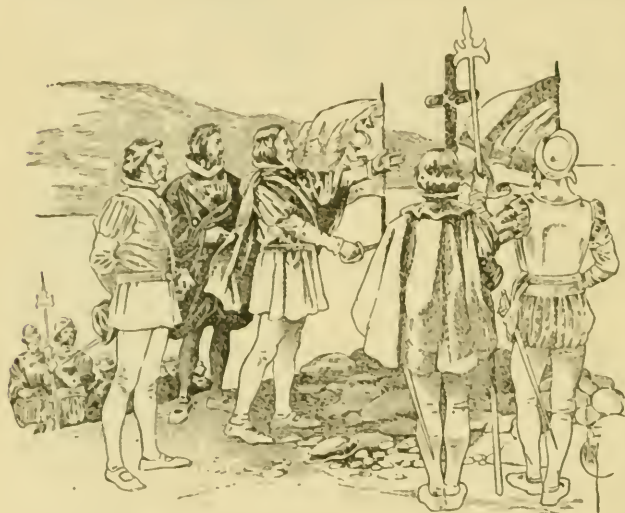
What
John
Cabot
discov-
ered

The
king and
people
pay
honor to
Cabot

in silk, and the English run after him like mad people, so that he can enlist as many of them as he pleases, and a number of our own rogues besides. The discoverer of these places planted on his new-found land a large cross, with one flag of England and another of St. Mark, by reason of his being a Venetian."

Again, in May, 1498, John Cabot started for India by sailing toward the northwest. This time the fleet was larger, and filled with

Cabot's
second
voyage



CABOT TAKING POSSESSION OF NORTH AMERICA FOR THE
KING OF ENGLAND

*On the spot where he landed Cabot planted a large cross
and beside it the flags of England and of St. Mark*

eager English sailors. But Cabot could not find a way to India, so he altered his course and coasted southward as far as the region now called North Carolina.

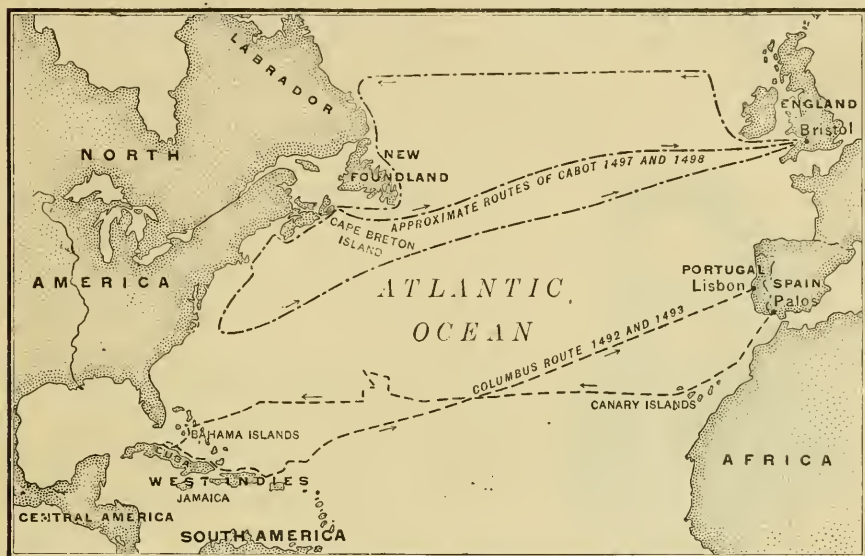
Now because of these two voyages of Cabot, England later claimed a large part of North America, for he

had really seen the mainland of America before Columbus. Spain also claimed the same region, but we have seen how Mexico and Peru drew Spaniards to those countries.

If England had been quick to act and had made settlements where Cabot explored, she would have had little trouble in getting a hold in North America. But she did not do so. Henry VII was old

Why
England
was slow
in set-
tling
America

and stingy. Cabot had twice failed to find India with its treasures of gold and silver, so little attention was given to the new lands.



THE FINDING OF AMERICA

The first voyages of Columbus, the discoverer of the New World, and of Cabot, the first man to reach the mainland of North America

SIR FRANCIS DRAKE, THE ENGLISH "DRAGON," WHO SAILED THE SPANISH MAIN AND WHO "SINGED THE KING OF SPAIN'S BEARD"

23. **The Quarrel Between Spain and England.** After John Cabot failed to find a new way to India, King Henry did nothing more to help English discovery. His son, Henry VIII, got into a great quarrel with the King of Spain. He was too busy with this quarrel to think much about America.

During this very time, Cortés and Pizarro were doing their wonderful deeds. Spain grew bold, seized English seamen, threw

Their
sailors
take up
the quar-
rel

them into dungeons, and even burned them at the stake. Englishmen robbed Spanish ships and killed Spanish sailors in revenge.

24. Sir Francis Drake. A most daring English seaman was Sir Francis Drake. From boyhood days he had been a sailor. His cousin, Captain Hawkins, gave him command of a ship against Mexico, but the Spaniards fell upon it, killed many of the sailors, and robbed them of all they had. Drake came back ruined, and was eager to take revenge. Besides, he hated the Spaniards because he thought they were plotting to kill Elizabeth, the Queen of England.

Why
Drake
hated the
Span-
iards



SIR FRANCIS DRAKE

From the original portrait attributed to Sir Antonis van Moor, in the possession of Viscount Dillon, at Ditchley Park, England

Drake's
first load
of gold

Begins
his most
famous
voyage

In 1573 Drake returned to England with his ship loaded with gold and precious stones, captured from the Spaniards on the Isthmus of Panama. While on the Isthmus, he caught sight of the Pacific Ocean, which only Spaniards had seen before.

25. Drake's Voyage Around the World. After four years, Drake, with four small but fast vessels, sailed direct for the Strait of Magellan. He was de-

termined to sail the Pacific, which he had seen while on the Isthmus of Panama. In June his fleet entered the harbor of Patagonia, where Magellan had spent the winter more than fifty years before.

After destroying his smallest vessel, Drake sailed through the Strait in the face of a terrible storm. The vessels lost one another. One went down, and one returned to England, believing that Drake's ship, the Pelican, had been destroyed

But Drake had a bold heart, good sailors, and a stout ship. After the storm, he sailed north to Valparaíso, where his men saw the first great treasure ship. The Spanish sailors jumped overboard, and left four hundred pounds of gold to Drake and his men. Week after week Drake sailed northward until he reached the coast of Peru, the land conquered by Pizarro.

Capturing treasure ships on the Pacific coast

Another great treasure ship had just sailed for Panama. Away flew the Pelican in swift pursuit. For eight hundred miles, day and night, the chase went on. One evening, just at dark, the little ship rushed down upon the great vessel, captured her easily, and carried her to sea farther out of her course, for other Spanish ships had been sent to catch Drake. What a rich haul! More than twenty tons of silver bars, thirteen chests of silver coin, one hundredweight of gold, besides a great store of precious stones. When Drake set the Spanish captain free, he said: "Tell your ruler to put no more Englishmen to death, or I will hang two thousand Spaniards and send him their heads."

The three Spanish ships sent to destroy Drake overtook him, but they dared not attack him, and sailed back. The little Pelican continued northward, and spent the winter on the coast of California, where Drake prepared her for the long voyage home.

The Pelican winters in California

He had sailed north as far as what was afterward known as the Oregon country,—which he called New Albion,—hoping for a northeast passage to the Atlantic, but finally turned the Pelican toward the far-away islands of the Indian Ocean. Week after week went by, until he saw the very islands where Magellan had been. He made his way among the islands and across the Indian Ocean until the Cape of Good Hope was rounded, and the Pelican spread her wings northward toward England.

Drake crosses the Pacific and Indian oceans

Drake reached home in 1580, the first Englishman to sail around



QUEEN ELIZABETH MAKING DRAKE A NOBLEMAN

After the drawing by Sir John Gilbert. It pictures the scene that took place on the Pelican at the close of the great voyage. Drake then became a nobleman and his ship because of its swiftness was renamed the Golden Hind

the world. The people who had given him up as lost shouted for joy when they heard that he was safe. Queen Elizabeth sent for him and made him tell the story of his wonderful deeds over and over again. She gave him a title, so that now he was Sir Francis Drake.

26. **Drake Again Goes to Fight the Spaniards.** Drake soon took command of a fleet of twenty-five vessels and two thousand five hundred men, all eager to fight the Spaniards (1585). He sailed boldly for the coast of Spain, frightened the people, and then went in search of the Gold Fleet, which was bringing treasures from America to the King of Spain.

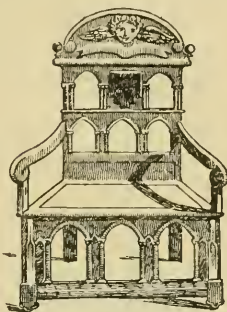
Drake
given a
title by
Queen
Elizabeth

He goes
to find
the Gold
Fleet

No sooner had Drake missed the fleet than he made direct for the West Indies, where he spread terror among the islands. The Spaniards had heard of Drake, the "Dragon." He attacked and destroyed three important towns, and intended to seize Panama itself, but the yellow fever began to cut down his men, so he sailed to Roanoke Island, and carried back to England the starving and homesick colony, which Raleigh had planted there.

The Spanish king was angry. He resolved to crush England. More than one hundred ships, manned by thousands of sailors, were to carry a great army to the hated island. Drake heard about it, and quickly gathered thirty fast ships manned by sailors as bold as himself. His fleet sailed right into the harbor of Cadiz, past cannon and forts, and burned so many Spanish ships that it took Spain another year to get the great fleet ready. Drake declared that he had "singed the King of Spain's beard."

27. The Spanish Armada. The King of Spain was bound to

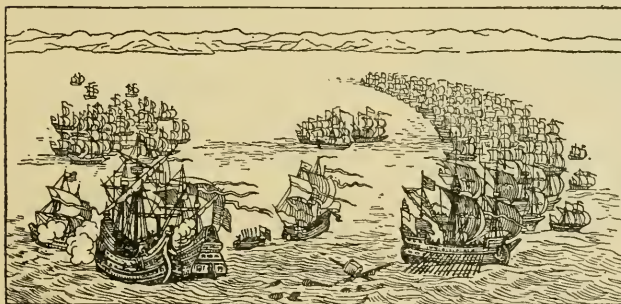


DRAKE'S CHAIR, OXFORD UNIVERSITY

It was made from the timbers of the Golden Hind

In the West Indies

Singing the King of Spain's beard



THE SPANISH ARMADA

More than one hundred twenty-five vessels sailed from Lisbon to conquer England but only about fifty returned to the home port

crush England at one mighty blow. In 1588, the Spanish Armada, as the great fleet was called, sailed for England. There were scores and scores of war vessels manned by more than

seven thousand sailors, carrying nearly twenty thousand soldiers. Almost every noble family in Spain sent one or more of its sons to fight against England.

Spain
aims to
crush
England,
but is
badly de-
feated

When this mighty fleet reached the English Channel, Drake and other sea captains as daring as himself dashed at the Spanish ships, and by the help of a great storm that came up, succeeded in destroying almost the whole fleet. No such blow had ever before fallen upon the great and powerful Spanish nation. From that time on her power grew less and less, while England's power on the sea grew greater and greater. Englishmen could now go to America without much thought of danger from Spaniards.

SIR WALTER RALEIGH, THE FRIEND OF ELIZABETH, PLANTS A COLONY IN AMERICA TO CHECK THE POWER OF SPAIN

28. **Sir Walter Raleigh.** Born (1552) near the sea, Raleigh fed his young imagination with stories of the wild doings of English seamen. He went to college at Oxford at the age of fourteen, and made a good name as a student.



THE BOYHOOD OF RALEIGH

After the painting by Sir John E. Millais

Raleigh,
student,
soldier,
seaman

In a few years young Raleigh went to France to take part in the religious wars of that unhappy country. At the time he returned home all England was rejoicing over Drake's first shipload

of gold. When Queen Elizabeth sent an army to aid the people of Holland against the Spaniards, young Raleigh was only too glad to go.

On his return from this war he went with his half-brother, Sir Humphrey Gilbert, on two voyages to America, at the very same time Drake was robbing Spanish treasure ships in the Pacific Ocean. Afterwards Raleigh turned soldier again and, as captain, went to Ireland, where Spain had sent soldiers to stir up rebellion. Thus, before he was thirty years old, he had been a seaman and a soldier, and had been in France, Holland, America, and Ireland.

Raleigh
when
thirty
years old

At this time Raleigh was a fine-looking man, about six feet tall, with dark hair and a handsome face.

He had plenty of wit and good sense, although he was fond, indeed, of fine clothes. He was just the very one to catch the favor of Queen Elizabeth.

One day, Elizabeth and her train of lords and ladies were going down the roadway from the royal castle to the river. The people crowded both sides of the road to see their beloved queen and her beautiful ladies go by. Raleigh pressed his way to the front.



SIR WALTER RALEIGH
*From the original portrait
painted by Federigo Zuccaro*

As Elizabeth drew near, she hesitated about passing over a muddy place. In a moment the feeling that every true gentleman has in the presence of ladies

told Raleigh what to do, and the queen suddenly saw his beautiful red velvet cloak lying in the mud at her feet. She stepped upon it, nodded to its gallant owner, and passed on. From this time forward Raleigh was a great favorite at the court of Queen Elizabeth.

How he
won the
favor of
the queen

29. Trying to Plant English Colonies. In 1584 Raleigh caused a friend to write a letter to the queen, explaining how English

Raleigh's
plan for
checking
the power
of Spain

colonies planted on the coast of North America would not only check the power of Spain, but would also increase the power of England. That very year the queen gave him permission to plant colonies, and thus a better way of opposing Spain had been found than by robbing treasure ships and burning towns.

The
Indians
welcome
the
English

Why the
land was
named
Virginia



INDIAN CORN

Raleigh immediately sent a ship to explore. The captain landed on what is now Roanoke Island. The Indians came with a fleet of forty canoes to give them a friendly welcome. After a few days an Indian queen with her maidens came to entertain the English. "We found the people most gentle, loving, and faithful, void of all guile and treason," said Captain Barlow. His glowing account of the land and people so pleased Elizabeth that she named the country Virginia, in honor of her own virgin life.

Raleigh next sent out a kinsman, Sir Richard Grenville, with a fleet of seven vessels and one hundred settlers, under Ralph Lane as governor. But the settlers were bent on finding gold and silver, instead of making friends with the Indians.

Why the
Indians
became
hostile

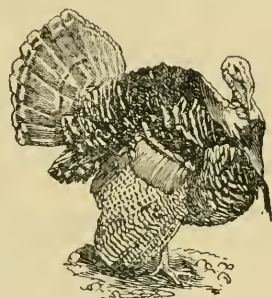
An Indian stole a silver cup from the English. Because of this theft Lane and his men fell upon the Indian village, drove out men, women, and children, burned their homes, and destroyed their crops. This was not only cruel but also foolish, for the story of his cruelty spread to other tribes, and wherever the English went they were always in danger from the Indians.

When Drake came along the next spring with his great fleet, the settlers were only too glad to get back to England, and be once more among friends. They took home from America the turkey and two food-plants, the white potato and Indian corn—worth more to the world than all the gold and silver found in the mines of Mexico and Peru!

Although Raleigh had already spent thousands of dollars, yet he would not give up. He immediately sent out a second colony of one hundred fifty settlers. A number of these settlers were women. The governor was John White. Roanoke was occupied once more, and there, shortly afterwards, was born Virginia Dare, the first white child of English parents in North America. Before a year went by, the governor had to go to England for aid.

But Raleigh and all England had little time to think of America. The Armada was coming, and every English ship and sailor was needed to fight the Spaniards. Two years went by before Governor White reached America with supplies. When he did reach there not a settler was left to tell the tale.

The only trace of the lost colony was the word "Croatoan" cut in large letters on a post. Croatoan was the name of an island near by. White



A WILD TURKEY

Indian corn and the white potato taken to England

Raleigh tries again



POTATO PLANT AND TUBERS

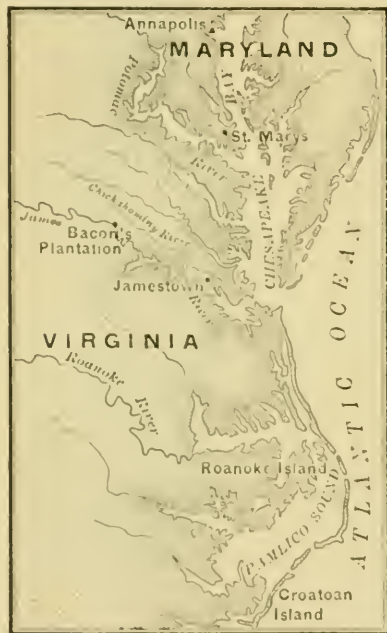
returned home, but Raleigh sent out an old seaman, Samuel Mace, to search for the lost colony. It was all in vain. Many years later

The "lost colony"

news reached England that a tribe of Indians had a band of white slaves, but the mystery of the lost colony never was cleared up.

Raleigh's
money
gives out,
but not
his hope

Raleigh had now spent his great fortune. But he did not lose heart, for he said that he should live to see Virginia a nation. He was right. Before he died a great colony had been planted in Virginia, and a ship loaded with the products of Virginia had sailed into London port, and an Indian "princess" had married a Virginian and had been received with honor by the King and Queen of England.



EARLY SETTLEMENTS IN VIRGINIA AND MARYLAND

Raleigh
bravely
meets
death

30. The Death of Raleigh. But the great Elizabeth was dead, and an unfriendly king, James I, was on the throne. He threw Raleigh into prison, and kept him there for twelve years. The Spaniards urged James to put Raleigh to death. They knew they were not safe if he lived. At last Spanish influence was too strong, and Sir Walter faced death on the scaffold as bravely as he had faced the Spaniards in battle. Thus died a noble man who gave both his fortune and his life for the purpose of planting an English colony in America.

SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

- The Leading Facts.** 1. John Cabot, trying for a short route to India, discovered what is supposed to be Labrador, or Cape Breton.
2. On a second voyage, he coasted along eastern North America as far

south as the Carolinas. 3. Later, England claimed all North America. 4. Francis Drake sailed to the Pacific in the "Pelican" and then turned northward after the Spanish gold-ships. 5. He wintered in California, and then started across the Pacific—the first Englishman to cross. 6. Drake reached England, and was received with great joy. 7. Once more Drake went to fight the Spaniards, until the great Armada attacked England. 8. Walter Raleigh, a student, a soldier, and a seaman, won the favor of the Queen. 9. He hated the Spaniards, and planted settlements in what is now North Carolina. 10. Raleigh's prophecy.

Study Questions. 1. Tell the story of John Cabot before he came to England. 2. What did Cabot want to find and what did he find? 3. How was Cabot treated by King Henry VII, according to a "Citizen of Venice," after he returned? 4. Why was little attention given to the new lands?

5. Prove that Spanish and English sailors did not like each other. 6. Who was Francis Drake? 7. What was Magellan after and what was Drake after? 8. Tell the story of Drake's voyage from Valparaiso to Oregon. 9. Tell the story of the voyage across the Pacific and how he was received at home. 10. What did Drake do when he missed the "Gold Fleet"? 11. What did Drake mean when he said he had "sing'd the King of Spain's beard"? 12. Tell what became of the Spanish Armada, and what effects did its failure produce?

13. What other brave man went to America before the Armada was destroyed? 14. Give the early experiences of Raleigh before he was thirty. 15. Make a mental picture of the cloak episode. 16. Explain how kind the Indians were; how did the English repay the Indians? 17. What did the colonists take home with them? 18. Who was the first white child of English parents born in America? 19. How did the Armada affect America? 20. Read in other books about Raleigh's death. 21. How does the English treatment of the Indians compare with the Spaniards?

Suggested Readings. CABOT: Hart, *Colonial Children*, 7-8; Griffis, *Romance of Discovery*, 105-111.

DRAKE: Hart, *Source Book of American History*, 9-11; Hale, *Stories of Discovery*, 86-106; Frothingham, *Sea Fighters*, 3-44.

RALEIGH: Hart, *Colonial Children*, 165-170; Pratt, *Early Colonies*, 33-40; Wright, *Children's Stories in American History*, 254-258; Higginson, *American Explorers*, 177-200; Bolton, *Famous Voyagers*, 154-234.

THE MEN WHO PLANTED NEW FRANCE IN AMERICA, EXPLORED THE GREAT LAKE REGION, FOUNDED QUEBEC, AND PENETRATED THE MISSISSIPPI VALLEY

SAMUEL DE CHAMPLAIN, THE FATHER OF NEW FRANCE

31. The French in North America. France was the slowest of the great nations in the race for North America. Not until 1534 did Jacques Cartier, a French sea captain searching for a shorter route to India, sail into the mouth of the St. Lawrence River. He reached an Indian village where Montreal now stands and took possession of the country for his king.

One year after Jamestown was settled, and one year before the "Half Moon" sailed up the Hudson, Samuel de Champlain laid the foundations of Quebec (1608). Champlain was of noble birth, and had been a soldier in the French army. He had already helped found Port Royal in Nova Scotia.

Wherever he went, Champlain made fast friends with the Algonquin Indians, who lived along the St. Lawrence. He gave them presents and bought their skins of beaver and of other animals. In the fur trade he saw a golden stream flowing into the king's treasury. Champlain certainly made a good beginning in winning these Indians, but he made one great blunder out of which grew many bitter enemies among other tribes.



SAMUEL DE CHAMPLAIN

From the portrait painting in Independence Hall, Philadelphia, Pennsylvania

Cartier,
1534

Cham-
plain
founded
Quebec,
1608

Made
friends
and foes
among
the
Indians

32. Champlain and the Indians. The Algonquins were bitter foes of the Iroquois or Five Nations. One time the Algonquins begged Champlain and his men, clad in steel and armed with the deadly musket, to join their war party (1609). This he did. They made their way up the St. Lawrence to the mouth of the Richelieu, and up that river to the falls. The Indians then carried the canoes and the baggage around the falls.



An Indian war party

THE SITE OF QUEBEC

Here, 1608, on a narrow belt of land at the foot of the high bluff, Champlain laid out the city of Quebec

What must have been Champlain's feelings when they glided out of the narrow river into the lake now bearing his name! A lake no white man had ever seen, and greater than any in his beloved France! On the left he saw the ridges of the Green

Discovery of Lake Champlain



THE ROUTES FOLLOWED BY CHAMPLAIN

Mountains, on the right the pine-clad slopes of the Adirondacks, the hunting grounds of the hated Iroquois.

One evening, near where the ruins of Ticon-

deroga now stand, they saw the war canoes of their enemies. That night the hostile tribes taunted each other and boasted of their bravery. On the shores of the lake the next day they drew up in battle array. The Iroquois chiefs wore tall plumes on their heads, and their warriors carried shields of wood or hide.

All at once the Algonquins opened their ranks and Champlain, in full armor, walked forth. The Iroquois gazed in wonder on the first European soldier that they had ever seen. Champlain leveled his musket and fired. Two chiefs fell. Then another report

rang through the woods, and the boldest warriors in North America broke and fled in confusion. The Algonquins, yelling like demons, ran after them, killing and capturing as many as possible.



THE DEFEAT OF THE IROQUOIS AT LAKE CHAMPLAIN
After an engraving of Champlain's published in 1613

There was great rejoicing among the victors, and Champlain was their hero. But there must have been great sorrow and vows of revenge among the Iroquois.

The next year Champlain joined another Algonquin war party, and helped win another victory from the Iroquois. Again, in 1615, he joined a party of more than five hundred painted warriors. They traveled to the shore of Lake Ontario and boldly crossed to the other side in their bark canoes. They hid their boats and silently marched into the country of the Iroquois.

Some miles south of Oneida Lake they came upon a fortified

Why the
Iroquois
came to
hate the
French

Cham-
plain and
the
Algon-
quins
invade
the
Iroquois
country

Indian town. For several days Champlain and his Indians tried to break into or burn the fort, but had to give it up. These campaigns made the Iroquois hate the French almost as much as they did the Algonquins.

For this reason Frenchmen found it safer to go west by traveling up the Ottawa River and crossing over to Lake Huron than by paddling up the St. Lawrence and through lakes Ontario and Erie. The result was that the French discovered Lake Michigan and Lake Superior long before they ever saw Lake Erie. On the other hand, we are soon to see how the Dutch made friends with the Iroquois.

Champlain remained many years in Canada, always working for the good of New France, as the country was called. He helped on the work of the missionaries, made peace between hostile tribes of Indians, and encouraged the fur trade and the coming of new settlers. Worn out with toil and travel, far away from kindred and native land, Champlain died at Quebec on Christmas Day, 1635.



A FRENCH FUR TRADER
ON SNOW SHOES

Iroquois
make St.
Law-
rence
unsafe
for
French

Cham-
plain
true to
king and
country

JOLIET AND MARQUETTE, FUR TRADER AND MISSIONARY, EXPLORE
THE MISSISSIPPI VALLEY FOR NEW FRANCE

33. French Explorers in the Northwest. Year after year, traders and missionaries, returning to Montreal and Quebec from the west, told strange stories of a great river larger than any the French had ever seen. In May, 1673, Joliet, a fur trader, and Marquette, a missionary, were sent out by Count Frontenac,

Stories
of a new
country

governor of the French settlements in Canada, to explore this river.

With five others they paddled in canoes along the north shore of Lake Michigan, through Green Bay, up the Fox River, and then crossed overland to the beautiful Wisconsin. Quietly and rapidly their boats passed down the Wisconsin until they reached a great valley several miles in width and a great river.

Following the current, they passed the mouth of the gently-flowing Illinois, then the slow and clear Ohio, the rushing and muddy Missouri, and finally, in July, they reached the mouth of the Arkansas. Convinced that the Mississippi flowed into the Gulf of Mexico, they set out on the return trip of two thousand miles.

Joliet reached Quebec in safety, but Marquette fell ill and remained among the Indians. The next spring while preaching in Illinois near where Ottawa now stands, he fell ill again, and died. The Indians showed their love and respect by bearing his remains by canoe to Mackinac, where he was buried beneath the chapel floor of his own mission house.

SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

The Leading Facts. 1. Champlain laid the foundations of New France at Quebec, and made a treaty with the Indians on the St. Lawrence. 2. Joliet and Marquette were sent out from Canada to explore the Mississippi River. 3. Joliet returned to tell the story of their discoveries and Marquette remained among the Indians in Illinois.

Study Questions. 1. What part of North America did France first settle? 2. Who was Champlain? 3. Tell the story of his first battle with the Iroquois. 4. What things in New France did Champlain help? 5. What was Champlain's blunder?

6. Who were Joliet and Marquette? 7. Tell the story of Joliet and Marquette. 8. How did they get back to Canada? Near what place in Illinois did Marquette preach?

Suggested Readings. CHAMPLAIN: Wright, *Children's Stories in American History*, 269-280; McMurry, *Pioneers on Land and Sea*, 1-34.

JOLIET AND MARQUETTE: McMurry, *Pioneers of the Mississippi Valley*, 1-15; Thwaites, *Father Marquette*.

WHAT THE DUTCH ACCOMPLISHED IN THE COLONIZATION OF THE NEW WORLD

HENRY HUDSON, WHOSE DISCOVERIES LED DUTCH TRADERS TO COLONIZE NEW NETHERLAND

34. Hudson's Explorations. One year after the men of New France had founded the city of Quebec the Dutch began the colony which became the Empire State. About the time John Smith was working hard for Jamestown, his friend Henry Hudson was sailing for some Dutch merchants in search of a northern sea route to India (1609).

One bright fall day Hudson sailed into the mouth of the great river which now bears his name. He hoped that he had entered the arm of the sea which might carry him to India. He turned the prow of his vessel, the "Half Moon," up stream.

Soon the beauty of the river, the rich colors of the great forests, the steep sides of the palisades, the slopes of the highlands, the strange Indians in their bark canoes, so took the attention of Hudson and his crew that, for a time, they forgot all about a route to India.

What a flutter of excitement the "Half Moon" must have caused among the Indians! They came on board to give welcome and presents to Hudson and his men.

On the return, probably near the present city of Hudson, an old chief came on board and invited Hudson to visit the little village of



The discovery of the Hudson by the Dutch

HENRY HUDSON
From the painting by Count Pulaski in the Aldermanic Chamber of the City Hall, New York

What Hudson and his men saw

wigwams located on the river. There these Dutchmen saw beautiful meadows, fields of corn, and gardens of pumpkins, grapes, and plums.



INDIANS WELCOMING THE "HALF MOON," HUDSON'S SHIP

The chief showed Hudson his palace of bark, and spread a feast of roasted pigeons and other Indian food before him. In spite of such kind treatment, Hudson would not stay over night with the Indians, who even broke their bows and arrows and then

threw them into the fire to prove that they meant no harm to the white man, but Hudson and his men were still afraid.

Indeed, Hudson had every reason to fear the Indians, for he had treated them badly and his men had even murdered some. In less than a month, Indian friendship had been turned into Indian hatred.

The next year Hudson sailed in an English vessel in search of the long-wished-for passage. On he went, far to the northward, past Iceland and Greenland, into the great bay which bears his name. In this desolate region, surrounded by fields of ice and snow, Hudson and his men spent a fearful winter.

In the spring, his angry sailors threw him and a few faithful friends into a boat and sent them adrift. Nothing more was ever heard of them. In Irving's "Rip Van Winkle," the story tells of nightly scenes in the Catskills in which the ghosts of Hudson and his friends were the actors.

Indians
kind but
Hudson
cruel

Fate of
Hudson
and his
men

35. Dutch Traders and the Indians. Just as soon as the news of Hudson's first voyage reached Holland, the Dutch merchants claimed all the region explored and hastened to trade with the Indians. As early as 1614 a trading post was established on Manhattan Island—the beginning of a great city, New York.

A trading post on Manhattan

Other posts were soon located: one up the Hudson became Fort Orange, another on the Delaware was named Fort Nassau, and a fourth was placed where Jersey City now stands. Later the Dutch traders went as far east as the Connecticut Valley.

The Dutchmen treated the Indians kindly and early made a great treaty with the Iroquois, or Five Nations. The chiefs of many tribes came to Fort Orange dressed for the event. Their bows and arrows and tomahawks were decorated, their garments tasseled and fringed, and on their heads they wore nodding plumes of many sorts, while their faces were hideous with paint. A peace belt of deer skin covered with beads was held at one end by the chiefs and at the other by the Dutch traders.

A lasting Indian treaty

They "smoked the pipe of peace, buried the tomahawk," and made vows of everlasting friendship.

The Indians liked the Dutch, who often visited them in their wigwams and sat around their camp fires. The fur



The Indians liked the Dutch

THE TREATY BETWEEN THE DUTCH AND THE INDIANS
AT FORT ORANGE

The fur
trade

trade grew rapidly. The Indians hunted and trapped as never before. They paddled their canoes up the Hudson, and crossed over to lakes



THE HOME OF A PATROON
*The old Van Rensselaer House at
Greenbush, New York*

George and Champlain. They went up the Mohawk far beyond where Schenectady now is, and plunged deeper into the dark, unbroken forests, and even climbed the mountains in search of fur-coated animals. Among the favorite fur-bearing animals the beaver

was first. Besides, the otter, mink, and weasel were hunted.

When the fur pack was made up the dusky hunters from every direction made their way to the nearest trading post. There they traded their furs for guns, powder, and ball, and for whatever else the white trader had that pleased Indian fancy. Great Dutch ships came every year to carry to Amsterdam and other Dutch cities rich cargoes of furs.

36. The Settlement of New Netherland. Already a great company of Amsterdam merchants were sending settlers, as well as fur traders, to the new colony, which now was called New Netherland. Peter Minuit, the first governor, bought the Island of Manhattan from the Indians for twenty-

Peter
Minuit
bought
Manhat-
tan Is-
land for
twenty-
four
dollars



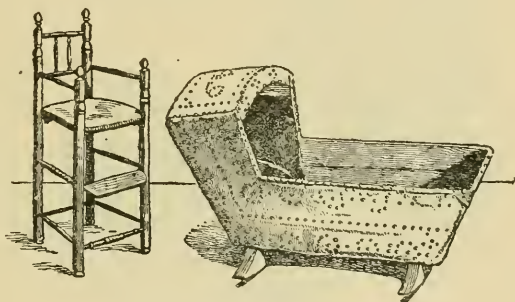
THE SALE OF MANHATTAN TO THE DUTCH
*Peter Minuit, who made the trade with the
Indians, is known as the founder
of New York City*

four dollars' worth of glass beads and other trinkets, built a town of log cabins on the end of the island, and named it New Amsterdam.

But settlers did not come rapidly enough, so the company offered its members large tracts of land and the title of "patroon" or "patron," on condition that they plant colonies at their own expense. Each patroon was to govern the people on his own land.

The greatest of the patroons was Van Rensselaer, whose plantation in the region of Fort Orange included one thousand square miles. The farmers and servants on these plantations looked upon the patroon as being much above them in authority and social position.

Every year the farmers and their families came with their wagons filled with what they had raised to pay the patroon for the use of the land. He set them a great feast, and there was merry-making all day long.



CHILD'S CHAIR AND CRADLE
Furniture used by the patroons

The
patroons
and their
way of
living

The growth of New Netherland attracted bad men as well as good men. Some mean traders robbed and murdered a number of Indians not of the Five Nations. The Indians robbed and murdered in return. War broke out, and before it ended many settlements were broken up, and hundreds of settlers killed.

A wicked
Indian
war

Parties of Indians roved day and night over Manhattan Island, killing the Dutch even in sight of Fort Amsterdam. The people blamed their governor, Kieft, and threatened to arrest him and send him to Holland. He finally made peace with the Indians just before the new governor arrived.

FAMOUS PEOPLE IN EARLY VIRGINIA

JOHN SMITH THE SAVIOR OF VIRGINIA, AND POCAHONTAS
ITS GOOD ANGEL

37. **The First Permanent English Settlement.** Raleigh had made it impossible for Englishmen to forget America. They sent out ships every year to trade with the Indians. In 1606 a great company was formed of London merchants and other rich men to plant a colony in Virginia.

King James gave them a charter, ministers preached sermons about Virginia, and poets sang her praises. At Christmas time one of Raleigh's old sea captains, Newport, sailed with a colony of more than one hundred settlers. They went by way of the West Indies, and the Spaniards although watching, did not dare attack them.



THE SITE OF JAMESTOWN

After a drawing made early in the nineteenth century by an English traveler, Catherine C. Hopley

In the spring, when Virginia is in her gayest dress, the ships sailed up Chesapeake Bay into the James River, and landed on a peninsula. Here they began to plant Jamestown, named in honor of their king, the first permanent English settlement in the New World.

They first built a fort to protect them from any attacks of Indians and Spaniards. But most of the settlers wanted to get rich quick, go back to England, and spend the rest of their days

Raleigh's
wish
comes
true

James-
town
settled
(1607)

in ease. Therefore, instead of building comfortable houses and raising something to eat, they spent their time in searching for gold.

Settlers
still hunt
for gold

The result was that most of them fell sick and food grew scarce. Within a few months more than half of the settlers were dead, and the others were discouraged and homesick. Would this colony fail, too, as Raleigh's colony had?

38. John Smith. There was one man, however, in the colony who could make Jamestown a success. He bore the plain name of John Smith. But he was no common man. John Smith had already had as wonderful adventures as the knights of old.

While yet a young man he went to the land of dykes and windmills to help the brave Hollanders fight against the Spaniards. But he grew tired of seeing Christians fighting one another, and resolved to go and fight the Turks. On his way he was robbed in France and left half dead in a great forest, but was rescued and made his way to the sea. Then he sailed with a colony of pilgrims going to the Holy Land. After many adventures John Smith found himself in eastern Europe. He was made captain of a troop of cavalry and was soon fighting the Turks. In three hand-to-hand combats, Captain Smith slew his enemies, cut off their heads, and presented them to his commander.

The Christian army looked on Smith as a hero, and the ruler of the land gave him a shield with three Turks' heads painted on

Smith
wins a
queer
coat of
arms



John
Smith,
a soldier

JOHN SMITH

From an engraving made by Simon van Pass, in 1614, on the margin of Smith's map of "New England" in "A Description of New England." This shows him at the age of thirty-seven

it as a coat of arms. The Turks afterwards captured Smith and made a slave of him. His master's cruelty was so great that Smith slew him, mounted his horse, and rode away to Russia. He finally

returned to England in time to talk with Captain Newport about America. Just such a man was needed in founding Jamestown.

The king had made Smith an officer of the new colony, but the other officers would not permit him to take part in governing Virginia. John Smith was not a man to sulk and idle his time away, but resolved to do something useful, by visiting the



SMITH SHOWING HIS POCKET COMPASS
TO THE INDIANS

Indians, and gathering food for the colony.

While on an expedition up the Chickahominy, Smith's party was attacked by two hundred Indians. Smith seized his Indian guide, tied him in front for a shield, and with his gun was able to hold the Indians at bay until he fell into a swamp and had to surrender.

He immediately showed the red men his ivory pocket compass. They saw the little needle tremble on its pivot, but could not touch it. He wrote a letter to Jamestown. An Indian returned with the articles asked for in the letter. This was still more mysterious than the compass.

The Indians marched him from one village to another to show off their prisoner. This gave Smith a chance to learn a great deal about the Indians. Some of them lived in houses made of the bark

Fails to
gain his
position
but
works
instead
of sulking

Taken
prisoner
by the
Indians

Smith
learns
how
Indians
live

and branches of trees; others had rude huts to shelter them. Now and then a wigwam was seen large enough to hold several families.

The Indian warriors painted their bodies to make themselves look fierce. They carried bows and arrows and clubs as weapons, for they had no guns at that time. The men did the hunting and fighting, but in other things they were lazy. The Indian women not only cared for the children, did the cooking, and made the clothes, but also gathered wood, tilled the soil, and built the wigwams. The Indian wife was the warrior's drudge.

Smith saw a more wonderful sight still, when he was led to the village where lived Powhatan. The old chief had prepared a real surprise for this Englishman. Powhatan, tall, gaunt, and grim, was wrapped in a robe of raccoon skins. He sat upon a bench before the wigwam fire. His wives sat at his side. Along the walls stood a row of women with faces and shoulders painted bright red, and with chains of white shells about their necks. In front of the women stood Powhatan's fierce warriors. This council of Indians was to decide the fate of Smith.

An
Indian
council
tries
Smith

Two big stones were rolled in front of Powhatan, and a number of powerful warriors sprang upon Smith, dragged him to the stones, and forced his head upon one of them. As the warriors stood, clubs in hand, ready to slay Smith, Pocahontas, the beautiful twelve-year old daughter of Powhatan, rushed forward, threw her arms around the prisoner, and begged for his life.

Smith's
rescue
by Poca-
hontas

Pocahontas had her way. Powhatan adopted Smith as a son and set him to making toys for the little maid. This was strange work for the man who had fought the Spaniards and slain the Turks, and who was to save a colony. This story is doubted by some people, but is believed by many good historians.

After a time Smith returned to Jamestown only to find the

Pocahontas proves a friend in need

settlers facing starvation, and the officers planning to escape to England in the colony's only vessels. He promptly arrested the leaders and restored order. In a few days, the hungry settlers saw a band of Indians, led by Pocahontas, enter the fort. They were loaded down with baskets of corn.



AN INDIAN WARRIOR

Powhatan refuses to give any more corn

The fear of starvation was now gone, because every few days the little maiden came with food for the settlers. Ever afterwards they called her "the dear blessed Pocahontas." She was the good angel of the colony.

When winter came on, Smith resolved to secure another supply of corn. But Powhatan had noticed the increase of settlers and the building of more houses. He feared that his people might be driven from their hunting grounds. Smith knew that Powhatan's women had raised plenty of corn, and immediately sailed up the river to the old chief's village.

Powhatan bluntly told Smith he could have no corn unless he would give a good English sword for each basketful. Smith promptly refused, and compelled the Indians to carry the corn on board his boat. That very night, at the risk of her life, Pocahontas stole through the woods to tell Smith of her father's plot to kill his men. They kept close watch all night, and next morning sailed safely away.

Pocahontas shows her friendship

But Smith needed still more corn, and stopped at another Indian town. Suddenly he found himself and men surrounded by several hundred Indian warriors. A moment's delay and all would have been over. Smith rushed into the chief's wigwam, seized him by the scalp, dragged him out before his astonished warriors,

pointed a pistol at his breast, and demanded corn. He got it; and the English sailed back to Jamestown with three hundred bushels of corn on board.

When spring came Smith resolved that the settlers must go to work. He called them together and made a speech declaring that "he that will not work shall not eat. You shall not only gather for yourself, but for those that are sick. They shall not starve." The people in the colony not only planted more grain, but repaired the fort and built more and better houses. Thus they grew happier and more contented with their home in the Virginia woods.

Unfortunately for the colony, Smith was wounded so badly by an explosion of gunpowder that he had to return to England for medical treatment. The settlers again fell into idleness after he left, and many of them died. Still the colony had gained such a foothold that it was strong enough to live.

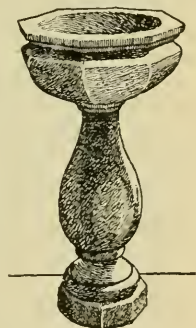
Some years later, Smith sailed to America again, explored the coast from Penobscot Bay to Cape Cod, drew a map of it, and named the region New England. This was his last visit to America.

39. Pocahontas. After John Smith left, Pocahontas did not visit the English any more. One time she was seized by an Englishman, put on board a vessel, and carried weeping to Jamestown.

Before long an English settler, John Rolfe, fell in love with her and she with him. What should they do? Did not this beautiful maiden of eighteen years have a strange religion? But she was anxious to learn about the white man's religion, so the minister at Jamestown baptized her and gave her the Christian name of Rebecca.

**Industry
brings
content-
ment**

**Smith
returns
to
England**



JAMESTOWN
BAPTISMAL FONT
*From this font, now
in Bruton Parish
Church, Va., it is
said Pocahontas
was baptized*

Pocahontas
marries
John
Rolfe

The wedding took place in the little wooden church. No doubt it was made bright with the wild flowers of Virginia and that all the settlers crowded to see the strange event. Powhatan gave his consent, but would not come to the wedding himself. But we may be sure that the sisters and brothers and the Indian friends of Pocahontas were there.

It was a happy day for Jamestown, for all the people, white and red, loved Pocahontas. The marriage of Pocahontas and John Rolfe was taken to mean the uniting of the Indians and settlers by ties of peace and friendship. For several years white men and red men lived as good neighbors. Rolfe took Pocahontas

to England, where she was received "as the daughter of a king." The fine people, lords and ladies, called on her; and the king and queen received her at court as if she were a princess of the royal blood.

How different the rich clothes, the carriages, and the high feasting



THE MARRIAGE OF ROLFE AND POCAHONTAS
After the painting by Henry Brueckner

from her simple life in the woods of Virginia! Here, too, she met her old friend, John Smith. He called her "Lady Rebecca," as did everybody. But the memory of other days and other

Settlers
and
Indians
become
good
friends

Lady
Rebecca
treated
like a
princess

scenes came before her mind. She covered her face with her hands for a moment, and then said he must call her "child," and that she would call him "father." Smith must have thought of the days when she brought corn to Jamestown to feed his starving people.

When about to sail for her native land, Pocahontas died (1617). Her son, Thomas Rolfe, returned to the land of his mother and became the ancestor of many noted Virginians; among these the best known was the famous orator and statesman, John Randolph of Roanoke.

So ended the life of one who had indeed been a good and true friend of the people of Virginia. Her name, Pocahontas, meant "Bright Stream Between Two Hills."



Pocahontas
dies in
England

POCAHONTAS

After the engraved portrait by Simon van Pass, known as the Bootan Hall portrait and now at Scalthorpe Hall, Norfolk

INDUSTRIES, MANNERS, AND CUSTOMS OF THE FIRST SETTLERS

40. How the Virginia Colonists Lived. After the first hardships the colony grew and prospered. Ships continued to bring settlers from England and other countries of Europe. In a few years the little settlement at Jamestown was surrounded on all sides by newly-cleared farms.

The
James-
town
colony
prosper

To any one living to-day the old colony would seem strange indeed. There were practically no towns; almost every one lived on a large farm, called a plantation. On these plantations were

The
planters
grow
rich

great fields of tobacco, whose broad leaves in summer almost concealed the ground. Here and there a field of corn could be seen, but little else was grown. After a time the owners, or planters, built themselves great houses and kept an army of servants to grow the crops and do the work about the house. The planters did no work with their hands, but looked after their estates and enjoyed such pleasures as hunting and horseback riding. Many of these old places were the scenes of brilliant dinners and balls at which the fine ladies and gentlemen of the colony gathered.

Negro
slaves
are
brought
to
Vir-
ginia

There were many poor people in England who wanted to come to America, but had not enough money. To pay for the cost of bringing them over, these people were forced to work for the planters, often for six, seven, and even more years. During this time they were almost slaves, but at the end of their service they became free. Then negroes were brought from Africa, and in a short while most of the work was done by black slaves.

Tobacco supported the colony and made the planters wealthy. It bought the food, clothes, and luxuries, and paid the taxes. It was even used as money, and people reckoned the value of an article in pounds of tobacco, as we do in dollars and cents. Most of the crop was shipped to England. The plantations lay along creeks or rivers up which boats could sail from the sea. When the tobacco was cured, it was packed in hogsheads, which were then rolled on board ship.

41. Blackbeard the Pirate. The streams on which the planters shipped their goods also served as hiding places for pirates. When these sea-robbers had plundered a ship on the open sea, they would hide away in a bend of one of the wooded streams. Most famous of these lawless men was Blackbeard. For years his very name was a terror to sailors along the American coast. He plundered scores of merchant ships before he was run down and captured.

SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

The Leading Facts. 1. Henry Hudson, searching for a shorter route to India, discovered the river which now bears his name. 2. Dutch traders built trading posts, made a treaty with the Indians, purchased Manhattan Island and built the town of New Amsterdam. 3. London merchants carried out Raleigh's idea by planting a colony in Virginia. 4. John Smith saved the colony by putting the settlers to work, by trading with the Indians, and by winning the friendship of Pocahontas. 5. Negroes were brought to Virginia as slaves.

Study Questions. 1. Tell the story of Henry Hudson and the "Half Moon." 2. What was the fate of Hudson? 3. When was a trading post planted on Manhattan? 4. Make a mental picture of the treaty with the Indians. 5. How does the Dutch treatment of the Indians compare with the Spanish? 6. What three things did Peter Minuit do? 7. Who were the Patroons? 8. How long did it take Captain Newport to reach Virginia? 9. How long does it take a ship to cross the Atlantic now? 10. Why were the settlers afraid of the Indians and Spaniards? 11. Why did the Virginia settlers hunt for gold instead of raising something to eat? 12. What did Smith learn about the Indians? 13. Show how Pocahontas was a friend of the colony. 14. Why were slaves brought to Virginia?

Suggested Readings. HUDSON: Williams, *Stories from Early New York History*, 1-4, 32-36; Wright, *Children's Stories in American History*, 292-299; Griffis, *Romance of Discovery*, 233-245.

SMITH: McMurry, *Pioneers on Land and Sea*, 68-102; Hart, *Source Book*, 33-37; Higginson, *American Explorers*, 231-246.

SOME OLD ENGLAND PURITANS IN NEW ENGLAND

MILES STANDISH, THE PILGRIM SOLDIER, AND THE STORY OF
"PLYMOUTH ROCK"

42. **The Pilgrims.** Persecuted for their religion in England, the Puritans first went to Holland, where they wandered from place to place. But they saw that they could not keep their own language and customs among the Dutch, so they decided to go to America and found a colony of their own. Miles Standish, William Brewster, and William Bradford were to lead the small band that had been chosen to go on the long journey. The parting was sad.

They
board
the
"Speed-
well"

Eyes were wet with weeping and voices were choked with sorrow as the last words were spoken before going on board the "Speedwell."

Even the Dutch bystanders were moved to tears.



EMBARKATION OF THE PILGRIM FATHERS

After the original painting by Charles West Cope

The
Pilgrims'
dearest
country

Listen to the words of Bradford: "So they left that goodly and pleasant city which had been their resting place nearly twelve years; but they knew they were Pilgrims, and looked not much on those things, but lifted up their eyes to the heavens, their dearest country, and quieted their spirits."

The "Speedwell" carried them across to England, where they found the "Mayflower." Here, too, they found John Alden, a handsome young fellow, who, with some other Englishmen, had decided to go to America. This is the same John Alden who afterwards won Priscilla from Miles Standish.

In August, 1620, the two ships spread their sails for America. Twice they were forced to return—once after they had sailed three hundred miles—because the “Speedwell” was leaking, and her captain declared she would sink before reaching America.

The
“May-
flower”
carried
the Pil-
grims to
America

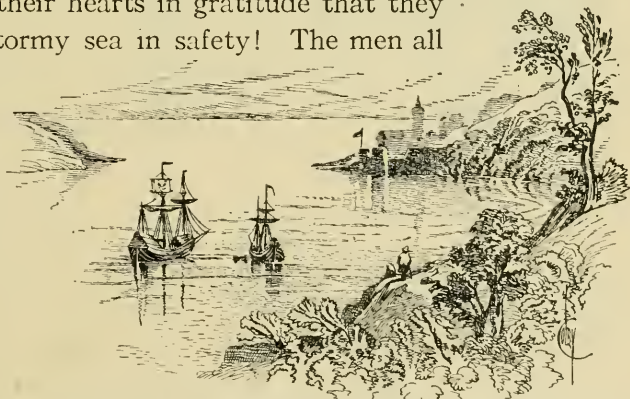
Finally the “Mayflower,” with one hundred two Pilgrims on board, started alone. Not many days passed before great storms overtook her. The waves rolled over her deck and threatened to swallow her. For many days the passengers had to spend nearly all the time below deck, not knowing what moment would be their last. Strained by the storm, the “Mayflower” also began to leak, but the stout-hearted Pilgrims would not turn back.

Storms
did not
drive
them
back

43. Landing of the Pilgrims in America. For days at a time, during the storm, the ship could not use her sails and was driven far out of her course, to the northward. The Pilgrims had intended to land near the mouth of the Hudson, but on November 20, 1620, the little band of exiles found themselves looking with glad hearts upon the sandy, but heavily-wooded, shores of Cape Cod. How they poured out their hearts in gratitude that they had crossed the stormy sea in safety! The men all

How
they
missed
the
Hudson

gathered in the little cabin of the “Mayflower” to sign a compact or an agreement in regard to the government of the colony. Then they elected John Carver their first governor.



Signing
the
compact

THE “MAYFLOWER” AND THE “SPEEDWELL” IN DARTMOUTH HARBOR
It was to this harbor the Pilgrims returned to repair the leak in the “Speedwell”

Everybody was now anxious to get on shore. Captain Miles Standish, with his little army, waded ashore through the ice-cold water and disappeared in the dark forest in search of a good place to plant the colony.

Miles
Standish
and his
men ex-
plore the
region

For three days they tramped through forests, up and down hills, and along the sandy coast, but found no suitable place.



READING THE COMPACT ON BOARD THE "MAYFLOWER"

They found springs, however, and ponds of fresh water, and some Indian mounds containing stores of corn. What should they do, take the corn, or leave it and run the risk of starvation? They decided to take only enough to plant in the spring. They afterwards paid the owners double for what they had taken.

Everywhere they saw flocks of wild fowl, good for food, and they also saw tracks of wild deer.

While Bradford was examining an Indian snare set for game, he found himself suddenly swinging by one leg in the air. They had a hearty laugh and learned a new lesson in the art of catching game!

They
learn to
set snares

Twice again Standish led his little company to search out a place. On the third trip, as they were at breakfast, their ears were suddenly filled with the most fearful shouts. A shower

of arrows fell near them. It was an Indian attack. Captain Standish and his men seized their guns and fired as fast as they could. Happily, the Indians, frightened at the roar of muskets, ran away before any one was killed on either side.

Their
first
Indian
battle

On this trip they found the harbor of Plymouth, which John Smith had explored and named several years before. Its shore was now to become their home. They immediately hastened back to the ship to tell the good news, and in a few days the "Mayflower" carried the Pilgrims into Plymouth Harbor. The little party landed on December 21, 1620, and that day is still celebrated as "Forefathers' Day." The story is that when they landed they stepped on a large stone—a boulder, itself a "pilgrim," brought there by the mighty ice-sheet ages ago. This boulder is called "Plymouth Rock," and you may see it still when you visit Plymouth.

Plym-
outh
Harbor
chosen

"Plym-
outh
Rock"

44. Their Home in the Forest. Although it was winter, the men immediately began to chop down trees and build a great log storehouse which could be used for a hospital and for worship.

Then they began building their own homes. They cut down the trees, sawed off the logs, hewed them roughly, and then dragged them by hand to the place where the house was to stand. When the logs were ready, the men lifted them up by hand or when the walls grew too high for lifting, they slid them up "skids."

Building
a town
in the
woods

The roof was made of boards which had been split from logs of wood. These were held in place by smaller logs. The wind and rain were kept out by "chinking" or daubing the cracks between the logs with mortar. The windows were few and small, for they had no glass and used oiled skins instead.

This first winter in America was the saddest the Pilgrims had ever seen. Their storehouse was turned into a hospital. They had been used to the gentler winters of England and Holland. Before

True
courage

the warm days of spring came, one half of the little band had perished, among them Governor Carver. But the Pilgrims bore brave hearts, and not a man or woman among those left went back to England when the "Mayflower" sailed.

45. Friendship with the Indians. Brave Miles Standish kept his little army—what was left of it—ready for any danger. He built a fort on a hill, and mounted the cannon brought over in the "Mayflower."

But the Indians were not so bad after all, for had it not been

for them, the Pilgrims would have had a much harder time. One day while the leaders were talking over military affairs, they saw a fine-looking Indian coming toward them, and calling in the English language, "Welcome! Welcome!" This was a double surprise. The Indian was Samoset, who had already saved the lives of two white men taken by the Indians.

Samoset
intro-
duces
them to
the
Indians



MILES STANDISH

From a portrait now in possession of Mrs. A. M. Harrison, Plymouth

In a few days Samoset brought other Indians, dressed in deer and panther skins. They made the Pilgrims think of gypsies seen in Holland. Their long black hair was braided and ornamented with feathers

and foxtails. They sang and danced for the Pilgrims.

When Samoset came again, he brought Squanto, an Indian who had been captured and carried to London, and who could speak English. They gave the news that the great Indian chief, Massasoit, was coming to visit his strange neighbors.

Massa-
soit
visits the
Pilgrims

A messenger was sent to welcome him and to give him presents. Massasoit, and twenty other Indians without bows and arrows, were met by Captain Standish, and escorted into the

presence of the governor. They agreed not to harm each other, and to be friends forever. As long as Massasoit lived this pledge was kept.



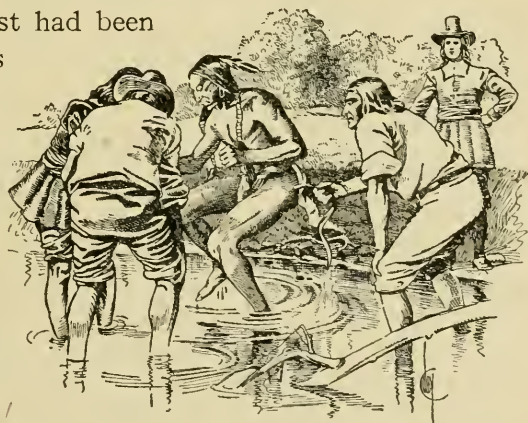
POUNDING CORN TO MAKE MEAL

Squanto taught the Pilgrims many new things. He showed them how to raise corn by putting dead fish into the hill when planting corn, how to hoe the corn while growing, and how to pound the corn to make meal. Indian corn proved to be the Pilgrims' best food crop.

**What the
Pilgrims
learned
from
Squanto**

They had no means of fishing, but Squanto taught them how to catch eels by wading into shallow water, and treading them out with their feet. From the Indians the white men also learned how to make Indian shoes or moccasins, snow shoes, birch-bark canoes, and other useful things.

The first summer was now over and the Pilgrims' first harvest had been gathered. Their houses had been repaired, and the health of the settlers was good. Fish and wild game were plentiful. They decided that the time for rejoicing and thanksgiving had also come, and invited Massasoit and his warriors to join them in the celebration.



INDIANS TEACHING THE PILGRIMS HOW TO CATCH EELS

**The first
American
Thanks-
giving**

For three days the games, military movements, feasting, and rejoicing went on, and at the end the Pilgrims and Indians were better friends than before. This was the beginning of our custom of having a day of thanksgiving each year.

For a whole year the Pilgrims had not heard a word from the great world across the sea. How eager they must have been for just one word from their old homes! One day the Indians sent runners to tell them that a

ship was in sight. The cannon boomed on the hilltop. Captain Standish and his men ran for their guns and stood ready to defend the colony against Spaniards or French. But it was a ship with news and friends from Leiden and England.

After a few weeks this ship returned to England loaded with furs, clapboards, and sassafras to pay those English merchants who had furnished the Pilgrims the "Mayflower" to bring them to America.

An Indian chief, not far away, decided that he would rather fight than be friendly. So he sent a bundle of arrows wrapped in a rattlesnake's skin, to Plymouth. Squanto told the Pilgrims that this was a challenge.

The Pilgrims were men of peace, but they were not cowards. Governor Bradford filled the skin with powder and shot and sent it back to the hostile chief. But the Indians would not touch it and the chief would not permit it to be left in his wigwam an hour, but sent it from place to place, until it again reached Plymouth.

Thus the Pilgrims went on year by year, living in peace when they could, but fighting when they must. Every year or so new

More
Pilgrims
from
Holland
and
England



GOVERNOR CARVER'S
LAMP

An
Indian's
challenge
to war

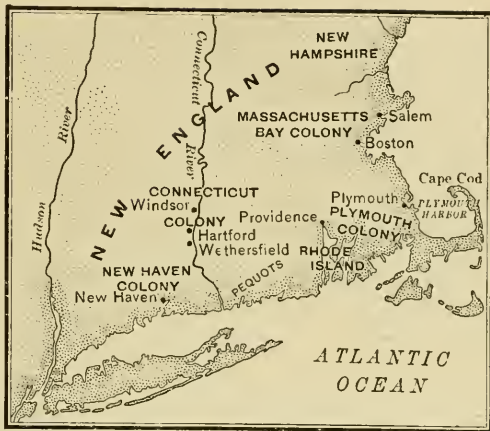
Brad-
ford's
answer



WEDDING SLIPPER WORN
BY A MAYFLOWER BRIDE

settlers came from their old homes, and the colony grew slowly, but steadily.

After a few years the new King of England was so hard upon the Puritans in England that thousands of them followed the example of the Pilgrims and came to America, and planted many other colonies in New England. But none have held so warm a place in the hearts of Americans as the little band brought to the New World by the "Mayflower."



The Pilgrims the most famous of all the Puritans in America

JOHN WINTHROP, THE FOUNDER OF BOSTON; JOHN ELIOT, THE GREAT ENGLISH MISSIONARY; AND KING PHILIP, AN INDIAN CHIEF THE EQUAL OF THE WHITE MAN

46. The Puritans. While the Pilgrims were planting their home on the lonely American shore, the Puritans in England were being cruelly persecuted by Charles I. So great became their sufferings and dangers that the Puritan leaders decided to go to America, where they could worship as they pleased. Charles I, fortunately, gave them a very good charter. But even before this, some of the Puritans had already planted a colony at Salem.

Colony at Salem

47. John Winthrop. The Puritan leaders elected John Winthrop governor of the new colony. In the spring of 1630, nearly ten years after the "Mayflower" sailed, more than seven hundred Puritans, in eleven ships, bade good-by to their beautiful English homes, crossed the ocean, and settled in what is now Boston.

John Winthrop founded Boston 1630

John Winthrop, the leader and governor of the Colony of Massachusetts Bay, the name given to the Salem and Boston settlements, was then about forty years old, and had been in college at Cambridge, in England. He was a man of high social position.

The Puritans who came with Winthrop were people of property, and not only parted from friends and kindred when they came to the wild shores of America, but both men and women gave up lives of comfort and pleasure for lives of suffering and hardship. In America, the men had to cut down trees, work in the fields, and fight Indians. Only brave men and women act in this way. But no one among them gave up more or was willing to suffer more than their leader. The people elected him governor almost every year until his death, in 1649.

What the
Puritans
gave up

Char-
acter of
Winthrop



JOHN WINTHROP

*From a portrait painted by John
Singleton Copley, reproduced
by permission of the trustees
of Harvard University*

Many
new
towns
in Mas-
sachu-
setts

John Winthrop was a firm man with many noble qualities, and not once, while governor, did he do anything merely to please the people if he thought it wrong.

When a leading man in the colony sent him a bitter letter, he returned it saying that he did not wish to keep near him so great a cause of ill feeling. This answer made the writer Winthrop's friend. When food was scarce in the colony, Winthrop divided his last bit of bread with the poor, and worked with his laborers in the fields.

While Winthrop was ruling the colony, hundreds of settlers came and settled many other towns around Boston. But these settlers did not always agree, especially in regard to religion and government.

JOHN ELIOT, A SUCCESSFUL MISSIONARY TO THE INDIANS

48. John Eliot. The treatment of the Indians by the colonists of Massachusetts Bay was just and kind. Trading with the white man had brought the Indians better food and clothing. Schools were being set up to give them some of the white man's education, and many preachers tried to teach them to become Christians. One man who spent his whole life in this work was John Eliot. His first care was to learn the language of the Indians of Massachusetts, and he succeeded so well that he was able to translate the entire Bible into the Indian language and to preach to the Indians in their native tongue.

Eliot
trans-
lates
the
Bible

The converts that he made he gathered together into communities which settled near the English towns. These converts were taught how to build themselves log cabins and to live and dress like the English. The principal village established by Eliot was at Natick, Massachusetts. Others quickly followed Eliot's example, and several other Christian Indian villages sprang up. These communities flourished, and in a few years Eliot could count as many as four thousand converts among the Indians of Massachusetts.

Eliot continued to preach until his death in 1690, and even the fierce King Philip's War could not check his success.

KING PHILIP, INDIAN CHIEF AND HATER OF WHITE MEN

49. King Philip. After the death of old Massasoit the friendship between Pilgrims and Indians soon came to an end. More and more white settlers came in and built homes. The Indians began to fear that they would be crowded out of the country which belonged to them and to their fathers before them. No longer were they treated with respect as at first. They were a proud people and grew bitter because they saw that they were despised.

The
Indians
are
perse-
cuted

One of the proudest of the race was Philip, son of Massasoit and ruler of his people. Several times the Governor of Plymouth forced him and his brother to do things against their will. This hurt the pride of Philip, and he began to hate the English. His own people also came to him frequently with complaints against the white men. Philip grew surly, while the colonists began to distrust him.

Philip is defeated and killed
The bad feeling grew on both sides, and gradually both Indians and colonists came to believe all the evil stories that were told of each other. Both sides collected arms, powder, and lead. After a short while war with all its horrors began. The Indians burned many villages and massacred hundreds of white men, women, and children

There was much fighting, and finally the Indians were completely defeated. Most of the braves were killed; those who were captured were sold as slaves. Philip's family was killed or captured. He himself fled to a swamp, where he met death at the hands of one of his own people.

INDUSTRIES, MANNERS, AND CUSTOMS

The Pilgrims have a hard struggle
50. **How the New England Colonists Lived.** The Puritans and the Pilgrims had a hard struggle in their new homes. The winters were long and colder than in England. For the cold weather they had to build warm houses and barns, and store up much grain, hay, and provisions. The summers were cool and short; tobacco and even corn did not ripen so well as in Virginia. Most of the land was hilly and stony and hard to cultivate. But these things did not discourage the settlers, who merely worked so much harder. Soon they raised all the corn, wheat, cattle, and sheep they needed, and even had some left to sell. Where the streams had waterfalls they built mills with big water wheels. In these they ground their flour and meal and sawed their lumber.

While the men farmed the land, or ran mills, or fished, the women also did their share of the work. They made butter and cheese, spun and wove the wool into cloth, and made many other things which now we buy from stores.

The Pilgrims build towns and villages

Unlike the Virginia colonists, many people of New England lived in towns and villages. They built churches, schools, and town halls. All the people went to church. Most of the children attended school. Whenever any question arose in which every one was interested, they talked it over at the town meeting. In these ways, the New England colonists differed from the Virginians.

SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

The Leading Facts. 1. The Puritans first migrated to Holland to gain religious freedom. 2. Later they decided to go to America, where they planted the colony of Plymouth, made peace with the Indians, and began to worship in their own way. 3. John Winthrop founded the Massachusetts Bay Colony of 700 Puritans. 4. He was such a good governor that he was elected almost every year until his death. 5. John Eliot converted many Indians and established several Christian Indian communities. 6. King Philip was goaded into a war with the whites of Massachusetts. 7. He was defeated and treacherously killed.

Study Questions. 1. Why did the Pilgrims decide to leave England? 2. What new danger threatened them in Holland? 3. Picture the "Mayflower" in a storm at sea. 4. Tell the story of Miles Standish and his little army. 5. What useful things did the Pilgrims learn from the Indians? 6. Why would putting dead fish in the hill help the corn to grow? 7. Why have Americans loved the Pilgrims so well? 8. How did the Pilgrims' treatment of the Indians compare with that of the Spaniards? 9. Tell the story of John Winthrop and the Puritans. 10. Tell the story of John Eliot. 11. What did he do before he began to teach the Indians? 12. Tell the story of King Philip.

Suggested Readings. PILGRIMS: Hart, *Colonial Children*, 136-140, 177-182; Glascock, *Stories of Columbia*, 69-81; Pratt, *Early Colonies*, 113-123; Drake, *Making of New England*, 67-87.

PURITANS (John Winthrop): Hart, *Colonial Children*, 136-140; Drake, *Making of New England*, 149-186; Hart, *Source Book*, 45-48; Higginson, *American Explorers*, 341-361.

JOHN ELIOT: Tappan, *American Hero Stories*, 59-72, 84-96.

THE MEN WHO PLANTED COLONIES FOR MANY KINDS OF PEOPLE

PETER STUYVESANT, THE GREAT DUTCH GOVERNOR

51. Peter Stuyvesant. This sturdy son of Holland was born at a time when his country was fighting hard against Spain for independence. His father was a minister, who, it may be supposed, brought up young Peter after the strict manner of Dutch boys.

Peter early began to study Latin. He was vain of his knowledge, and later took pride in showing off his Latin to the settlers of New Amsterdam:

When he left school young Peter joined the army, where he found plenty of hard work; but he performed duties as a soldier quicker and better than some of his comrades, and in a few years was given command over a Dutch colony in the West Indies.

In a fierce assault on a Portuguese fort Stuyvesant lost a leg and had to return to Holland. As soon as he was well the Dutch West India Company sent him to New Netherland to save that colony from the Indians.

Young Peter Stuyvesant

Becomes a soldier

Goes to New Netherland



THE DUTCH SETTLEMENTS

The arrival of Stuyvesant, with his little army and fleet of four vessels, brought great joy to the discouraged settlers and fur traders. He said to the people: "I shall reign over you as a father over his children." But Stuyvesant ruled the colony far more like a king than a father. He was not only commander-in-chief of the army, but was also lawmaker, judge, and governor, all in one.

What Stuyvesant said to the settlers

The new laws made by Stuyvesant showed that he intended to keep order in New Netherland. He forbade Sabbath-breaking, drunkenness, the sale of drink to the Indians and to any one else after the nine o'clock bell had rung. He ordered the owners of all vacant lots in New Amsterdam to improve them, and tried to fix the location of all new buildings. He taxed traders, whether they shipped goods to Europe or brought goods into New Netherland.

Strict order in New Amsterdam

Stuyvesant did, indeed, restore order to the colony, but he stirred up the people until they demanded a voice in the government. He finally agreed that they might select nine of their wisest men to advise with him. They were called the Council. He had no idea of following anybody's advice unless it agreed with his own notions, but the people had gained something.



PETER STUYVESANT
From a seventeenth century portrait at present in the collection of the New York Historical Society

Stuyvesant and his neighbors

At the same time Stuyvesant was just as busy with his neighbors' affairs. For he quarreled with the English in New England, as well as with the patroons in his own colony.

Stuyvesant claimed all the region now included in New Jersey,



A VIEW OF THE CITY AND HARBOR OF NEW AMSTERDAM (NEW YORK), 1656

a large part of that in the states of New York, Delaware, and Pennsylvania, and also a part of the territory of New England.

Government
by the
people
demanded

The colony grew in numbers. New towns sprang up along the Hudson and on Long Island. But the increase in the number of the towns only made the call for a government by the people still louder.

For several years the dispute between the people and the governor went on until, one day in 1664, news came that a fleet of English war vessels was in sight. Although England and Holland were at peace, the English king had given New Netherland to his brother, the Duke of York, and the English fleet had come to take it for the duke.

What
Stuyvesant
learned
after it
was too
late

Governor Stuyvesant was resolved to defend the colony to the last. But he was surprised to find that his people were not willing to fight for a governor who had given them so little share in governing themselves.

The commander of the fleet sent a letter to Stuyvesant offering very favorable terms of surrender. The council wanted the

governor to surrender, but he grew angry, tore the letter to pieces, and declared he would never give up. The council put the pieces of the letter together and read it to the people. The minister of his own church begged the governor not to fight, and leading citizens, and mothers with their children, pleaded with Stuyvesant to surrender. Now what could the brave old Dutchman do? He could not fight a whole fleet alone. He turned sadly away, saying,



Brave to
the last

A DUTCH SOLDIER

"I would rather go to my grave than to surrender the city."

52. The Dutch Surrender to the English. The English took possession, and the colony of New Netherland became the colony of New York, and at the same time the town of New Amsterdam became the town of New York. Fort Orange became Albany. English governors came to rule instead of Dutch governors. A

New
Nether-
land be-
comes
New
York



A DUTCH COTTAGE AND STREET SCENE IN NEW YORK, 1679

few years later a Dutch fleet recaptured the colony; but, by a treaty at the close of the war, Holland returned it to England. When William and Mary came to the throne of England (1689) they gave New York a Representative Assembly.

Dutch
ideas and
customs
remain

Although Dutch rule was gone forever, the Dutch people and Dutch ideas and customs remained. Peter Stuyvesant himself had become so attached to the colony that he came back from Holland and spent his remaining years on his great farm, or bowery, as the Dutch called it.

MANNERS AND CUSTOMS OF NEW NETHERLAND

The
colonists
built
houses
like
those
in
Holland

53. Life in New Netherland. The Dutch colonists brought with them the quaint and simple ways of their old home in Holland—the land of dikes and windmills. Even long years after the colony had passed into the hands of the English, many places in New York remained Dutch in customs and appearance.

While New York City was still New Amsterdam it looked for all the world like a city back in Holland. The houses were built solidly, as they built houses in the fatherland. They stood close to the street and had high, steep roofs with gable ends that were like series of steps. On the front of each house large iron numerals told the year in which it was built. On the roof were curious weathervanes.

About the fireplace the family gathered in the evening. The burgher would tell jovial stories to the children as he smoked his long pipe. The good wife, resting from her day's work, found some needlework to busy her fingers.

The Dutch wives were famous housekeepers and prided themselves on their spotless homes. They scoured and scrubbed from morning to night. But they also knew how to make doughnuts and crullers and to cook good dishes that made their husbands round and good-natured and their children rosy and plump.

The Dutch liked merrymaking and good times far better than their Puritan neighbors. The big brass knocker on the door—

shaped generally like the head of some animal — was kept busy in the afternoon by people coming to drink tea or coffee. A great copper kettle, hung in the fireplace, furnished enough to drink for every one, and sweet cookies were always on hand. They celebrated many holidays, and at Christmas we still look for old Santa Claus, whom the Dutch first brought to this country.

The Dutch liked merry-making

In Holland the burghers were good farmers and shrewd merchants. When they came to this country they continued to make their living chiefly in these two ways. On Long Island and along the Hudson River were fine farms with well-kept fields and large gardens. The merchants mostly lived at New Amsterdam, which soon became a busy seaport. Here many sailing vessels lay at anchor and exchanged their cargoes for the products of the Dutch farms and of the Indian trade. From the small beginnings made by these Dutch merchants has grown the largest city of the western world.

SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

The Leading Facts. 1. Peter Stuyvesant was sent out by the Dutch West India Company as Governor of New York. 2. He ruled the colony in his own way and gave the people very little power. 3. The council surrendered the colony to the English against the will of Stuyvesant. 4. New Netherland became the colony of New York. 5. The Dutch kept up the customs of their native country.

Study Questions. 1. Tell the story of Peter Stuyvesant until the time he became governor. 2. What reforms did Stuyvesant bring to the colony? 3. How did he rule? 4. What part did the nine men play in the government? 5. What were they called? 6. Why were the people glad when the English fleet came? 7. What did William and Mary do for the colony? 8. Tell what you know about the way the Dutch lived.

Suggested Readings. STUYVESANT: Williams, *Stories from Early New York History*, 21-32: Smith and Dutton, *The Colonies*, 189-202.

WILLIAM PENN, THE QUAKER, WHO FOUNDED THE CITY
OF BROTHERLY LOVE

54. **William Penn.** One day Thomas Loe, a Quaker preacher, ventured into the old university town of Oxford. He declared that all men were equal, and he refused to recognize rank or title. He taught men to live and worship in simplicity.

William
Penn
converted

A few students believed his teachings and resolved to become members of the hated sect of Quakers. Among them was William Penn, the son of a great naval officer, Admiral Penn. What a buzzing there was in that old college town when the news spread that William Penn, the fine scholar, the skilled oarsman, and all-round athlete, had become a Quaker!

Why
Penn
was ex-
pelled
from
college

Some of his comrades would not believe it. But when they saw him put off the cap and gown of his college, which some of the greatest men in English history had worn with pride, and put on the plain garb of the Quakers, they gave up! The college officers were also convinced when Penn and other Quakers tore off the gowns of fellow students. The authorities promptly expelled these young and over-enthusiastic Friends.

What
Penn's
family
and
friends
thought

What more disgraceful thing could happen to the family of Admiral Penn? To have a son expelled from Oxford was bad enough, but to have him become a Quaker was a disgrace not to be borne—so thought his family. The stern old admiral promptly drove him from home. But William resolutely refused to give up his Quaker views, and the admiral decided to try the plan of sending him to Paris, where life was as un-Quaker like as it could be.

William Penn himself looked little like a Quaker. He was then eighteen years old, fine looking, with large eyes and long, dark, curly hair reaching to his shoulders.

Young Penn, however, did not entirely waste his time in the gay life of Paris. He attended school and traveled in Italy. At the end of two years he came back. **Penn in Paris**

It was not long before the admiral again saw Quaker signs in his son and hastened him off to Ireland to cure him entirely. But who should be preaching in Ireland but Thomas Loe. William went to hear his old preacher, and this time became a Quaker forever. No suffering was great enough to cause him ever to waver again, although fines were heaped on him and at four different times he was thrown into foul jails to be the companion of criminals.

Penn's family now felt the disgrace very keenly, but his father promised to forgive him if he would take off his hat to the king, to the king's brother, and to his father. One day, the story goes, King Charles, the merry monarch, met William Penn and others. All hats were promptly removed except the king's and Penn's. Presently the king, too, removed his hat. Whereupon, Penn said: "Friend Charles, why dost thou remove thy hat?" The king replied: "Because, wherever I am, it is customary for but one to remain covered."



Returns more of a Quaker than ever

WILLIAM PENN

At the age of 22, from a painting in the rooms of the Historical Society of Pennsylvania, presented by his grandson, Granville Penn of Stoke Poges

Penn refuses to lift his hat

Penn's father would not permit such conduct toward his royal friends. He therefore drove his son from his home a second time.



THE MEETING BETWEEN WILLIAM PENN AND KING CHARLES

William
Penn
makes a
noble
choice

Turns to
America

But Penn's mother finally made peace between the father and the son before the admiral died. William Penn, then but twenty-six years old, came into possession of a fortune. Once more he stood "where the roads parted." He could now be a great man and play the part of a fine English gentleman who would always be welcome at court, or he could remain a Quaker.

We do not know that he even thought of forsaking his Quaker comrades. On the contrary, he resolved to devote his fortune and his life to giving them relief. Like Winthrop for the Puritans, and Baltimore for the Catholics, Penn thought of America for his persecuted Friends. With other Quaker leaders, he became an owner of West Jersey, part of New Jersey.

The king
pays an
old debt

Penn's
Woods

55. The Founding of Pennsylvania. King Charles II owed Penn's father about eighty thousand dollars. William Penn asked him to pay it in American land. Charles was only too glad to grant this request of the son of his old sea captain. The land he gave to Penn is the present great state of Pennsylvania. Penn wanted the colony called Sylvania, meaning woodland, but the king declared it should be called Pennsylvania in memory of Admiral Penn.

By means of letters and pamphlets Penn sent word to the Quakers throughout England, Scotland, and Ireland. He told them of Quaker homes across the sea, where jails would not trouble them.

There was great rejoicing among them over Penn's "Holy Experiment," as his plan was called.

Penn even visited Europe, especially the country along the Rhine, and told the persecuted and oppressed about the new colony where every sort of Christian was to find a hearty welcome, and where no one was to be punished for religion's sake.

Hundreds of settlers hastened to the new colony. When Penn reached Newcastle on the Delaware in the fall of 1682 he met a hearty welcome from scores of happy people who were already enjoying their long-wished-for religious freedom.

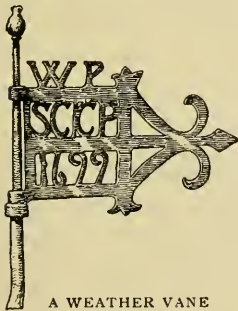
One of Penn's first acts was to call a meeting of the colonists to talk over their government. This pleased the people greatly, for although the land was Penn's he not only gave them land for their houses and farms, but he also gave them the right to choose their own rulers and to make their own laws.

Penn next turned his attention to founding the great Quaker city to which he gave the name Philadelphia, signifying brotherly love—a name truly expressing Penn's feeling toward other men. He marked off the streets right in the midst of a great forest,



A QUAKER

Penn
invited
all perse-
cuted
people



A WEATHER VANE

Set above their mill by Penn and two partners in 1699, to show which way the wind might blow

The
founding
of Phila-
delphia



WILLIAM PENN'S TREATY WITH THE INDIANS

After the painting by Benjamin West, which hangs in Independence Hall, Philadelphia and called them Walnut, Mulberry, Chestnut, and so on, after the trees that grew there. Some of the streets are still so named.

But the settlers came faster than houses could be built, and some families had to live in caves dug in the banks along the river. Philadelphia grew faster than the other colonial towns, and soon led them all.

William Penn won the love and the respect of the Indians of Pennsylvania. He visited them in their own towns and ate with them. He even took part in their athletic games and outran them all. Like Roger Williams, he believed that the Indians should be paid for their lands. Accordingly, he made them rich gifts and entered into solemn treaties with the chiefs.

At a treaty under a great elm tree on the banks of the Delaware, Penn said to the Indians: "We are the same as if one man's

Some
settlers
lived in
caves

Penn
visits the
Indians

body were divided into two parts: We are all one flesh and one blood." In return the Indians said: "We will live in love with William Penn and his children as long as the moon and the sun shall endure." If the Indians admired a white man they said: "He is like William Penn."

Kind
treat-
ment pro-
duced
kind
treat-
ment

The news of the establishment of free government and free religious worship brought crowds of settlers from Germany. Hundreds of German families in the valleys of the Rhine and the Neckar escaped to "Penn's Woods," and there their children's children are to be found to-day under the name of the "Pennsylvania Dutch." Without boasting, William Penn could say that no other one man, at his own expense, had planted so great a colony in the wilds of America as he had. Few nobler men ever lived than William Penn. He died July 30, 1718.

The
coming
of the
"Penn-
sylvania
Dutch"

QUAKER WAYS IN OLD PENNSYLVANIA

56. How Quakers Differed from other Colonists. The people who formed Penn's colony were unlike those of any of the other settlements. They did not wear gorgeous clothes and jewelry like the Virginia cavaliers. The men carried no swords or pistols. They were not stern like the Puritans. Games and social pleasures were not to be seen among them as in Dutch New Netherland. These people wore clothes of the plainest cut, made from dull gray or brown cloth. They were gentle and soft-spoken, and did not fight or quarrel among themselves. People who did not understand or like them called them Quakers, because some of them were so carried away at religious meetings that they fell to quaking. They themselves took the name of the Society of Friends. And Friends is a much better name, for they were friends to every man.

Believed
in
simple
things

Quakers
called
them-
selves
the
Society
of
Friends

The customs of the Quakers grew out of their religious views.

All
religions
wel-
comed
by the
Friends

Above all, they believed that every one should be free to do as his own conscience taught him. They were the first to found a colony in which all religions were welcomed. Their religious meetings were as simple as their own lives. They did not think it necessary to have ministers or priests. The men sat in one part of the church, the women in another. All was silent until some Friend felt called to speak. Some days no one spoke, and then they all sat in silence until the meeting was over. As a rule, not even a hymn was sung.

Opposed
war
and
slavery

The Quakers have always believed that war is unnecessary and bad, and only a few of them have ever carried arms. Because a Friend speaks only the truth, they do not take an oath. In the courts of law their simple word is as good as an oath. They have always been quick to help the poor and oppressed. The Quakers were the first to oppose slavery, and they did much to end it both in this country and in the English colonies. It is strange that these kind, gentle people should ever have been so cruelly persecuted.

The
colony
prospered

While the Quakers were strongly religious, they also took good heed of the things of this world. At first they cleared and planted farms in the fertile Schuylkill and Delaware valleys. Soon groups of them took up townships of five thousand acres each and built villages at their centers. The swift streams which tumbled down the mountain slopes they used to turn mills. In these they ground flour, sawed lumber, made paper, and wove woolen cloth.

The rich land and good climate of Pennsylvania and its liberal government attracted so many people from outside, that after a short while the Quakers were outnumbered by the other settlers. To-day the Quakers are but a handful in that great state. Yet the influence of William Penn and his followers still lives, for not only our country but other lands have recognized the Friends' idea of religious freedom.

SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

The Leading Facts. 1. William Penn, son of a great English naval officer, became a Quaker while a student at Oxford. 2. He founded a colony in America on a tract of land given him in payment of the king's debt to his father. 3. Penn gave the colonists the right to choose their own rulers and to make their own laws. 4. He gave a free constitution and made friends with the Indians. 5. He founded the city of Philadelphia, which grew faster than the other colonial towns. 6. The Quakers were gentle and friendly to everybody. 7. All religions were welcomed in the colony.

Study Questions. 1. Why should the students at Oxford be surprised to hear that William Penn had turned Quaker? 2. Why did his father drive him from home? 3. What shows that William Penn did not waste his time in Paris? 4. Who made peace between Penn and his father? 5. What was William Penn's noble resolution? 6. How did Penn come into possession of Pennsylvania? 7. Prove that Penn was a very generous man. 8. Why did William Penn call his town the "city of brotherly love"? 9. Make a picture of the great treaty under the elm.

Suggested Readings. PENN: Pratt, *Early Colonies*, 158-165; Hart, *Colonial Children*, 144-148; Dixon, *William Penn*, 11-273.

JAMES OGLETHORPE, THE FOUNDER OF GEORGIA AS A HOME FOR ENGLISH DEBTORS, AS A PLACE FOR PERSECUTED PROTESTANTS, AND AS A BARRIER AGAINST THE SPANIARDS

57. A Friend of the Unfortunate. James Oglethorpe was an Englishman. At an early age he went to Oxford to study, but he was drawn away from college by the clash of arms. Oglethorpe was a soldier for many years. Later he became a member of Parliament.

Ogle-
thorpe a
soldier

A friend of Oglethorpe's died in a debtors' prison, which aroused his sympathies for the poor. He examined English jails, and found them so dirty and dark and damp that strong-bodied men, to say nothing of women and children, soon sickened and died in them. Besides, he found that the jailers were bad men, who whipped the prisoners on their bare backs and stole their food.

English
jails and
jailers

The prison was a poor place for a man in debt, anyway. How could a man pay his debts while he was shut up in prison?

Oglethorpe, like many other noble men before him, thought of

America as a place of refuge for the unfortunate. King George II gave him a charter for the land between the Savannah and the Altamaha, and made his heart glad by declaring that all Protestants should be tolerated there.

When the debtors heard the news that Oglethorpe was to plant a colony for them there was great excitement among them. But he carefully selected his settlers, so that no lazy man might be found among them. Arms and tools with which to work on the farms were given to the settlers.



JAMES EDWARD OGLETHORPE

From an original portrait painted by Simon François Ravenet, from a mezzotint by Burford in the print room at the British Museum

When the time came, thirty families were ready to sail. Oglethorpe carried them direct to Charleston, South Carolina. When they landed, in 1733, the people of Charleston were only too glad to have a colony south of them as a "buffer" against the Spaniards who occupied Florida, and who had already attacked South Carolina.

Therefore, the people of Charleston, to give the new colony a good start, presented the settlers with one hundred head of cattle, a drove of hogs, and fifteen or twenty barrels of rice. Rejoicing in

King
George II
grants a
charter

A select
body of
emi-
grants

At
Charles-
ton

their new supplies, the colony sailed to the Savannah River, and not far from its mouth, on a beautiful bluff, Oglethorpe marked out the streets of the new city. The settlers went to work with a will, cutting down trees and making them into cabins. They soon had comfortable homes, although very different from what they had known in England.

Savannah laid out

Soon other colonists came to Savannah. Among these was a company of Italians who had come to raise the silkworm and to manufacture silk.

Italians

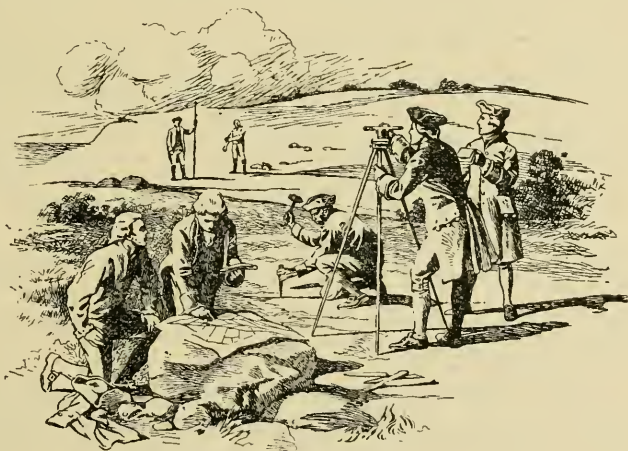
In the next year after Oglethorpe planted the settlement a band of sturdy German Protestants arrived. These settlers built their homes above Savannah, and called the colony "Ebenezer," which means "the Lord hath helped us." Between these two settlements a band of pious Moravian immigrants founded a colony. Then followed the settlement of Augusta, far up the Savannah River and well out among the Indians, which served as a sort of outpost.

German Protestants

To these were added a colony on the Altamaha River. This colony was settled by a company of brave Highlanders from Scotland.

Highlanders

In the meantime, Oglethorpe had gone to England, but he soon returned with more than two hundred English and German immigrants, who



OGLETHORPE SURVEYING THE SITE OF SAVANNAH

The
Wesleys
came

came to Georgia to better their condition. With these immigrants came John and Charles Wesley, who were soon to awake all England with a revival of religion.

Ogle-
thorpe
foresees
war



OGLETHORPE'S STRONGHOLD
*Standing on a bold rocky bluff
overlooking a beautiful bay,
it guarded the entrance to
Frederica*

Frederica
fortified

While in England Oglethorpe was made a colonel. He saw that trouble with Spain must soon come. From the beginning of the settlement of Georgia Oglethorpe had been careful to treat the Indians well. He had made treaties with them and had paid them for their lands. He now went to visit the Creek and the Cherokee Indians.

On an island at the mouth of the Altamaha Oglethorpe planted a town to serve as an outpost against the Spaniards. He fortified it, and made it very strong. This town was called Frederica.

In 1742 a Spanish fleet of fifty-one vessels and five thousand men attacked Frederica. Oglethorpe beat them off, and thereafter Georgia was left in peace. He went back to England and became a general. Oglethorpe lived to a good old age. He died in 1785.

INDUSTRIES, MANNERS, AND CUSTOMS OF THE SOUTHERN PLANTERS

Farms
south
of
Virginia
lay
close
to the
sea

58. The Carolina and Georgia Planters. The colonial farms south of Virginia lay mostly in a narrow strip near the sea. Inland were the "pine barrens," a poor, sandy country grown up in pine woods. Inland also were strong and fierce tribes of Indians like the Cherokees and Creeks.

The younger colonies could not live by growing tobacco. Virginia was nearer to the English market, and supplied it with most of the tobacco needed. They did raise corn and cattle for their

own use. One day a ship-captain from the Orient sailed into Charleston with some rice. The story runs that he gave a few handfuls of this to the governor as a curiosity. The wise old governor heard that this rice had been grown in swamps and thought of the swamps all along the coast of Carolina and Georgia. Some of it he had planted in this wet land, and it grew beyond all hopes. In a few years rice was produced in such quantity that it could be shipped to England, where it was thought the best on the market.

Rice
becomes
an
important
product

Some one else discovered that the low, wet land would also grow indigo, a plant used for making a brilliant and valuable blue dye. Indigo soon brought the settlers as much money as did the rice.

The great pine woods furnished lumber that was sent to Europe by the boatload. From the pine trees the colonists also learned to make tar and turpentine. To this day one of the most striking sights in these states are the great sawmills and the stills, where sooty negroes are making turpentine, much as it was made a century and a half ago.

SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

The Leading Facts. 1. When a friend of Oglethorpe's died in a debtors' prison, Oglethorpe determined to do something for the unfortunates shut up in jail for debt. 2. He obtained a charter from the king for some land in Georgia. 3. In his selection of settlers no lazy men were allowed. 4. The town was built near the mouth of the Savannah River. 5. The Savannah colony flourished, and many other settlers came to Georgia. 6. Oglethorpe built Frederica to keep back the Spaniards. 7. The colonies south of Virginia thrived on the production of rice, indigo, lumber, tar, and turpentine.

Study Questions. 1. Tell the story of Oglethorpe. 2. Why did Charleston lend a helping hand to Oglethorpe's colony? 3. Where did the settlers of Georgia come from? 4. What did Oglethorpe build Frederica for? 5. What did the colonists south of Virginia raise?

Suggested Readings. OGLETHORPE: Smith and Dutton, *The Colonies*, 78-89; Pratt, *Early Colonies*, 173-176; Hart, *Source Book*, 71-73; Cooper, *James Oglethorpe*.

ROBERT CAVELIER DE LA SALLE, WHO FOLLOWED
THE FATHER OF WATERS TO ITS MOUTH, AND
ESTABLISHED NEW FRANCE FROM CAN-
ADA TO THE GULF OF MEXICO

LA SALLE PUSHED FORWARD THE WORK BEGUN BY JOLIET
AND MARQUETTE

59. Robert Cavalier, Sieur de La Salle. While Joliet and Marquette were on their long journey, Frontenac was making use of another fur trader, La Salle, and of another missionary, Hennepin. LaSalle belonged to a rich French family, and had left home at the age of twenty-three (1666) for the wild life in the American forests.



LA SALLE

*Reproduced from a design based
on an old engraving*

He first built a fort-like post just above Montreal and named it Lachine, because he supposed it was located on the route to China. In 1673 he helped build Fort Frontenac where the Canadian city of Kingston now stands.

La Salle returned home, and the king received him with honor and made him governor of the region around Fort Frontenac. He came back and built a great stone fort. Settlers came and built their cabins around it, making a little frontier village.

Here the fur trader came each season with his pack, and here the faithful missionary said good-bye before plunging into the wilds of the unknown wilderness, perhaps never to return.

La Salle was growing rich, but he longed to make good his

Fort
Fronte-
nac
built

country's right to the richer soil and to the milder climate of the Mississippi Valley. Once more he returned to France, and the king gave him permission to explore the great valley and to build forts along the way.

La Salle not content to get rich only

La Salle came back bringing sailors, carpenters, anchors, and cables, for he intended to build a ship on the lakes. But best of all, he brought Tonti, his faithful Italian friend and helper. Hennepin, the missionary, carried an altar so made that he could strap it on his back and set it up for worship wherever he chose.

Hennepin and his altar

La Salle had resolved to build his first fort at the mouth of the Niagara River, but the Iroquois permitted him to build only a large storehouse. They were greatly displeased when he set about building a ship above Niagara to sail the Great Lakes to the west, and threatened to burn it.

When the new ship, the "Griffin," was ready to sail, they towed her up the Niagara River and then into Lake Erie. There was great rejoicing over the "Griffin." Amid the firing of cannon and the singing of songs, she spread her sails, the first to whiten the waters of Lake Erie.

On they sailed, through sunshine and storm, up Lake Huron until the mission town where Marquette was buried came



The first ship on the Great Lakes

FRENCH FUR TRADERS BARTERING WITH THE INDIANS

The visit
to
Mackinac



ROUTES OF THE FRENCH MISSIONARIES
AND TRADERS WHO EXPLORED THE
MISSISSIPPI VALLEY

The
"Griffin"
sails
for the
store-
house

The
journey
by canoe
to the
Illinois
River



into view. When the "Griffin" fired her cannon, all was astir in that town of fur traders, missionaries, and Indians. La Salle's men landed with great show. They marched to the little chapel and knelt before the altar.

La Salle then sailed through the straits and to the head of Green Bay, where

some of his men, sent out many months before, had collected a great quantity of furs. Laden with these, the "Griffin" sailed for the storehouse on the Niagara, but La Salle never saw again this first ship of the lakes.

60. Exploring the Mississippi Valley. With fourteen men in four large canoes, La Salle set out for the Illinois River. They passed southward along the Wisconsin shore, sometimes living only on parched corn and wild berries, but at other times feasting on the wild game killed by their Indian hunter.

They passed the spot where Chicago stands, and reached the mouth of the St. Joseph River. Here another fort was built while waiting for the

return of Tonti, who had gone to find the "Griffin." Three months had passed by since the ship sailed. Tonti finally came, but brought no word of the ill-fated "Griffin."

Disappointed, but still brave, La Salle with a party of thirty men and fourteen canoes paddled up the St. Joseph River to where South Bend now is. From this point the party, carrying canoes and baggage, made its way over to the headwaters of the Illinois. They were glad to reach the region near the present site of Ottawa, where Marquette had been a few years before. They saw Buffalo Rock and Starved Rock, high bluffs renowned in Indian history.

They
reach
Starved
Rock

Just as the little fleet was passing through Peoria Lake, some one saw the smoke of an Indian camp. At once every Frenchman dropped his paddle, seized his gun, and sprang ashore. The Indians ran about in wild excitement, but La Salle talked peace to the chiefs while Hennepin tried to quiet the children.

Surpris-
ing an
Indian
camp

The Indians told La Salle of fierce warriors farther on who would kill them, and of great monsters ready to eat them. These stories frightened some of La Salle's men and they ran away.



LA SALLE AND HENNEPIN SURPRISING THE INDIANS

La Salle decided to build a fort on the bluff overlooking the river and remain there through the winter (1680). They named it Fort Crève-cœur, meaning that the builders had grieved until their hearts were broken.

The fort
of the
broken
heart

La Salle returned to Fort Frontenac. In the meantime he ordered Tonti to fortify Starved Rock, and Hennepin to explore the Illinois and the upper Mississippi rivers.

While La Salle was gone, a great army of fierce Iroquois destroyed the villages of the Illinois Indians, "the children of Count Frontenac."

La Salle's heart was indeed full of grief when he returned and saw the awful desolation where once stood the villages of his Indian friends. But worse still, he could not find Tonti. With a sad but brave heart the great leader resolved to bring all the Illinois tribes into a union that should be a match for the Iroquois. He

went from tribe to tribe, and night after night he sat around the council fires with the chiefs.

Before he could unite them he heard that Tonti was safe at Mackinac. He hastened to meet his long lost friend, and there he and Tonti once more planned the exploration of the lower Mississippi. He returned to Fort Frontenac, collected supplies, and was soon crossing the portage between the Chicago and



LA SALLE AT THE MOUTH OF THE MISSISSIPPI

Illinois rivers. On they went, till early in February their canoes floated out upon the bosom of the "Father of Waters" (1682).

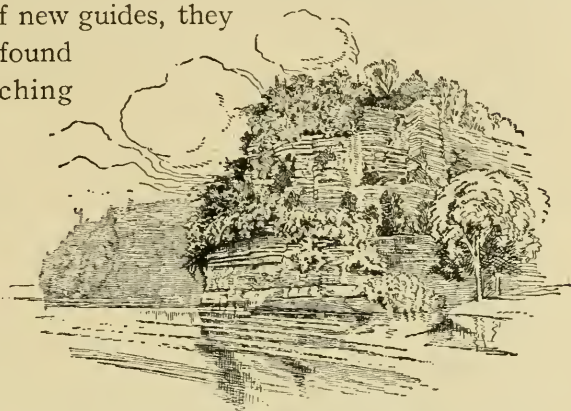
Iroquois
destroy
villages
of the
Illinois

A union
of Indian
tribes
proposed

La Salle
journeys
to the
mouth of
the Mis-
sissippi

Down the river they floated, passing the Missouri, the Ohio, and the Arkansas, where Joliet and Marquette had turned back. With the kindly help of new guides, they passed on until they found the Mississippi branching into three streams. La Salle divided his party, and each took a stream to the Gulf.

On shore, just above the mouth, a cross was raised and La Salle took possession of all the country he had explored "in the name of Louis the



STARVED ROCK ON ILLINOIS RIVER

Many interesting Indian legends are connected with this rock which stands one hundred thirty-five feet above the river below

**La Salle
takes
possession
of
new
country**

Great, King of France." The company shouted, "Long live the king!" La Salle's first great object had been accomplished.

Then the party began the slow journey up stream. La Salle finally reached Mackinac, and there again began to lay great plans. The first thing he did was to go to Starved Rock and build a fort for the protection of his union of Indian tribes.

Starved Rock is a rough cliff which rises one hundred thirty-five feet high, right out of the valley. Its sides are almost perpendicular. La Salle and his men cut away the trees on top and built storehouses, log huts, and a palisade. They named it Fort St. Louis. In the valley below, hundreds of Indians came and built their wigwams that they might be safe from their enemies, the Iroquois. Tonti was put in command of the fort.

**Builds
Fort St.
Louis on
Starved
Rock**

La Salle's next step was to return to France and ask the king to

La Salle
misses
the
mouth of
the
Missis-
sippi

plant a colony of Frenchmen at the mouth of the Mississippi River. The king agreed, and La Salle set sail for the Gulf of Mexico with a fleet of four ships and a colony of more than one hundred fifty persons (1684). He missed the Mississippi and landed at Matagorda Bay in Texas. The colonists blamed La Salle. He tried in vain to find the Mississippi.

La Salle's
death

Suffering and discontent increased till a party of La Salle's men lay in ambush and shot him, and left his body in the woods. More than a year went by before the faithful Tonti at Starved Rock heard of the sad fate of the great leader.

The
heroic
Tonti

The French king refused to send aid to the starving colonists in Texas, but the brave and heroic Tonti, though saddened by the death of La Salle, resolved to rescue them. His rescuing party suffered awful hardships. They deserted Tonti on the lower Mississippi, and he was at last forced to return to Starved Rock.

THE MEN OF NEW FRANCE

Men of
New
France
lived
as the
Indians
lived

61. Life of the Trapper, Jesuit Missionary, and Soldier of New France. For more than a hundred years after the explorations of Joliet and La Salle the government of Canada sent trappers, missionaries, and soldiers into the new territory. The trappers lived on friendly terms with the Indians. They took shelter in the Indian wigwam and sat at the Indian camp fire. Together they searched the forest for game, and paddled up and down the rivers and lakes in the Indian canoes. They joined in the Indian sports, lived as the Indians lived, and often married the Indian maidens.

The lives of the missionaries were full of self-sacrifice. They had great difficulties to overcome. The Indians were ignorant and hard to teach but they treated the missionaries with respect and loved them for their kind deeds.

From the mouth of the St. Lawrence to the Gulf of Mexico the soldiers of New France built many forts. Their chief danger was from the Iroquois Indians, who sided with the English in the long years of war. Many times their settlements were destroyed, their forts burned. But they were courageous and determined. They went on with their work of establishing New France in America, fighting the English and the Indians, until 1759. Then Wolfe captured Quebec and New France became English territory.

SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

The Leading Facts. 1. La Salle was sent to complete the exploration of the Mississippi. 2. La Salle made his way to the Gulf of Mexico and later built the fort at Starved Rock. 3. The French sent trappers, missionaries, and soldiers into New France to strengthen it against the English. 4. The French trappers lived on intimate terms with the Indians. 5. With the fall of Quebec, England won New France.

Study Questions. 1. Why was La Salle not satisfied merely to get rich? 2. Describe the first voyage on the Lakes. 3. Find on the map the places named, from Mackinac to Fort Crèvecoeur. 4. How did La Salle reach the Mississippi? 5. Picture Tonti's fort on Starved Rock. 6. Tell the story of the fate of La Salle. 7. What Indian tribe sided with the English? 8. What was the effect of the fall of Quebec?

Suggested Readings. LA SALLE: Wright, *Children's Stories in American History*, 316-330; Pratt, *Later Colonial Period*, 1-28.

GEORGE WASHINGTON, THE FIRST GENERAL AND FIRST PRESIDENT OF THE UNITED STATES

THE "FATHER OF HIS COUNTRY"

62. George Washington as a Boy. When Washington was born, February 22, 1732, in the old colony of Virginia, the early settlements had grown into towns, and planters had prospered. His father's house stood upon a gentle hill slope which ran down to the lazily-flowing Potomac. Across the river one could see the wooded Maryland shore, broken with a few great farms and plantations.

Long
years
of
war

Wash-
ington's
birthday
and birth-
place

Washington's father owned more than one plantation, and had many negro slaves. He was also a partner in some iron mines, and once had been captain of a ship carrying iron ore to London.

The
mother
of Wash-
ington



THE BOYHOOD HOME OF WASHINGTON

Here on the site of the farm house, a slope on the river bank, stands the first monument erected to Washington, the bricks from the great chimney forming its foundation

It was in London that he had fallen in love with Mary Ball, called, on account of her beauty, the "Rose of Epping Forest." She, too, was a Virginian, and she married Augustine Washington, and became the greatly revered mother of George.

When George was but three years old, his par-

School
in Fred-
ericks-
burg

ents moved to the plantation on the Rappahannock. Across the river in the old town of Fredericksburg, George went to a school taught by the church sexton. Both teachers and schools were scarce in Virginia then because the people lived miles apart on their great plantations.

In Washington's day the plantations were usually located on rivers or bays. The rivers were the best roadways in those old times. Besides, the planter liked to have the yearly ship from London stop at his own door.

The
yearly
ship from
London

The coming of the ship brought happy days to the young people, for it often brought furniture for the house and fine clothes for the family. Sometimes, too, it brought back some long-absent son or daughter, or letters from relatives in the old English home. Then there were the stories such as only sailors can tell.

When all the stores of tobacco and grain had been loaded,

once more the great ship spread her wings and sailed away. Then many a Virginia boy longed to go on board and sail away, too.

George's father died and left him, at the age of eleven, to the care of his mother. Mary Washington was a wise, firm mother, and always held the love and admiration of her children.

**Mary Wash-
ington**

According to the custom of those old Virginia days, Lawrence Washington, the eldest son, received the beautiful plantation on the Potomac, which he named Mount Vernon in honor of Admiral Vernon, an English naval commander under whom he had fought in the West Indies.

**The
eldest
son in
Virginia**

To George fell a smaller plantation on the Rappahannock. He could hardly hope to go to England to study, but went to a school near his birthplace. Here he studied hard, mastering mathematics, and business papers of all sorts. The book into which he copied business letters, deeds, wills, and bills of sale and exchange shows how careful he was and how he mastered everything he undertook.

At school, George was a spirited leader in all outdoor sports. He outran, outjumped, as well as outwrestled all his comrades. He could throw farther than any of them. The story is told that he once threw a stone across the Rappahannock, and



**George
studied
hard and
played
hard**

WASHINGTON DREAMING OF A SEAMAN'S LIFE

that at another time he threw a stone from the valley below to the top of the Natural Bridge, a distance of more than two hundred feet.

Playing
war

Washington was captain when the boys played at war. Every boy among them expected to be a soldier some day. George listened to the stories told by his brother Lawrence, who had been a captain in the West Indies.

A horse-
back
rider

As a boy George Washington also learned many useful things outside of school. He became a skillful horseback rider, for every Virginia plantation had fine riding horses. People lived so far apart that they had to ride horseback when they visited each other and when they went to church or to town. Whether George rode a wild colt to "break" it, or whether he rode with his neighbors through woods and fields, jumping fences or swimming streams, or in a wild chase after the fox, he always kept his seat.

A woods-
man



WASHINGTON AS A WOODSMAN

Even while a boy Washington was learning the ways of a woodsman. With only a gun and a dog for companions, he made long trips into the deep, dark Virginia forests, where no road or path showed the way. He could cross rivers without bridge or boat, could build a shelter at night,

could trap, and shoot, and cook over the fire by the side of which he slept. All this knowledge was soon put to use.

Wash-
ington
wanted
to be a
sailor

When George was fourteen it was decided that he might "go to sea." No doubt he dreamed of the time when he should be a seaman, or perhaps an officer on one of the king's great war ships. But when all was ready, he gave up his plans to please his mother and went back to school. He now studied surveying, and was soon able to mark off the boundaries of farms and lay out roads.

George was now more and more at Mount Vernon, where he met many fine people. Among these visitors he admired most an old English nobleman, Lord Fairfax, who had come to spend the rest of his days beyond the Blue Ridge in the beautiful valley of the Shenandoah.

Lord
Fairfax

63. Washington as Surveyor. Lord Fairfax was pleased with Washington, who was then tall, strong, active, and manly looking, although but sixteen years old. Accordingly, one spring Washington, with a number of companions, started over the mountains to survey the wild lands of Lord Fairfax.

A survey-
or at
sixteen

The trip was full of danger. There were no roads, bridges, or houses after the party reached the mountains; but deep rivers, wild animals, and savage Indians were plentiful. Some nights they slept in rude huts, other nights in tents, but more often under the stars and around the camp fire. One

WASHINGTON'S
SURVEYING
INSTRUMENTS

night they saw a party of Indians dance their wild war dance to the music of a rude drum, made by stretching a hide over a pot, and to the noise of a rattle, made by putting shot in a gourd.

Within a month Washington was back with maps and figures showing just what lands belonged to Lord



Life in
the Shen-
andoah
in 1748

THE SURVEYING PARTY AT AN INDIAN WAR DANCE

Work
well done

Fairfax. Few men could have done better, and a warm friendship grew up between this white-haired English nobleman and the young Virginian. Lord Fairfax immediately built a great hunting



WASHINGTON SURVEYING LORD FAIRFAX'S
LANDS

A public
surveyor

lodge in the Shenandoah, near where Winchester is, and named it Greenway Court. It became a favorite visiting place for many Virginians.

Washington had done his work so well that Lord Fairfax had him made a public surveyor, and invited him to make Greenway Court his headquarters.

For three years Washington was hard at work in that western wilderness marking out the lands of settlers. It was a rough but health-giving life and made his bones and muscles strong. He had to take many risks and face many dangers.

Once he wrote to a friend: "Since you received my letter in October I have not slept above three or four nights in a bed; but, after walking a great deal all the day, I have lain down upon a little hay, straw, fodder, or a bear skin, whichever was to be had, with man, wife, and children, like dogs and cats, and happy is he who gets the berth nearest the fire."

But the young surveyor was often at Greenway Court taking part in its pastimes, or spending his time in sober conversation with Lord Fairfax, or in reading the books on history which were found in his friend's library.

64. Washington as a Soldier Against the French. Suddenly Washington's whole life was changed. His brother Lawrence died and left to George the care of his only daughter, and the beautiful

At
Green-
way
Court

Mount Vernon home. At the age of twenty Washington found himself at the head of two large plantations. But he had hardly begun his new duties before he was called to serve his governor and the king.

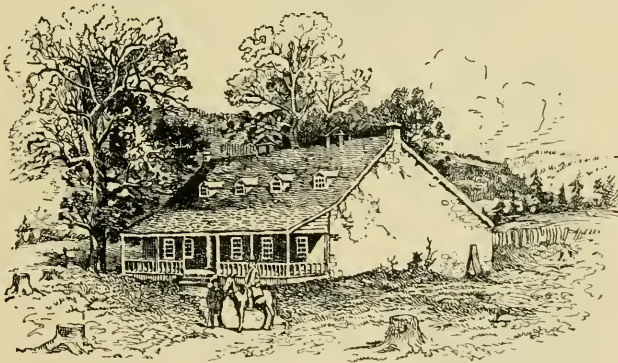
Heavy
responsi-
bility at
twenty

The French in Canada were building a chain of outposts from Lake Erie into Pennsylvania to the headwaters of the Ohio River so that they might have a shorter route to their trading posts on the Mississippi. Governor Dinwiddie of Virginia had sent orders for them to get out of the country, but his messenger did not get within a hundred miles of the French soldiers.

It was probably Lord Fairfax who said to the governor: "Here is the very man for you; young and daring, but sober minded and responsible, who only lacks opportunity to show the stuff that is in him."

In October, 1753, Washington, not then twenty-two, set out with servants, horses, and two companions for the French posts. One companion was the old Dutch soldier who had taught Washington to use the sword, and the other was the famous backwoodsman, Christopher

George
Washing-
ton sent
to order
the
French
out of
Virginia
territory



GREENWAY COURT, THE VIRGINIA HOME OF LORD FAIRFAX

Surmounting the broad, sweeping roof, pierced by dormer windows, were two belfries, doubtless designed for bells to call the settlers together when an Indian uprising was feared.

Gist. They pushed on through deep forests, over the mountains, across swift rivers, to the Indian village near where Pittsburgh stands. From there Washington hurried on to the fort on French Creek.

The French commander received him with great politeness, and tried to keep him many days. But Washington saw that the French were really preparing to fight to hold this "gateway to the West."



WASHINGTON ON HIS WAY BACK FROM
THE FRENCH POSTS

The Frenchmen very politely said that they intended to hold that region at all hazard. Washington and his party at once started back with the answer.

Washington's party traveled through rain and snow, hurrying through dense forests where savages lurked ready to scalp them. An Indian shot at Washington, but missed him. Their horses gave out, and Washington and Gist plunged into the forest alone, on foot, anxious

to lose no time. At last they reached Williamsburg.

War now seemed certain, and the governor hurried Washington forward with about one hundred fifty men to cut a road through the forests and over the mountains. But the French had already reached and built Fort Duquesne, where the Ohio is formed, and were then hurrying forward a party to look for the English. Just after Washington's men crossed the mountains they surprised the French scouts, killed their commander, and took the rest prisoners. Young Washington wrote home that he had heard the whistle of bullets and liked the music.

Although Washington's company soon grew to three hundred fifty men, he built Fort Necessity, for a French force numbering four times his own was now close upon him. A battle followed. Standing knee deep in mud and water, the English fired all day at

The trip
back to
Virginia

Wash-
ington
cuts a
road over
the
moun-
tains

He wins
one bat-
tle, and
loses
another

the hidden foe. Their ammunition was about gone, and their men were falling. Washington surrendered the fort, and the little army, with sad hearts, started home along their newly-made road.

65. Washington and Braddock. But these were stirring times in Virginia, for an English general, Braddock, had come up the Potomac; and soldiers, cannon, and supplies were passing right by the doors of Mount Vernon. Every day Washington looked upon the king's soldiers, and saw the flash of sword and bayonet. How could he keep out of it? General Braddock liked the young Virginian, and made him an officer on his staff.

Braddock was a brave man, but he had never made war in the woods, nor against Indians. One day Washington suggested that a long train of heavily loaded wagons would make the march very, very slow. He was thinking of Indians. Braddock only smiled, as if to say that a young backwoodsman could not teach him how to fight.

Benjamin Franklin, a very wise man from Philadelphia, was also troubled when he thought of how the Indians and French would cut to pieces that long line of troops as they marched through the deep, dark forests. Braddock smiled again, and said: "These savages may be dangerous to the raw American militia, but it is impossible that they should make any impression on the king's troops."

The army, over two thousand strong, slowly crossed the mountains, and by July had almost reached Fort Duquesne. One day nearly one thousand French and Indians swarmed on both sides

Wash-
ington
joins
Brad-
dock's
army



A VIRGINIA RIFLEMAN

Braddock
too vain
to take
good
advice

of the road, and from behind the safe cover of trees poured a deadly fire upon Braddock's men. "God save the king!" cried the British soldiers, as they formed in line of battle.

Washington urged Braddock to permit the English to take to the

trees and fight Indian fashion, as the Virginians were doing, but Braddock forced his men to stand and be shot down by the unseen foe. Braddock himself was mortally wounded. Washington had two horses shot under him and his

A great
defeat



WASHINGTON AND THE VIRGINIANS SAVE BRADDOCK'S ARMY

clothes pierced by four bullets. The British regulars soon ran madly back upon the soldiers in the rear. They threw away guns and left their cannon and wagons, while the Virginians under Washington kept the Indians back. The British army retreated to Philadelphia, but Washington returned to Virginia, where he received the thanks of the Burgesses. He at once collected troops, and hastened into the Shenandoah Valley to protect the settlers from the French and Indians.

The next year (1756) Washington journeyed on horseback to Boston. He wore his colonel's uniform of buff and blue, with a white and scarlet cloak over his shoulders. At his side hung a fine sword. With him rode two aids in uniform, besides two servants. Many an admiring eye was turned toward this stately

Wash-
ington
thanked
for his
bravery
by the
Bur-
gesses

Colonel
Wash-
ington
visits
Boston

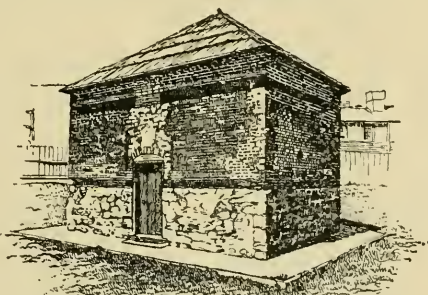
young Cavalier. After this journey he returned to the frontier, near Greenway Court, and remained there a year or two more.

66. Washington Meets his Future Wife. One day while on his way to Williamsburg with war dispatches, Washington halted at a plantation to take dinner with a friend. There he was introduced to Mrs. Martha Custis, a charming young widow of his own age.

Washington
introduced to
Martha
Custis

After dinner the conversation with her was too interesting for the young officer to see the horses being led back and forth near the window. The horses were stabled again. After supper Washington was not yet ready to mount. Not until late in the afternoon next day did he mount and ride away with all speed for the capital. On his return, he visited Mrs. Custis at her own beautiful plantation, and did not leave until he had her promise of marriage.

Great armies were already gathering. William Pitt, who sent Wolfe to capture Quebec, also ordered General Forbes to march against Fort Duquesne. But it was November before the army reached the Ohio. The French and Indians had nearly all gone to fight on the St. Lawrence, and the place was easily captured. It is said that Washington himself ran up the English flag. The fort's name was changed to Fort Pitt.



Wolfe
made it
easy to
capture
Fort Du-
quesne

THE OLD BLOCK HOUSE, PITTSBURGH
*Still standing to-day in the heart of the
city, formed part of Fort Pitt*

67. Old Days in Virginia. Washington now hastened home to claim his bride. To the wedding came the new royal governor in scarlet and gold, and the king's officers in bright uniforms. There, too, came the great planters with their wives dressed in the best that the yearly ship could bring from London. The bride

A
Virginia
wedding



A RECEPTION AT THE GOVERNOR'S

*At these receptions gay cavaliers and high-born ladies trod the stately minuet
or danced the famous Virginia reel*

rode home in a coach drawn by six beautiful horses, while Washington, well mounted, rode by the side of the coach, attended by many friends on horseback.

Elected
to the
House
of Bur-
gesses

The hardy settlers of the frontier, grateful to their brave defender, had already elected him to represent them in the House of Burgesses. He was proud to take his young wife to the meeting of the Burgesses when the old capital town was at its gayest, and when the planters came pouring in to attend the governor's reception.

Washington had already taken his seat among the Burgesses when the speaker arose and, in a very eloquent speech, praised him and presented him the thanks of the House for his gallant deeds as a soldier. Washington was so confused to hear himself so highly

praised, that, when he arose to reply, he could not say a word. "Sit down, Mr. Washington," said the speaker, "your modesty is equal to your valor, and that surpasses any language that I possess." **Too confused to make a speech**

Washington took his young bride to Mount Vernon, and there began the life that he enjoyed far more than the life of a soldier. He felt a deep interest in everything on the plantation. Early every morning he visited his stables and his kennel, for he liked horses and dogs very much. He then mounted a spirited horse and rode over his plantation to look at the growing fields of tobacco or wheat, or at the work of his slaves.

When the king's inspectors in the West Indies and in London saw barrels of flour marked "George Washington, Mount Vernon," they let them pass, for they were always good. He looked after his own and his wife's plantations so well that in a few years he was one of the richest men in America.

But besides such duties, there were many simple pleasures to be enjoyed at Mount Vernon. Here his soldier friends always found a warm welcome.

Lord Fairfax and other Virginia gentlemen went often to Mount Vernon to enjoy a fox chase. Sometimes Mrs. Washington and the ladies rode with dash and courage after the hounds. Now and then boating parties on the

**Old
Mount
Vernon
days**



FOX HUNTING IN VIRGINIA

In some sections of our country this popular sport of the Virginia colonists is still followed as in the days of George and Martha Washington

wide Potomac were the order of the day. Many times the halls and grounds of Mount Vernon rang with the shouts and laughter of younger people, guests, who had come from miles around, for George and Martha Washington were young in spirit.

68. The Mutterings of War. One day in June, 1765, Washington came back from Williamsburg and told his family and neighbors about the bold resolutions and fiery speech of a rustic-looking member named Patrick Henry. He said that many older members opposed Henry. Washington took Henry's side, but his friends, the Fairfaxes, took the king's side in favor of the Stamp Act.

When the king put a tax on tea, Washington and many of his neighbors signed an agreement not to buy any more tea of England until the tax was taken off. When he heard that Samuel Adams and the "Mohawks" had thrown the tea into Boston Harbor, he

knew that exciting times would soon be at hand.

The very next year the king ordered more soldiers to go to Boston and put in force the Boston Port Bill and other unjust laws. The colonies saw the danger, and sent



SCENE AT MOUNT VERNON IN THE DAYS OF WASHINGTON

their best men to hold the first Continental Congress at Philadelphia.

Virginia, as we have seen, sent George Washington, Patrick Henry, Richard Henry Lee, and other great men. Washington

Washington
took
sides with
Patrick
Henry

Sent to
the Con-
tinental
Congress

however, was not an orator, and made no speech in the Congress, as others did. He was a man of deeds. His time had not yet come.

Many persons were surprised to find him so young, for twenty years before they had heard of his deeds against the French, and how he had saved the broken pieces of Braddock's army. A member of Congress declared that "if you speak of solid information, and of sound judgment, Colonel



WASHINGTON DRILLING HIS VIRGINIANS

A
youthful
colonel

Washington is unquestionably the greatest man on the floor."

The Congress, among other things, resolved to stand by Boston, if General Gage should make war on that town. Washington knew what that meant. He was not at home many months before he was busy drilling his brave Virginians, many of whom had been with him in the French and Indian War.

69. Washington Made Commander of the American Armies.

In the last days of April, 1775, the news of the fight at Lexington and Concord was spreading rapidly southward. Washington, dressed in the buff and blue uniform of a Virginia colonel, hurried to Philadelphia to the meeting of the second Continental Congress. His day had come. It was now a time for deeds. The American army that surrounded Gage in Boston must have a head. John Adams arose in Congress and said that for the place of commander

In Con-
gress
again

What
John
Adams
said

he had "but one gentleman in mind—a gentleman from Virginia—whose skill and experience as an officer, whose independent fortune, great talents, and excellent universal character would command the approbation of all America, and unite the colonies better than any other person in the Union."

Before all these words were spoken, Washington, much moved, had left the room. Congress elected him unanimously to be commander-in-chief of its armies. When he accepted the honor, he said: "I beg it may be remembered by every gentleman in this room, that I this day declare with the utmost sincerity, I do not think myself equal to the command I am honored with."

What
Wash-
ington
said to
Congress
and
wrote to
his wife

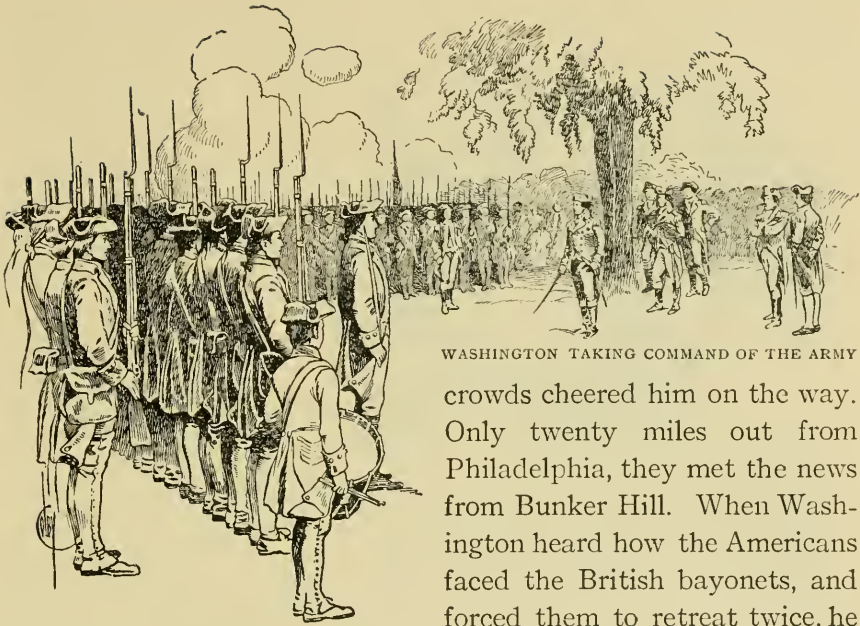
Washington wrote immediately to his wife: "You may believe me, my dear Patsey, that so far from seeking this appointment, I have used every endeavor in my power to avoid it, not only from my own unwillingness to part from you and the family, but from the consciousness of its being a trust too great for my capacity." Great men are often the most modest.

On the
way to
take com-
mand



A COLLEGE WELCOME AT YALE

different the journey! Then he was a Virginia colonel. Now the honored commander of all the American armies. Then only a few friends were with him. Now congressmen, citizens of Philadelphia, and great



WASHINGTON TAKING COMMAND OF THE ARMY

crowds cheered him on the way. Only twenty miles out from Philadelphia, they met the news from Bunker Hill. When Washington heard how the Americans faced the British bayonets, and forced them to retreat twice, he

News
from
Bunker
Hill

exclaimed: "The liberties of the country are safe!"

Through New Jersey he was hailed by the people with delight. A military procession escorted him through New York City, where he appointed that noble general, Philip Schuyler, to take command in New York. The students at Yale gave him a real college welcome—a parade with a band and student songs.

On Cambridge Common, under the famous Harvard Elm, on July 3, 1775, Washington drew his sword and took command of the Continental army. There was a great task before him. He had to drill the troops, collect cannon from Ticonderoga, which Americans had captured, and get ready to drive the British out of Boston.

Took
com-
mand of
the army,
July 3,
1775

It took all winter to do these things. One night in March, 1776, Washington secretly sent some of his best troops to build a fort

A
bloodless
victory

on Dorchester Heights. The next morning Howe, the new British general, saw Washington's cannon pointing down on his army and ships. He immediately put his army on board and sailed away. This was a victory without a fight.



Wash-
ington
outwits
Howe

ENTERTAINING GENERAL HOWE AND HIS OFFICERS
At Murray Hill, then a great farmstead, now the heart of New York City, Mrs. Murray entertained them so delightfully two hours slipped away, and the Americans were out of reach

Washington took his army to New York, and built a fort on Long Island to protect the city. He was none too quick, for Howe came with thirty thousand men and many war ships.

New
York
captured

In the battle on Long Island, a part of Washington's army was defeated. General Howe planned to capture the defeated troops next day, but Washington was too shrewd. In the night he collected all the boats in that region and rowed his army over to New York before the British knew what he was doing.

The great British army and fleet took the city, but by the help of a patriotic lady, Mrs. Murray, who entertained General Howe and his officers too long for their own good, all of Washington's regiments got away safely up the Hudson. During the fall of 1776, General Howe tried to get above Washington and capture him. But he did neither, for Washington's troops defeated the British at both Harlem Heights and White Plains.

Heroic
Nathan
Hale

While at Harlem Heights Washington felt that he must learn some secrets about the enemy. Nathan Hale, a young officer, volunteered to bring General Washington the information he wanted;

but Hale was caught by the British and hanged. "I only regret," he said, "that I have but one life to lose for my country."

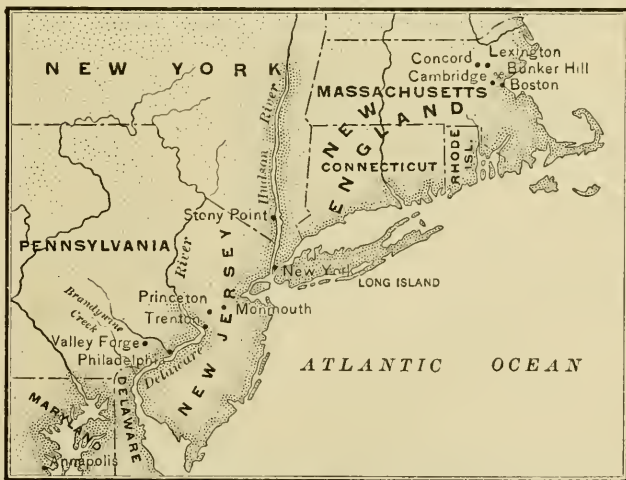
Howe then turned back as if to march against Philadelphia and capture Congress. Washington quickly threw a part of his army across the Hudson into New Jersey but he had to retreat. The British followed in a hot chase across New Jersey. Washington crossed the Delaware, and took with him all the boats for many miles up and down the river. The British decided to wait till they could cross on the ice. Some of their generals thought the war was about over, and hastened back to New York to spend the Christmas holidays.

Washington retreats but fights

70. The People Did Not Know Washington. Those were, indeed, dark days for the Americans. Hundreds of Washington's soldiers had gone home discouraged, and many other faint-hearted Americans thought the cause lost, and were again promising obedience to George III. But the people did not yet know Washington.

Americans discouraged

On Christmas night, with two thousand five hundred picked men, Washington took to his boats, and crossed the Delaware in spite of the floating ice. Nine miles away, in Trenton, lay the Hessians, those soldiers



SCENE OF WASHINGTON'S CAMPAIGNS IN THE NORTH



WASHINGTON ON THE MARCH TO TRENTON

All night, thinly clad, many without shoes and with bleeding feet, over the frozen ground, on marched the shivering men, bringing at daybreak disaster to the Hessians asleep after their Christmas revels

from Hesse-Cassel, in Europe, whom George III had hired to fight his American subjects, because Englishmen refused to fight Americans.

On went the little army in spite of the biting cold and blinding snow. Two men froze to death and others were numb with cold.

"Our guns are wet," said an officer. "Then use the bayonet!" replied Washington. There was a sudden rush of tramping feet and the roar of cannon in the streets. The Hessian general was killed, and one thousand of his men surrendered.

These were a strange lot of prisoners. Not one could speak a word of English nor cared a thing for George III. No doubt they wished themselves at home on that morning. But the Hessians were not more surprised than the British generals in New York.

An early
morning
surprise

Cornwallis, the British commander, hurried forward with troops to capture Washington, but rested his army at Trenton. That night Washington's army stole away, and Cornwallis awoke in the morning to hear the booming of Washington's cannon at Princeton, where Washington was defeating another part of the British army. Cornwallis hastened to Princeton. It was too late. Washington was safe among the heights of Morristown, where Cornwallis did not dare attack him.

Washington outwits another English general

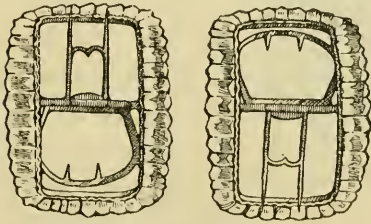


HESSIAN FLAG

From a photo of the flag taken by Washington from the Hessians at Trenton and now in the museum at Alexandria

These two victories turned the tide and aroused the Americans. Reënforcements and supplies made Washington's army stronger and more comfortable.

The next spring (1777) General Howe decided to capture Philadelphia. But Washington boldly moved his army across Howe's line of march. Howe did not want to fight, so he put his army on board his ships, sailed around into the Chesapeake, landed, and marched for the "rebel capital," as the British called Philadelphia.



KNEE BUCKLES WORN BY GENERAL WASHINGTON

At Brandywine Creek, south of Philadelphia, Washington faced him. A severe battle was fought. Each side lost about one thousand men. The Americans slowly retreated. In this battle Lafayette, a young French nobleman who had come to fight for America, was wounded.

Washington and Howe meet at the Brandywine

71. The Winter at Valley Forge. The British slowly made their way to Philadelphia. Washington took post for the winter at Valley Forge, on the Schuylkill River, twenty miles northwest of

Valley Forge

Philadelphia. There, in the deep woods, among the hills, and in log huts built by their own hands, the American forces passed a winter so full of suffering that it makes one shudder to read the story.

**What the
soldiers
suffered
for inde-
pendence**

When the army marched into Valley Forge, "their route could be traced on the snow by the blood that oozed from their bare, frost-bitten feet." Washington wrote to Congress that nearly three thousand of his men were "barefoot or otherwise naked."

A part of the army had no bread for three days, and for two days no meat. Hundreds had no beds, and were glad to sleep on piles of straw. Others had no blankets, and sat up nights before the fire to keep from freezing. Many sickened and died. But in Philadelphia, the well-fed British soldiers had a gay season, with balls and banquets.



**Steuben
helps
drill
the men**

CAMP AT VALLEY FORGE

Washington grieved over the suffering of his men, but never lost heart. All the winter through, by the aid of General Steuben, a noble German officer, he drilled his men. In the spring when the British started back to New York,

he gave them such a bayonet charge at Monmouth, New Jersey (1778), that they were glad to escape that night, instead of stopping to rest and bury their dead.

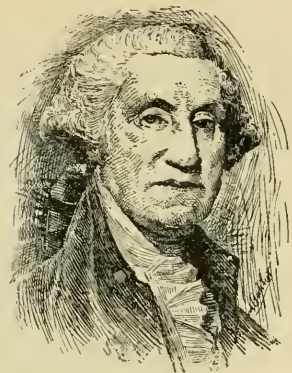
72. The Crowning Victory at Yorktown. For the next three years the British army remained in New York, not daring to come out and attack Washington.

Finally, in the summer of 1781, General Lafayette, whom Washington had sent to Virginia to watch the British army there, sent him word that Cornwallis had come up from the Carolinas, and had taken post at Yorktown. Washington also got word that a large French war fleet was coming to the coast of Virginia to aid the Americans.

Washington now saw his chance. He ordered Lafayette to watch Cornwallis while he himself took two thousand ragged Continentals and four thousand French troops in bright uniforms, and slipped away from New York. He was almost in Philadelphia before the British or his own soldiers could guess where he was going.

At Yorktown, Washington and his army found both Lafayette and the French fleet keeping watch. Day and night the siege went on amid the roar of cannon. When all was ready, then came the wild charge of the Americans and the French in the face of British cannon and over British breastworks. The outer works were won, and Cornwallis saw that he must surrender. Seven thousand of the king's troops marched out and gave up their arms.

The victory at Yorktown made all Americans happy, and they rang bells, fired cannon, built bonfires, and praised Washington and Lafayette. But England was now tired of war, and many of her great men declared in favor of peace, which was soon made, in 1783.



GEORGE WASHINGTON
From the Gibbs-Channing portrait painted by Gilbert Stuart, the first portrait of Washington, now in the possession of Samuel P. Avery, of New York

Good news from Lafayette

Washington again outwits Cornwallis

Cornwallis surrenders



THE SURRENDER OF CORNWALLIS

After the painting by John Trumbull which hangs in the rotunda of the Capitol at Washington

73. Washington Bids Farewell to his Officers and to Congress.

Washington bade farewell to his brave soldiers, with whom he had fought so long. The parting with his officers in Fraunce's Tavern, New York, was a touching scene. With tears in his eyes, and with a voice full of tenderness, he embraced each one as he bade him good-by. It was like the parting of a father from his sons.

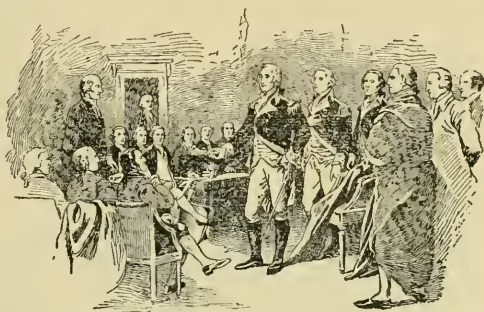
Washington journeyed to Annapolis, Maryland, where Congress was then held, to give back the authority of commander-in-chief which Congress had bestowed on him eight years before. How unselfish had been the conduct of Washington in refusing pay for his services! How noble was the act of giving up his power over an army which idolized him, and which he might have used to make

A
touching
scene

A noble
act

himself king! But he did not think of these things as he hastened to his beautiful Mount Vernon to enjoy Christmas time once more with his loved ones.

But what a change had come to Virginia! Eight years before George III was king over all the Thirteen Colonies, and Virginia was ruled by one of his governors. Now the people were ruling themselves, and had elected one of Washington's neighbors, Benjamin



How the war had changed things

WASHINGTON'S RESIGNATION
After the painting by Trumbull in the Capitol at Washington

Harrison, to be their governor. He missed some old friends. Some had died on the field of battle; others, like Lord Fairfax, had gone back to England, where they could be ruled by George III. Soon visitors began to come—old soldiers, beloved generals, and great statesmen from America, as well as distinguished people from Europe. They all wanted the honor of visiting the man who had led the American armies to victory, but who, again, was only a Virginia planter.

74. Washington Elected First President. The American



MOUNT VERNON, THE HOME OF WASHINGTON

people, however, would not let him long enjoy Mount Vernon, for when they met to make a new Constitution, or plan of government, he was chairman of the meeting and when

Another call to duty



WASHINGTON'S GRAND ENTRY INTO NEW YORK CITY, 1780

From a chromo-lithograph after an original drawing by Alphonse Bigot

that government was to go into operation they would have no other man for their first President than George Washington.

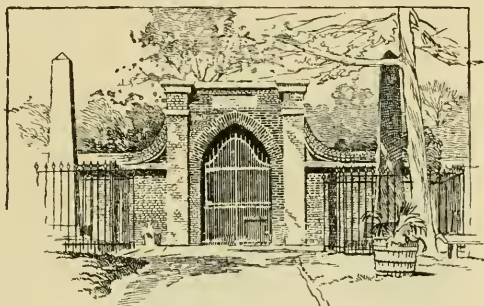
In 1789 he once more bade Mount Vernon and his aged mother good-by, and began the journey to New York, which was at that time the capital of the new nation. What a journey! It was almost one continual procession and celebration! At every town and roadside the people came to show their love for Washington, whom they rightly called the "Father of his Country." School children scattered flowers in his way and beautiful young women sang patriotic songs as he passed under decorated arches. When he reached New York Harbor the bay was white with the sails of many nations. Crowds thronged the streets, cannon boomed, and flags were thrown to the breeze to welcome him.

A triumphal procession from Mount Vernon to New York

On April 30, 1789, standing on the balcony of Federal Hall in Wall Street, Washington took the oath of office, and pledged himself to govern the people according to the Constitution they had just made. He reverently bent and kissed the Bible, and became the first President of the United States. From the street, from doors and windows, and from the housetops, the people cried out: "Long live George Washington, President of the United States!"

Washington takes the oath as first President

His new office was almost as hard a task as the Revolution had been. He was now in charge of the affairs of the country. He had to see to it that laws were made to protect the rights of every one. Then he had to see that these laws were carried out. He could not guide himself by what another President had done, for there had been none before him.



WASHINGTON'S TOMB, MOUNT VERNON

But Washington directed the new ship of state so that it suffered no harm. When it looked as though we would have another war with England, he wisely preserved peace. So well were the people satisfied that they made him President a second time. When they offered him the office for a third term he refused. Thousands gathered to see him leave the capital. As he gave them his final farewell, tears rolled down his cheeks, and men cried like children.

He was glad to get back to Mt. Vernon, for he had grown old and weary in serving his country. He spent his remaining years among the scenes he loved so well. There he died in 1799, mourned as a father by the whole people.

Death in 1799

THE MAN WHO HELPED WIN INDEPENDENCE BY WINNING THE HEARTS OF FRENCHMEN FOR AMERICA

BENJAMIN FRANKLIN, THE WISEST AMERICAN OF HIS TIME

75. Benjamin Franklin, the Boy Printer. When Franklin was born in Boston (1706) there were men still living who had seen John Winthrop, the first governor of Massachusetts, and Roger Williams, the founder of Rhode Island.

Born in
colonial
times

The
scholar
of the
family



But is
put to
work

BENJAMIN FRANKLIN

From the original portrait by Joseph Siffrein Duplessis, in the Museum of Fine Arts, Boston

Franklin's father was a poor but hard-working man. He made soap and candles. Benjamin's nine brothers had learned trades, but his parents had decided that he should be the "scholar of the family." At eight he went to school to prepare for college and was soon at the head of his class.

But a family of seventeen was hard to feed and clothe, and Benjamin was sent to another school where he could fit himself for business. But he did poorly in arithmetic, and was taken out of school at ten and put to work with his father.

In the port of Boston Franklin saw the ships and sailors of all nations, and longed to go to sea, but his father took him to visit the shops, where he saw men busy at work with all kinds of tools. Although Benjamin liked to work with tools, he liked to read better, and spent all his little earnings in buying books. He borrowed books when he could not buy them.

Longs
for the
sea

Finally Franklin's parents decided that since he loved books so

well he might be a printer, and put him to learn the trade with an older brother. Benjamin was to serve his brother for his board and clothes until he was twenty-one. He worked hard at his trade, and read more books than before. He improved his own language by writing out in his own words what he had read, and then comparing his account with the author's.

How he improved his writing

He now offered to take half the money that his board cost, and board himself. His brother agreed to this plan, and Benjamin saved money and bought more books.

He longed to write something for his brother's paper. He did so, and put it at night under the door, but he did not dare sign his name to what he had written. His brother showed it to his friends. They praised it, and it was printed. It was fun for Benjamin to hear people guessing that the writer must be some great man in Boston. Franklin wrote several other articles, and called them the "Dogood Papers," but his brother was angry when he learned who wrote them.

Writes for his brother's paper

Franklin was now only seventeen, but because of his brother's cruelty he sold his books and took a boat for New York without saying good-by to his parents. He afterwards said that leaving home in this way was a great mistake.

Leaves home

No one in New York wanted a printer, so young Franklin took a boat for Perth-Amboy, New Jersey, on his way to Philadelphia. His ship was caught in a storm, and the passengers were wet and hungry when they landed.

From New York to Philadelphia

Franklin set out on foot across the state for Burlington. For nearly three days he walked in the rain along muddy roads, looking so rough people thought he was a runaway servant. He was tired and homesick. But he took boat again, and reached Philadelphia on Sunday morning, landing at the foot of Market Street.

His
sorry
plight

He was so hungry, he thought more of something to eat than of dressing up for Sunday. He was in a sorry plight. With his pockets stuffed with soiled shirts and stockings, and a roll of bread under each arm and one in his hand, Franklin walked up Market Street, and passed the home of his future wife, Deborah Reed. No wonder she laughed at him. She would have laughed more if some one had said: "There goes a boy who will some day become your husband and the greatest man in Philadelphia."

Good
books
and good
company

Franklin found work in a printing office, saved his money, and bought books to study. He got acquainted with other young people, who also loved books, and with whom he often spent his evenings.

A call
from the
governor



Returns
home
before
going to
London

FRANKLIN AND DEBORAH REED
*The first meeting of Franklin and the
young girl who was to be his wife*

To the surprise of Franklin and his brother printers, one day Sir William Keith, the governor of Pennsylvania, called at the shop to see Franklin. Governors did not then pay much attention to poor printers. The governor, who was dissatisfied with Philadelphia printers, promised to send him to England to buy a printing press.

Franklin, with the governor's letter in his pocket, hastened back to Boston in order to get his father's help to go to London. How happy were parents, brothers, and sisters to see the long-absent son and brother! But his father could give him no aid, and the young printer returned to Philadelphia. The governor, however, promised to pay his expenses, and Benjamin took ship for England.

The governor had not even given him letters of introduction, to say nothing of money, and Franklin found himself a stranger in one of the largest cities in the world.

He did not whine or spend his time grumbling, but went bravely to work in a printing office. He set a good example to his beer-drinking comrades by drinking only water. He was stronger and did more work and did it better than any of them.

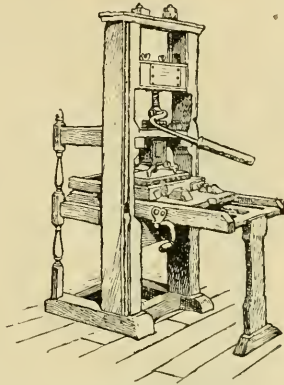
The next year a Philadelphia merchant persuaded Franklin to return to America to become his clerk. But in a few years he went to work again at his old trade as printer, and in a short time became the editor of the "Pennsylvania Gazette."

Franklin had already married Miss Reed, the young lady who had laughed at him for making a show of himself on his first day in Philadelphia.

76. A Rising Young Man. He was now a rising young man in the old Quaker city. From year to year he did many things to help others. He started a circulating library, the first in America, out of which has grown the Philadelphia Public Library. He founded a school, which has become the great University of Pennsylvania, and a society, called the American Philosophical Society, which still holds important meetings.

Franklin improved the heating of houses by inventing the "Franklin stove," but refused to take out a patent, and thus make himself rich at other people's expense. He also formed the first "fire department" in any American town.

Who has not heard of "Poor Richard's Almanac"? Franklin



PRINTING PRESS

From a photo of the press used by Franklin when in London, and now in the National Museum, Washington, D. C.

In a
London
printing
office

Returns
to Phila-
delphia
and
marries

Founds
three
great
institu-
tions

Invents
a stove

Forms
the
first fire
depart-
ment

Poor
Rich-
ard's
sayings

printed it, and the people liked it so well that he sometimes printed ten thousand copies. Here are a few of the quaint and true sayings: "A word to the wise is enough." "God helps those who help themselves."

"Early to bed and early to rise,

Makes a man healthy, wealthy, and wise."

Franklin and his young wife kept these rules faithfully. She worked in the printing office as well as in the house. They hired no servants. Their furniture, dress, and food were plain. He ate his breakfast of bread and milk out of a wooden bowl with a pewter spoon. Mrs. Franklin surprised him one day by giving him a china bowl and a silver spoon. She said her husband deserved such things as well as other men.

The people of Philadelphia admired Benjamin Franklin more and more. At the age of thirty he was chosen clerk of the Assembly of

A FRANKLIN STOVE
After a model in the
rooms of the American
Philosophical
Society, Philadelphia

Pennsylvania, and afterward was elected a lawmaker in the Assembly. Every year for ten years his neighbors elected him to help make the laws of the colony.

In a few years Franklin was made deputy postmaster-general for all the colonies by the king. He surprised the people by declaring that the mail should be carried from Philadelphia to Boston every week! He was postmaster-general for more than twenty years.

Economy
is the
road to
wealth



Elected
to office

Deputy
post-
master-
general



MILESTONE, LYME, CONN.

This milestone, still standing at Lyme, marks the distance on a road surveyed by Franklin

In 1754 Franklin was sent by the colony of Pennsylvania to Albany, New York, to meet men from other colonies to make a treaty with the Iroquois, and to plan a union of the Thirteen Colonies. While George Washington was still a surveyor, before Wolfe captured Quebec, and when Patrick Henry was yet a boy, Franklin wrote out a plan of union, which pointed the way toward that greater Union, the United States of America.

Franklin plans a union of the colonies

Franklin was now becoming famous outside of Pennsylvania. Yale College honored him with the degree of Master of Arts. The old University of Cambridge, England, gave him the same degree.

Fame begins to come

All the wise men in England and France were excited by news of an experiment made by Benjamin Franklin. He had made electricity by using glass tubes, and he had seen the lightning flash in the storm cloud. He decided to prove, if he could, that lightning and electricity are the same. No one had yet done this.

He made a kite out of silk, to which he fastened a small iron rod. Then he tied a hempen string to the kite and the rod. To the lower end of the string he tied a silken cord to protect his hand from the electricity. On the string he tied a key.

Proves that lightning and electricity are the same

One day when the storm clouds came rolling up, Franklin sent his kite high up among them, while he waited. Soon the loose fibers on the hempen string moved. Franklin placed his knuckles close to the key, and sparks came flying at his hand.

When the news of this experiment was published some very wise men smiled; others said it was a trick. The great Universities of Oxford and Edinburgh, however, gave him the doctor's degree, and societies of wise men in England, France, and Spain elected him a member. He was now the most famous American.

More honors

77. Franklin's Part in the Revolution. Already we have seen that England and her colonies were beginning to quarrel. What

Sent to
England
to defend
the
colonies

wiser man could be sent to England to defend the colonies by tongue and pen than Benjamin Franklin? He made friends for America among the great men of England.

When the Stamp Act was passed the members of Parliament asked him nearly two hundred questions about the effects of the Stamp Act on America. He wrote many letters to great men,

How
Franklin
helped
the Eng-
lish un-
derstand
the
Stamp
Act



and long articles to the English newspapers, explaining how the Stamp Act injured America. Both England and America rejoiced when the king and Parliament repealed the Stamp Act, and Franklin sent his wife a fine London gown in honor of the event.

For eight years more, while America was busy opposing the tax on tea, Franklin was in England trying to get Parliament and the king to give the Americans better treatment. But it was all in vain. He often talked with William Pitt, the great friend of America, who introduced into Parliament a plan for making friends between the two countries. But the plan was defeated.

Franklin saw that war would come, and hastened back to his beloved America, where he arrived just after the battle at Lexington and Concord (1775).

FRANKLIN'S CLOCK

Franklin
and Pitt

Hastens
home

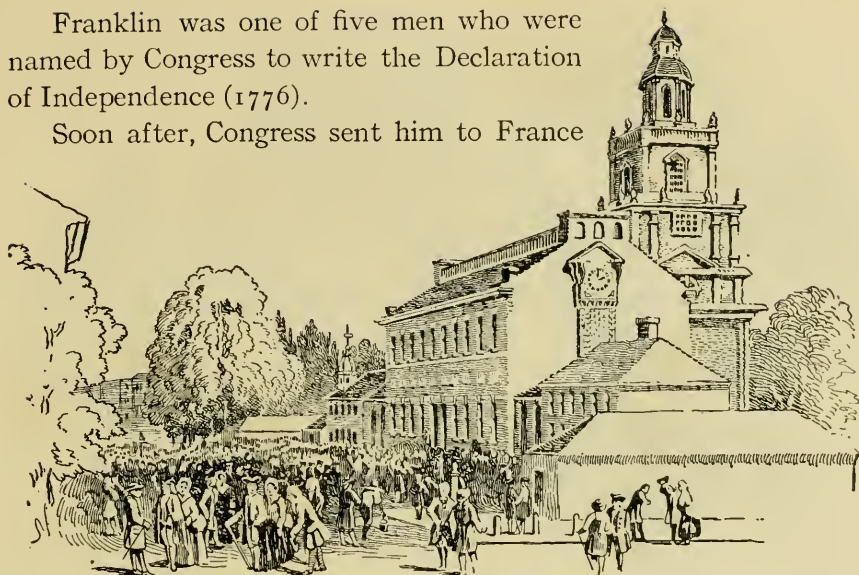
The war
begins
and
Franklin
plans
union

Pennsylvania sent him to the Congress of 1775, which, sitting in Philadelphia, made George Washington general of the Continental army. Franklin saw that if the thirteen scattered colonies were to defeat Great Britain they must unite. So he introduced into Congress a plan of union, but the other members were not ready for it.

Franklin was one of five men who were named by Congress to write the Declaration of Independence (1776).

Soon after, Congress sent him to France

Appointed to help write the Declaration of Independence



INDEPENDENCE HALL, PHILADELPHIA, IN THE DAYS OF FRANKLIN

From an old print

to influence the king and the people of that country to aid America in winning independence. The French hated the English, but admired Benjamin Franklin. The king gave money secretly, and many French officers came to serve in the American army.

Franklin in France

In 1778, Franklin influenced the King of France to take sides openly with the Americans. French war ships and French soldiers by thousands now came to help fight our battles.

France sends aid

After helping to make the treaty of peace with England in 1783, Franklin came home with many honors. Though nearly eighty years old, the people of Pennsylvania immediately elected him governor.

The treaty with England

Franklin did one more great work for his country. In 1787 the states sent their wisest men to Philadelphia to make a constitution or plan of government. Pennsylvania chose Franklin,



FRANKLIN AT THE COURT OF FRANCE

with others, to meet with these men in Independence Hall.

George Washington, as we have seen, was the president of this meeting. Many speeches were made, and there was debating for many weeks. The meeting was always glad to hear Franklin speak, for he was a very wise man. As he had helped to make, and had signed, the Declaration of Independence, so now, after helping make the Constitution, he signed it. Many persons did not like the Constitution. Franklin said there were some things in the new plan which he did not like, but declared that he signed it because of the good things it did contain. He showed his wisdom, for it is one of the best plans of government ever made.

Franklin spent his last days with his daughter, and, surrounded by his grandchildren, died in 1790, at the age of eighty-four.

Helps
make our
Constitution

Franklin
signs
the Constitution

Died in
1790

SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

The Leading Facts. 1. Washington was born on the Potomac, spent his early days on the Rappahannock, and went to school at Fredericksburg. 2. He learned many things outside of school, such as horse-back riding, fox hunting, and how to find his way in the deep forests. 3. He became a surveyor in the Shenandoah for Lord Fairfax. 4. Governor Dinwiddie sent Washington to order the French to leave the Ohio. 5. Washington joined Braddock's campaign against the French, and in the battle tried to save the army. 6. Washington married young Mrs. Martha Custis, and was elected to the House of Burgesses. 7. Heard Patrick Henry's fiery speech, went to first Continental Congress, and the second Congress made him commander over the Continental Army. 8. Washington drove the British out of Boston, outwitted them around New York, retreated across the Jerseys, and then beat them at Trenton and Princeton. 9. He fought at Brandywine, suffered at Valley Forge, penned the British up in New York, and finally captured Cornwallis at Yorktown. 10. Washington gave up his command, retired to Mount Vernon, but was called to be the first President of the new Republic. 11. Franklin's parents were poor, had seventeen children; hence Benjamin, though a studious fellow, was put to the printer's trade. 12. Franklin wrote the "Dogood Papers." Left home for New York, but went on to Philadelphia. 13. Persuaded to go to London. He returned and married. 14. Franklin started a circulating library, a school which became the University of Pennsylvania, and a society called The American Philosophical Society. 15. He invented a stove, founded the first fire department in America, and printed "Poor Richard's Almanac." 16. Wrote the first plan of an American Union, and won degrees from English and Scotch universities. 17. Franklin was one of the committee to write the Declaration of Independence. 18. Was sent to France, where he won the help of France in the War of the Revolution. 19. Franklin was governor of the state of Pennsylvania, was a delegate to help make the Constitution, and died at the age of 84.

Study Questions. 1. Who was Washington's father and where did he meet Washington's mother? 2. What was a plantation and why so large? 3. What things did Washington love to do besides study? 4. Why did George make a good captain? 5. Picture the yearly ship from London at Mount Vernon. 6. Who was Lord Fairfax and what did he engage Washington to do? 7. What did Washington do at Greenway Court? 8. Why was Washington chosen for the mission to the French and what was the result? 9. What were the preliminary events before the great war? 10. Picture Braddock's defeat. 11. How old was

Washington when he first visited Boston? 12. How did he become so rich? 13. What news did Washington bring back to Mount Vernon in 1765? 14. Who went to Congress with George Washington and how did a member speak of him? 15. What did he learn at Congress? 16. Picture the scene in the second Congress. 17. Describe the trip to Boston. 18. What task did he set before himself and how did he accomplish it? 19. How did Washington outwit Howe? 20. Who was Nathan Hale? 21. What discouraged the Americans? 22. Picture the surprise and capture of the Hessians. 23. How did Washington outwit Cornwallis? 24. What effect did these victories have? 25. What sort of a time did the soldiers spend at Valley Forge? 26. Who was Steuben and what did he do? 27. Picture the surrounding and capture of Cornwallis. 28. What changes had the war made in Virginia? 29. Picture Washington's journey to New York. 30. How long ago was Franklin born? 31. Tell of his school experiences. 32. Why did Franklin not go to sea? 33. Tell the story of his bargain with his brother. 34. What did Franklin hear about the "Dogood Papers"? 35. Tell the story of the "runaway printer." 36. How did he save his time in Philadelphia? 37. How did he happen to go to London the first time? 38. What good example did he set to London printers? 39. Why did he return to Philadelphia? 40. What three great institutions did he found? 41. Why did the people like "Poor Richard's Almanac"? 42. What public offices did he hold? 43. Picture Franklin proving that electricity and lightning are the same. 44. What did he go to England a second time for? 45. How did Franklin aid in the repeal of the Stamp Act? 46. In what great events did he have a part? 47. What was his work in France? 48. What was his last great work? 49. How did he spend his last days? 50. Point out the obstacles he overcame all along in his career.

Suggested Readings. WASHINGTON: Cooke, *Stories of the Old Dominion*, 94-139; Blaisdell and Ball, *Hero Stories from American History*, 62-76, 123-155; Hart, *Camps and Firesides of the Revolution*, 239-255, 261-266, 307-309; Glascock, *Stories of Columbia*, 101-113; Baldwin, *Four Great Americans*, 9-68; Hart, *How our Grandfathers Lived*, 45-47; Mabie, *Heroes Every Child Should Know*, 274-288; Hawthorne, *Grandfather's Chair*, 186-191; Magell, *Stories from Virginia History*, 56-78, 79-94; Wister, *The Seven Ages of Washington*.

FRANKLIN: Baldwin, *Four Great Americans*, 71-122; Hart, *Camps and Firesides of the Revolution*, 158-162; Hart, *Colonial Children*, 197-199, 210-214; Wright, *Children's Stories of Great Scientists*, 71-89; Bolton, *Famous American Statesmen*, 38-66; Brooks, *Century Book of Famous Americans*, 65-76.

PATRICK HENRY AND SAMUEL ADAMS, FAMOUS MEN
OF THE REVOLUTION, WHO DEFENDED AMERICA
BY TONGUE AND PEN

PATRICK HENRY, THE ORATOR OF THE REVOLUTION

78. The Stamp Act. The surrender of Quebec and the fall of New France caused great rejoicing among the thirteen colonies. But the long, hard war had left both England and her colonies deeply in debt. King George III, however, thinking only of England's debt, decided that England ought to tax the colonies to pay for an army which he wished to keep in America.

So the Parliament of England passed a law that all licenses to marry, all deeds to property, licenses to trade, newspapers, almanacs, and other pamphlets, had to be printed on stamped paper. This paper ranged in value from a few cents to many dollars.

Leading men in every one of the thirteen colonies spoke and wrote against the Stamp Act. Of all the men who did so, Patrick Henry, of Virginia, was the most eloquent and fiery. He had been elected by the people of his county to go up to Williamsburg, the capital of Virginia, to help make the laws. There were many able men in that old House of Burgesses, but none of them wished to take the lead in opposing the king's plan of a stamp tax.



PATRICK HENRY

*After the painting by Thomas Sully,
owned by William Wirt Henry,
the orator's grandson, Richmond,
Virginia*

Why the
king
wished
to tax
America

What the
Stamp
Act was

Patrick
Henry
in the
House
of Bur-
gesses



PATRICK HENRY SPEAKING IN THE HOUSE
OF BURGESSES

*From an engraving after the original
painting by Rothermel*

One day young Henry, although a new member, snatched a blank leaf from a law book and wrote down a set of resolutions declaring that only the Virginia Assembly could tax Virginians, and that any one who asserted the contrary was an enemy of the colony.

He backed up these resolutions with a speech that stirred the Burgesses. He was so fiery and bold that men almost held their breath while they listened to the young orator. He closed by declaring that George III was acting like a tyrant, and that "Caesar had his Brutus, Charles the First his Cromwell, and George the Third—" "Treason! treason!" shouted the

Speaker of the House. Waiting a moment till the noise ceased, the orator, with a calm and steady voice, added, "may profit by their example. If this be treason, make the most of it."

Henry's resolutions were passed, and were printed in almost every newspaper in the colonies. They made the people more determined than ever not to buy stamped paper.

Who was this young lawyer that stirred these dignified Virginia gentlemen in powdered hair, knee breeches, and silver buckles?

79. The Orator of the Revolution. Patrick Henry was born in Virginia (1736). His father was a well-educated Scotchman, who taught school and became a lawyer. His mother was of Welsh blood. Young Patrick went to school, but he liked to hunt and fish far better than to study. He was a puzzle to his parents.

Patrick
as a boy

By the time he was eighteen he had failed as a student, as a clerk, and as a storekeeper. He then married. The parents on both sides helped them to start farming with a few slaves. In two years Patrick Henry was forced to sell. Once more he tried keeping a country store. In three years the store closed its doors and Patrick Henry, aged twenty-three, was without an occupation.

Early
failures

He now turned to the study of law. Although not in love with school when a boy, he loved to read the Bible. He also had a strong liking for history, and, in his youth, read the histories of Greece, of Rome, of England, and of the colonies. By a few months of hard study of the law he passed the examination. He succeeded from the first, and in less than four years had been engaged in more than one thousand cases.

Liked to
study
history
and law

80. The Parsons' Case. In 1763, Patrick Henry set all Virginia to talking about him as a lawyer. This colony had paid its clergymen from the beginning. Each one received a certain number of pounds of tobacco for his salary. But the price was now high and now low. A dispute arose because of this and was taken into court. But no great lawyer would take the people's side.

Succeed-
ed as a
lawyer



PEOPLE OF THE COURT CARRYING PATRICK HENRY
ON THEIR SHOULDERS AROUND THE GREEN

Patrick Henry did. The courthouse was filled with people, many clergymen among them. In the judge's chair sat Patrick's own father.

Patrick's
father
the
judge

Henry began his speech in an awkward way. The clergymen felt encouraged, while his friends and father felt uneasy. Soon he

Henry's
first
great
speech

began to warm up. His words came more freely, and his gestures grew more graceful. The people began to listen and then to lean

forward spellbound by the charm of his eloquence and the power of his argument. The clergy grew angry and left the room. His father, forgetting that he was judge, cried for joy. When Henry finished, the people seized him and carried him on their shoulders from the court room and around the yard, shouting all the while.

The
people
overjoyed



ON THE WAY TO THE GREAT CONGRESS
AT PHILADELPHIA

Elected
a law-
maker

election his friends chose him to go to the House of Burgesses, and there, in 1765, he made his stirring speech against the Stamp Act.

Many great Englishmen, such as William Pitt and Edmund Burke, opposed the Stamp Tax. Finally, King George and his Parliament repealed the unpopular act. The Americans were happy when they heard of its repeal.

The
Stamp
Act re-
pealed

81. New Taxes. As if the king and Parliament could learn nothing, they passed a Tea Tax the very next year, placing a tax on all the tea imported into the colonies. Then the Americans



ST. JOHN'S CHURCH, RICHMOND

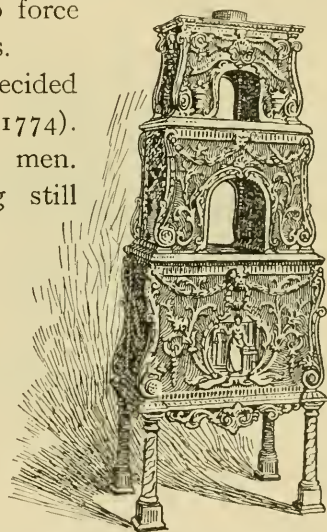
everywhere refused to buy the tea and pay the tax. When the tea ships came to America the people of New York and Philadelphia sent them back, and the "Sons of Liberty" at Annapolis burned a ship full of tea. The king's governor at Boston refused to permit the ships to carry the tea back to England, but the people, one night, threw the tea into the sea. King George grew angry at such "tea parties," and had laws passed to punish Boston. More British soldiers were sent there to force the people to obey these detested laws.

The colonies, more excited than ever, decided to hold a great Congress in Philadelphia (1774). Virginia, like the others, sent her best men. There in Carpenter's Hall, a building still standing, Henry made friends of leading men of other colonies. There he met Samuel Adams, who was doing with his pen what Henry was doing with his tongue, and they became life-long friends.

One day, when speaking in favor of united action, Patrick Henry declared: "The distinctions between Virginians, Pennsylvanians, New Yorkers, and New Englanders are no more. I am not a Virginian, but an American."

As Patrick Henry talked with men from other colonies and heard how the king's troops were acting at Boston, he was convinced that war must come. He went home and urged the people of Virginia to arm for the coming struggle. The king's governor refused to permit meetings in the old capitol at Williamsburg, so they were held in St. John's Church, Richmond, a church still standing.

The
Ameri-
cans
angry
over the
Tea Tax



Patrick
Henry
meets
Samuel
Adams at
the great
Congress

THE STOVE IN THE HOUSE OF THE
BURGESSES

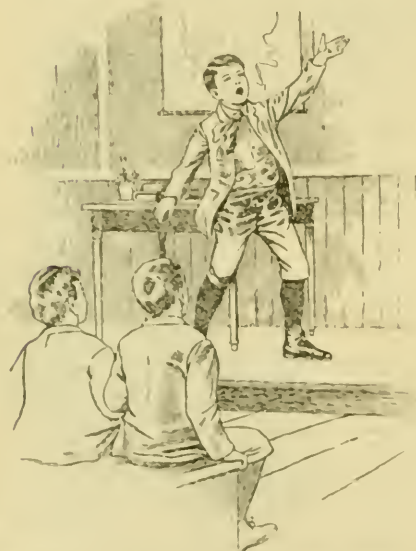
*This stove is now in the State
Library of Virginia*

A new
sentiment

Patrick
Henry's
new reso-
lutions

Here Patrick Henry offered resolutions declaring that Virginia should arm herself for the coming war. It was a serious time, and these were serious resolutions. Should the thirteen colonies go to war with one of the greatest nations in the world? Would it not be wise to send more petitions to the king? Some of the ablest men in Virginia opposed Henry's resolutions.

82. Patrick Henry Defends his Resolutions.



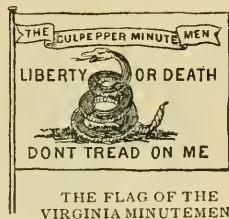
Patrick
Henry's
greatest
speech

DECLAIMING PATRICK HENRY'S FAMOUS SPEECH
*As a favorite declamation this great speech
still rouses the spirit of patriotism in
America*

listened to their speeches with smothered excitement. When he rose to defend his resolutions, his face was pale and his voice was trembling. But soon his audience forgot what other men had said. They leaned forward and listened as if no other man had spoken. He stirred their deepest feelings when he declared: "We must fight! I repeat it, Sir, we must fight! An appeal to arms and the God of Hosts is all that is left to us. They tell us, Sir, that we are weak; unable to cope with so formidable an adversary. But when shall we be stronger? Will it be the next

week or the next year? Sir, we are not weak, if we make a proper use of the means which the God of Nature hath placed in our power. There is no retreat but in submission and slavery. Our chains are forged! Their clanking may be heard on the plains of Boston! The war is inevitable, and let it come! I repeat it,

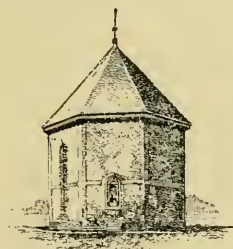
Sir: Let it come!—The war is actually begun! The next gale that sweeps from the north will bring to our ears the clash of resounding arms. Our brothers are already in the field! Why stand we here idle! Is life so dear, or peace so sweet, as to be purchased at the price of chains and slavery? Forbid it, Almighty God! I know not what course others may take; but as for me, give me liberty, or give me death."



War is inevitable

One who heard this speech says that when the orator spoke the words "chains and slavery," he stood like a slave with his body bent, his wrists crossed, as if bound by chains, and that his face looked like that of a hopeless slave. After a solemn pause he raised his eyes and chained hands toward heaven, and said, as if in prayer: "Forbid it, Almighty God!" He then slowly bent his body still nearer the floor, looking like a man oppressed, heart-broken, and helpless, and said: "I know not what course others may take." Then, rising grandly and proudly, with every muscle strained, as if he would break his imaginary chains, he exclaimed: "Give me liberty, or give me death!"

What a listener in St. John's Church saw and heard



OLD POWDER HOUSE,
WILLIAMSBURG

The removal of the powder from this house to a British man-of-war caused the first uprising of the Virginians

The men who heard this speech never forgot it. The people of Virginia now pushed forward the work of arming her men. And when her own Washington went to take command of the army at Boston he found Virginia soldiers there wearing on their hunting shirts the words "Liberty or death!"

What Washington saw in Boston in 1775

From this time on Patrick Henry was in the forefront of the struggle with England. Virginia sent him to Congress, then she

Patrick
Henry
loved by
Virgin-
ians



PATRICK HENRY

*From the bronze figure of the
Washington monument by
Crawford at Richmond*

made him an officer in the army, and finally not only made him the first governor after independence was declared, but elected him to that office three times in succession, and offered him the same office three times more.

After independence was won Patrick Henry opposed the adoption of our constitution, although Washington, Madison, and many of his friends were in favor of it. When, however, he saw that the new constitution was a good one, he gave his support to his friend, President Washington.

Patrick Henry finally retired to his plantation and refused all offers of office. Many old friends and many great strangers went to visit him in his old age as one of the great men of the American Revolution. In the year of his death (1799), when some danger

threatened Virginia, Patrick Henry came forth at Washington's request, old and feeble as he was, and aroused the people once more with his burning words. They elected him to the House of Burgesses by a great majority, but he did not live to take office.

SAMUEL ADAMS, THE FIREBRAND OF THE REVOLUTION

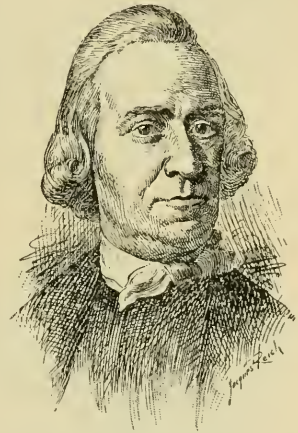
Samuel
Adams,
the pen-
of the
Revolu-
tion

83. **Samuel Adams.** While Patrick Henry was stirring the feelings of the people by his fiery eloquence, Samuel Adams was stirring them by strong arguments in his writings, to oppose the acts of King and of Parliament.

Samuel Adams was born in Massachusetts (1722). While he loved school and books he cared very little for spending his time in outdoor amusements. At eighteen Samuel was graduated from Harvard College. His parents hoped that he would be a minister, but he began to study law. His mother was so opposed to his becoming a lawyer that he gave up the study and turned to business. He set up in business for himself, but, like Patrick Henry, soon lost all. He next went into business with his father, but in that, too, he failed. Finally Samuel Adams turned to politics.

A
student

While a student in Harvard he had debated the question whether it was right to resist the king to save the country from ruin. He took an active part in debating clubs and very soon began to write for the newspapers, encouraging resistance. He never hesitated to take what he thought the right side of any question.



Early
love for
politics

Speaking before a meeting of Boston people, Samuel Adams boldly declared that if England could tax the business of the colonies, then, "why not tax our lands and everything we possess or make use of?" Such taxes, he said, would make the colonists slaves.

In a short time the people of Boston were reading in the papers the fiery resolutions, and the still more fiery speech, of Patrick Henry. Samuel Adams seized his pen and also began to pour hot shot into the Stamp Act.

The Boston people elected him to be their representative in the Massachusetts Assembly. More and more he took the lead in the

SAMUEL ADAMS

From the original painting by John Singleton Copley, representing Adams in 1771, now hanging in the Museum of Fine Arts, Boston

Why
Adams
opposed
the
Stamp
Act

How he
opposed
the
Stamp
Act

movement against the Stamp Act. He went about the shops, into the stores, wherever he found people to listen to him.

He helped them form a society, called the Sons of Liberty, which destroyed the hated stamps as soon as they arrived. He talked with the merchants, and they signed a pledge not to buy any more goods from England until the Stamp Act was repealed. At this the British merchants felt the loss of trade and joined in the cry against the Stamp Act.

84. The Tea Tax. We have seen that Parliament, after the Stamp Act was repealed, passed the famous Tea Act. The Americans were angry again, and the Sons of Liberty declared that no tea should be landed. The merchants took the pledge again to buy no more English goods, and patriotic women began to make tea out of leaves of other plants.

Samuel Adams again sharpened his pen, and wrote the famous old "Circular Letter," which urged all the colonies to unite and stand firm in opposing the tax on tea. This letter made King George very angry, but Samuel Adams' only wrote the more.

Night after night as the people passed his window they saw by his lamp that he was busy with his pen, and said to one another: "Samuel Adams is hard at work

writing against the Tories." People in England and America who took the king's side in these disputes were called Tories.

The king now sent two regiments of soldiers to Boston to force



SAMUEL ADAMS WRITING THE FAMOUS
CIRCULAR LETTER

Samuel
Adams
writes
the "Cir-
cular
Letter"

the people to pay the Tea Tax. There were frequent quarrels between the soldiers and the people. One evening in a street

quarrel the soldiers killed three men and wounded eight others (1770). Immediately the fire bells rang and great crowds of angry people filled the streets. The next day they filled to overflowing

Faneuil Hall, the "Cradle of Liberty." A still larger meeting in the Old South Church cried out that both regiments of soldiers must leave town.

Adams and other leaders were sent to the king's officers to tell them what the people had said. Before the governor and the general, backed by the king's authority and by two regiments, stood plain Samuel Adams, with only the voice of the people to help him.

The governor, unwilling to obey the demand of the people, said he would send one regiment away. But Samuel Adams stood firm, and said: "Both regiments or none!" The governor finally gave up, and Samuel Adams, the man of the people, was a greater leader than ever before.

The king now tried to trick the Americans into paying the tax by making tea cheaper in America than in England, but leaving on the tax. But the people everywhere declared that they did not object to the price, but to the tax.



THE BOSTON MASSACRE

Conflicts
between
people
and
soldiers

Samuel
Adams
and the
people
drive the
soldiers
out of
Boston

The tea
ships
guarded
while
town
meetings
are held

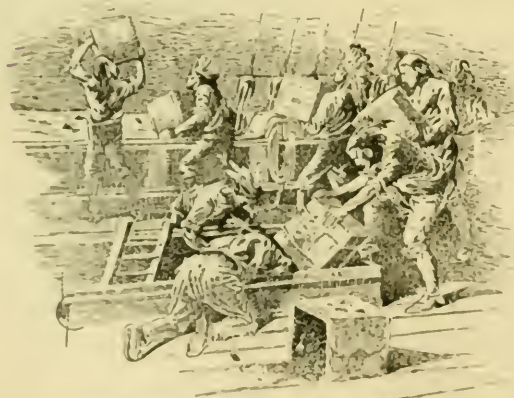
85. **The Boston Tea Party.** When the ships carrying this cheaper tea arrived in Boston, Samuel Adams set a guard of armed men to keep the tea from being landed.

Town meeting followed town meeting. On December 16, 1773, the greatest one of all was held. Early that morning hundreds of country people started for Boston. They found the shops and stores closed and people standing on the street corners talking earnestly.

At ten o'clock the people met in the Old South Church, and voted that the tea should never be landed. They also sent the owner of the ships to the governor for permission to take the tea ships out past the guns of the fort guarding the harbor.

In the afternoon still greater crowds pushed and jammed into the seats, aisles, and galleries of that famous church. Samuel Adams was chairman. He made a speech. Other leaders spoke.

Permis-
sion to
return
tea
denied



THE BOSTON TEA PARTY ABOARD THE TEA SHIP
IN THE HARBOR

One stirred the audience by asking "how tea would mix with salt water." Evening came, and candles were lighted. The owner of the tea vessels returned and said the governor would not give him the permission.

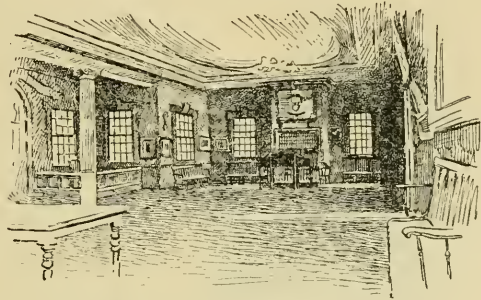
Immediately Samuel Adams arose and said: "This meeting can do nothing to save the coun-

try!" In a moment the war whoop of the "Mohawks" sounded outside. The crowd rushed out and found the people following

a band of men disguised as Indians down where the tea ships lay at anchor. The "Mohawks" went on board, brought up the boxes of tea, broke them open, and threw the tea into the sea.

The
Boston
Tea
Party

That very night Samuel Adams sent fast riders to carry the news to the country towns. The next day, with letters to the leaders in other colonies in his saddlebags, Paul Revere, the great courier of the Revolution, started on his long ride to New York and Philadelphia. As he went from



Paul
Revere's
first ride

ASSEMBLY ROOM IN CARPENTER'S HALL
*Here met the first Continental Congress
of the colonies*

town to town and told the story of the Tea Party the people cheered him, spread dinners for him, built bonfires, and fired cannon. He saw thousands of people gather in New York and Philadelphia, and heard them declare that they would stand by Boston.

Boston soon needed help, for the king and Parliament passed a law that no ship could enter or leave Boston Harbor, and another which forbade town meetings. Other hard laws were also passed and an army was sent to Boston to force the people to obey them.

Boston
Port Bill

86. The First Continental Congress. We have seen a call go forth for a Congress at Philadelphia (1774). The Massachusetts legislature chose Samuel Adams and his cousin, John Adams, with two others to go to the Congress.

But Samuel Adams was very poor and could not afford to dress in a style suited to meet the rich merchants of New York and Philadelphia and the great planters of the southern colonies. One evening while the family was at tea, in came the most

Strange
visitors

fashionable tailor to take his measure. Next came a hatter, and then a shoemaker. In a few days a new trunk at his door told the story, for in it were a suit of clothes, two pairs of shoes, silver shoe buckles, gold knee buckles, a cocked hat, a gold-headed cane, and a fashionable red cloak. What

Poor
but loyal



CARPENTER'S HALL,
PHILADELPHIA

Although Samuel Adams was a poor man, George III did not have offices enough to bribe him, nor gold enough to buy him. The king's officers had tried to do both.

In a carriage drawn by four horses, the delegates to Congress were escorted by their friends right by the king's soldiers.

What
Samuel
and John
Adams
saw on
the way
to Phila-
delphia

The people of the large towns met them, escorted them, rang bells, fired cannon, feasted them at banquets, and talked of the Congress.

At New York Samuel Adams and his friends were kept nearly a week. Many persons in carriages and on horseback came out to welcome them to Philadelphia, the city of William Penn. People were anxious to see the man who had written the "Circular Letter," who had driven the king's regiments out of Boston, who had planned the Tea Party, and whom the king could not bribe. Here, in Carpenter's Hall, for the first time, he met George Washington, Patrick Henry, and Richard Henry Lee, of Virginia, Christopher Gadsden, who was called the "Samuel Adams of South Carolina," and many other noble men who became his life-long friends.

New and
noble
friends

Soon Paul Revere came riding into Philadelphia with the news that the patriots of Boston were in danger of being attacked by the British. The Congress immediately declared that if the British made war on Boston, it was the duty of every colony to help her

Other
colonies
to help
Boston

people fight. It looked as if war might come at any moment.

When Congress was over, Samuel Adams hastened home to help form, in all the Massachusetts towns, companies of minutemen ready to fight at a moment's warning. The next spring the news got out that British soldiers were going to Concord to destroy the powder and provisions collected there by the minutemen, and also to capture Samuel Adams and John Hancock and send them to England to be tried for treason. Paul Revere agreed to alarm the minutemen the moment the soldiers left Boston.

87. Paul Revere's Midnight Ride. Standing by his horse across the river from Boston, one April evening, waiting for signals, Paul Revere saw two lanterns flash their light from the tower of Old North Church. He mounted and rode in hot haste toward Lexington, arousing the sleeping villages as he cried out: "Up and arm, the regulars are coming!" Soon he heard the alarm gun of the minutemen and the excited ringing of the church bells. He knew the country was rising.

At Lexington minutemen who guarded the house where Samuel Adams and John Hancock were sleeping ordered Revere not to make so much noise. "You will soon have noise enough," he shouted. "The regulars are coming!" And he rode on toward Concord,



PAUL REVERE ALARMING THE MINUTEMEN
The old Hancock House, where, guarded by the minutemen, Samuel Adams and John Hancock lay sleeping when Paul Revere rode by, still stands in Lexington

Alarming
the
minute-
men

The first
conflict
of the
minute-
men

88. The Battle at Lexington and at Concord Bridge. As the British soldiers reached Lexington at sunrise, April 19, 1775, the captain of the minutemen gave the command: "Stand your ground. Don't fire unless fired upon. But if they mean to have war, let it begin here!" A bold speech for a captain of only about sixty men when facing as brave soldiers as Europe had ever seen! The minutemen stood their ground till seven were killed and nine wounded—nearly one-third of their number. Then they retreated.

The
retreat
of the
British

The British pushed on to Concord. But the minutemen, now coming from every direction, made a stand at Concord Bridge. Their musket fire was so deadly that the British started back, running at times to escape with their lives. At Lexington they fell upon the ground, tired out with the chase the minutemen gave them, and were met by fresh troops from Boston.

Many
redcoats
fall

Soon the British soldiers were forced to run again, for minutemen by hundreds were gathering, and they seldom missed their aim. From behind rocks, trees, fences, and houses they cut down the tired redcoats. Nearly three hundred British soldiers were killed or wounded before Boston was reached that night.

89. The Battle of Bunker Hill. Day and night for weeks minutemen from other New England colonies, and even from as far south as Virginia, marched in hot haste to Boston. The British general soon found his army in Boston entirely cut off from the mainland. He resolved to fortify Bunker Hill, but what was his surprise to wake one morning (June 17) and find the Americans under Colonel Prescott already building breastworks on the hill.

That afternoon three thousand picked troops, in solid columns and with bayonets gleaming, marched up the hill to storm that breastwork. "Don't fire till you can see the whites of their eyes!" said the commander of the minutemen. On came the lines of red,

with banners flying and drums beating. From the breastworks there ran a flame of fire which mowed the redcoats down like grass. They reeled, broke, and ran. They rested. Again they charged; again they broke and ran. They were brave men, and, although hundreds of their companions had fallen, a third time the British charged and won, for the Americans had used up their powder, and they had no bayonets. More than one thousand British

Three
fierce
charges



THE BATTLE OF BUNKER HILL

soldiers fell that day. The Americans did not lose half that number. But among the killed was brave General Joseph Warren.

90. The Second Continental Congress. Just as the British were marching into Lexington on that famous April morning, Samuel Adams, with John Hancock, was leaving for Philadelphia, where Congress was to meet again. As he heard the guns of the minutemen answer the guns of the regulars, Adams said to Hancock: "What a glorious morning is this!"

Adams
and Han-
cock on
the way
to the
second
Congress

The members from Massachusetts, Connecticut, and New York were escorted across the Hudson to Newark, New Jersey, and entertained at a great dinner, with speeches. Near Philadelphia, a large procession of armed men and carriages met and escorted them into the city, where bells told of their coming.

When this Congress met, Samuel Adams seconded the motion of his cousin, John Adams, that George Washington, of Virginia, be

made the general of all the American troops. He saw his own neighbor, John Hancock, made president of the Congress.

Samuel
Adams
among
the first
to favor
inde-
pendence



AN OLD QUILL
PEN

Governor
of Massa-
chusetts

91. The Declaration of Independence. For more than a year Samuel Adams worked hard to get the Congress to make a Declaration of Independence. Richard Henry Lee, of Virginia, introduced a motion into the Congress for Independence. The Declaration was made, July 4, 1776, and Samuel Adams, as a great leader of the Revolution, had done his work.

But, with other noble men, he still labored with all his powers, in Congress and at home, to help America win her independence.

After independence had been won, Samuel Adams still served his state, and was elected governor of Massachusetts only a few years before his death, which occurred in 1803, at the age of eighty-one.

SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

The Leading Facts. 1. The French and Indian War put both England and her colonies in debt, but the king thought only of England's debt. 2. Great opposition to the Stamp Act in all the colonies. 3. Patrick Henry made a great speech against the Virginia parsons, and a second on the Stamp Act. 4. He went to the first Continental Congress and made many friends; came home and made a great speech saying that war would come. 5. Made Governor of Virginia many times. 6. Samuel Adams studied hard, failed in several occupations, and went into politics. 7. Led the patriots against the soldiers, the Stamp Act, and planned the Tea Party. 8. Samuel Adams sent to Continental Congress where he made many friends. 9. Urged a Declaration of Independence in 1776. 10. Made Governor of Massachusetts.

Study Questions. 1. Why were the colonists happy because England defeated France? 2. What was the Stamp Act and why did men in America oppose this act? 3. What did Patrick Henry say in his resolution and in his speech? 4. Picture the scene while Patrick Henry spoke and afterwards. 5. Why did not the Americans like the Tea Tax?

6. Why did not the king like the American "Tea Parties"? 7. What is a Congress; and why should Patrick Henry and Samuel Adams become good friends? 8. Commit to memory a part of Henry's famous "liberty or death" speech. 9. How did the people trust Patrick Henry?

10. What did Samuel Adams do against the Stamp Act? 11. What was the Circular Letter and why should the king be angry about it? 12. Tell how Samuel Adams drove two regiments out of Boston. 13. What caused a Congress? 14. Tell what Samuel and John Adams saw and did on their way to Philadelphia. 15. Why were people glad to see Samuel Adams? 16. What made war seem likely to happen at any time? 17. Read Longfellow's poem, "The Midnight Ride of Paul Revere." 18. Give an account of the Battle of Lexington. 19. Picture the retreat from Concord to Boston. 20. Picture the charge of the British soldiers at Bunker Hill. 21. What did Samuel Adams see on his way to the second Continental Congress? 22. Who introduced the motion for independence into the Congress?

Suggested Readings. PATRICK HENRY: Cooke, *Stories of the Old Dominion*, 158-180; Brooks, *Century Book of Famous Americans*, 93-101; Magill, *Stories from Virginia History*, 116-128.

SAMUEL ADAMS: Dawes, *Colonial Massachusetts*, 42-72; Brooks, *Century Book of Famous Americans*, 10-30; Hart, *Camps and Firesides of the Revolution*, 162-166; Hawthorne, *Grandfather's Chair*, 153-189, 205, 206.

THE MEN WHO FOUGHT FOR AMERICAN INDEPENDENCE WITH GUN AND SWORD

NATHAN HALE

92. **Nathan Hale, the Martyred Patriot.** Nathan Hale was born in Connecticut in 1755. He was brought up by his Puritan parents in the fear of God and in obedience to duty. At the age of sixteen Nathan left his native farm to enter Yale University. Here he soon became well liked for his gentle nature, lively spirit, and studious habits. In spite of his youth he was a leader in the affairs of his class and in all athletic sports. He graduated from college with honor and then taught school for almost two years. These were quiet days for the active young man.

Hale
a leader
in class
affairs
and
athletic
sports

At this time the people were talking a great deal about their troubles with Great Britain. In secret, bands of young men were even forming companies of militia. Suddenly the news of the fight at Lexington came to the place where Nathan Hale was teaching. The citizens gathered in meeting and he made a speech, in which he said: "Let us march immediately and never lay down our arms until we obtain our independence." The next day he and many others enrolled to fight for liberty.

Washington was in command of the Continental army at Boston and soon sent for Hale's company. None worked harder than he at military drills, nor did more to keep the men cheerful in hardships. On New Year's day, 1776, Congress made him captain for his bravery and faithfulness.

The following spring Washington moved his army to New York. One night Nathan Hale and a small band of men slipped out into the harbor where a British sloop lay. They boarded the ship gently and locked the sailors in before these knew what had happened. Then they sailed their prize past a British man-of-war, over to the American side. It was a brave feat, and well carried out.

Soon after, the American troops were badly defeated in the battle of Long Island. The army was half starved and losing hope. The British general Howe was preparing to attack again. If Howe should win, the American cause would be lost. Washington saw that it was necessary to find out the British plans, or he would be caught and his army destroyed. A brave man was needed to go into the British camp to spy out their plans. No one was willing to go. Hale had been sick, but when he heard of his country's need, he offered himself. Friends pleaded with him in vain.

The young officer took off his uniform and put on the clothes of a schoolmaster. Under cover of night he was rowed to a place

Enrolled
to
fight
for
liberty

Captures
a British
man-of-
war

Offers
to find
out
the
British
plans

near the British camp. This was the last his friends saw of him. He spent several days with the British troops and got the needed information. On his return he passed safely through the whole British army. He went to the spot where the boat was to come for him. There he waited until the boat came into view and then walked down to the water's edge to meet it. A dozen muskets were leveled at him; instead of fellow-soldiers he found himself in the hands of the British!

Hale was sent to New York immediately and placed before General Howe, to whom he said frankly that he was a spy. The British general wrote out his death warrant, "to be hanged to-morrow morning at sunrise." Not even the death of a soldier was to be his. His brutal guard refused to let him send a last letter to his people. Alone he spent the night without the comfort of friend or minister. At day-break he was dragged forth to execution. A crowd of strange people had gathered to see him die. It is said that the officer asked him to confess. Brave to the last, Nathan Hale answered: "I only regret that I have but one life to lose for my country." Thus, at the age of twenty-two, died Nathan Hale, who held his country dearer than his own life.

Passes
the
British
lines
safely



Hale
sentenced
to
death

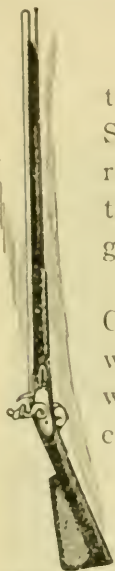
NATHAN HALE

*From a statue in the City Hall Park,
New York City*

Gives
his life
for his
country

GENERALS GREENE, MORGAN, AND MARION, THE MEN WHO HELPED
WIN THE SOUTH FROM THE BRITISH

Moultrie
repulses
attack on
Charles-
ton



Charles-
ton sur-
renders
to Corn-
wallis

GREENE'S GUN
*Now in the pos-
session of the
Rhode Island
Historical
Society*

Greene
goes
south to
watch
Corn-
wallis

93. The War in the South. Early in the Revolutionary War British vessels made an attack on Charleston, South Carolina (1776). But Colonel Moultrie, from his rude fort of palmetto logs, gave them such a welcome that they were glad to get away, and for two years the British gave the southern colonies little trouble.

But in 1778, another British army captured Savannah, Georgia. In 1780, the City of Charleston, South Carolina, with General Lincoln's entire army, surrendered to Cornwallis. Congress hastened General Gates to the South to check the British, but Cornwallis surprised Gates and cut his army to pieces near Camden.

94. Nathanael Greene, the Quaker General. Washington chose Nathanael Greene, the "Quaker general,"

to go south, take command of the American army, and to watch Cornwallis, who had just defeated Gates. Greene was born in Roger Williams's old colony, and was ten years younger than Washington. His father was a farmer, a miner, and a blacksmith on week days, and a Quaker preacher on Sundays



GREENE CONCEALING THE MUSKET IN HIS WAGON

As a boy Nathanael had plenty of hard work to do, and at thirteen could "only read, write, and cipher." But he was hungry for more knowledge, and began to study Latin, mathematics, philosophy, and history. Besides he made iron toys, and sold them to buy books. His family got into a lawsuit, and Nathanael took up the study of law. He was called the "learned blacksmith."

The
"learned
black-
smith"

When Greene saw that King George was likely to force the Americans to fight, he joined the militia and went to Boston to buy a musket, a very unusual thing for a man in Quaker dress to do. He hid the gun in his wagon. There he watched General Gage drilling British soldiers. He persuaded one of them to go with him to drill his company of minutemen.

He buys
a musket

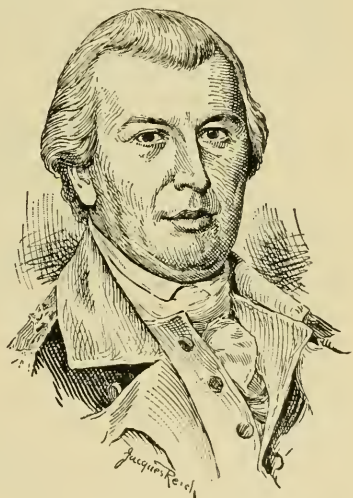
When the stirring news from Lexington reached him, Greene was among the first to start for Boston, and there Washington found him when he arrived to take command of the army.

Greene was made one of Washington's generals, and followed his great commander till Washington sent him

to the South to win back that part of the country from Cornwallis.

Although General Greene found but a small army in North Carolina, he knew that the southern men would fight if they had a chance, for the backwoodsmen had just killed or captured one thousand British soldiers at the battle of Kings Mountain.

Besides, he had some of the bravest and ablest leaders in



News
from
Lexing-
ton sends
Greene
to Boston

NATHANAEL GREENE

From a painting by Charles Wilson Peale, once owned by Mrs. William Brenton Greene, Jr., Princeton, New Jersey, and now in Independence Hall, Philadelphia

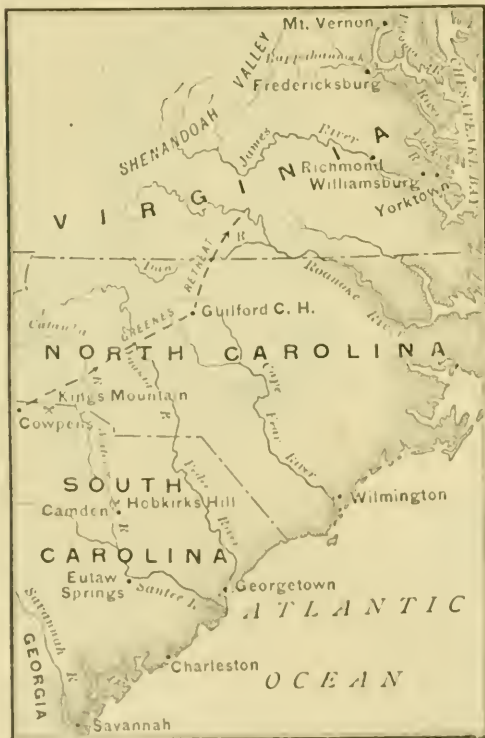
Men who
helped
Greene in
the South

America to help him. Among them were Daniel Morgan, Francis Marion, William Washington (a cousin of General Washington), Henry Lee (called "Light Horse Harry"), and Thomas Sumter.

Greene
divides
his army

Greene divided his army into two parts. He took one thousand men and marched into northeastern South Carolina, where Marion and Lee, with small bands of cavalry, stole upon the British outposts. In broad daylight they charged pellmell into Georgetown, captured the officer in command there, and got safely away before the British were over their fright.

Morgan
goes to
north-
western
South
Carolina



SCENE OF THE CAMPAIGNS IN THE SOUTH

Tarleton
sent to
capture
him

thoroughly roused, and resolved to put an end to such events. He therefore ordered his favorite cavalry officer, Colonel Tarleton, to take eleven hundred choice soldiers and capture Morgan and his men.

Greene sent General Morgan and Colonel William Washington with nine hundred men into northwestern South Carolina to threaten some British posts, and to encourage the patriots in the mountains. Very shortly after this, Washington and his cavalry swooped down on a party of British soldiers and captured two hundred fifty of them.

Cornwallis was now

95. General Morgan. But Morgan was not the kind of man to be caught napping. When a young man, he had fought the French and Indians on the Virginia frontier.

**Morgan's
training**

He was at Braddock's defeat. He had once knocked a British officer down for striking him. In an Indian fight he had been shot through the neck and thought himself dying, but, to escape being scalped, locked his arms tightly around



MORGAN'S ESCAPE FROM THE INDIANS

his horse's neck, while the horse ran wildly through the woods.

At the head of a company of ninety-six Virginia backwoodsmen, Morgan had marched six hundred miles in twenty-one days, and joined Washington at Boston.

Later, Washington sent him to join in the capture of Burgoyne, at Saratoga. His men did such splendid fighting that Burgoyne said to Morgan: "Sir, you command the finest regiment in the world!" Fighting in the woods of America such a man was likely to be a match for any British officer.

**Bur-
goyne's
compliment**

When Morgan heard of Tarleton's approach he retreated to a good place for fighting, called the Cowpens. On the top of a long, rising slope, he placed the Continental troops—men trained to fight. In the rear he hid Colonel Washington and his cavalymen.

Some distance in front of the Continentals he placed the

Morgan
places
his men

militia with orders not to retreat till they had fired twice. In front of the militia Morgan hid a company of deadly sharpshooters in the woods on the right and another company in the woods on the left.

As soon as Tarleton's men came in sight they charged pell-mell, thinking victory an easy matter. The militia and sharpshooters poured in their fire not only twice, but several times, and retreated behind the Continentals, who now poured deadly volleys

into the ranks of the on-coming British, and then made at them with their bayonets.

Just at this moment, Colonel Washington's cavalry dashed out and struck the right flank of the redcoats. In another moment the militia, which had re-formed and reloaded, rushed out and struck their left flank. Most of Tarleton's men threw down their guns and surrendered on the spot. Only two hundred seventy redcoats got away. Tarleton barely escaped after being wounded in a hand-to-hand sword fight with Colonel Washington.



DANIEL MORGAN

From a miniature painted by John Trumbull now in the Art Gallery of Yale University

A
brilliant
victory

Stories
of
Tarleton

Tarleton was not permitted to forget his defeat. In conversation one day he remarked that he had never seen Colonel Washington. A patriotic lady present replied: "If you had only looked behind you at the battle of Cowpens, you would have had that pleasure."

On another occasion it is told that Tarleton said to a lady, in a sneering way, that he understood Colonel Washington was so ignorant he could not even write his own name. This lady



THE BATTLE OF COWPENS

Where General Morgan, in one of the most brilliant battles of the war, defeated the brave but over-confident General Tarleton, destroying the famous legion Tarleton boasted could not be defeated

looked at Tarleton's wounded hand, and said: "You certainly carry proof that he can at least 'make his mark'."

The defeat of Tarleton at Cowpens roused Cornwallis. He destroyed all his heavy baggage, and started in hot haste after Morgan. But Morgan knew a thing or two, and marched for the fords of the Catawba River as soon as the battle was over.

There Greene joined him, and away the armies went for the Yadkin River. Greene had brought along boats on light wheels, and had no trouble in crossing, but Cornwallis had to march up the river until his army could wade across. Greene was already on his way to the Dan, which he crossed into southern Virginia.

Greene's
great
march

General Morgan, now broken in health by long years of hard fighting, retired to his home, "Soldiers' Rest," in the Shenandoah

General
Morgan
retires

Valley. After the war was over his neighbors elected him to Congress, where he gave hearty support to President Washington.



THE LAST SALUTE TO MORGAN

When Daniel Morgan died he was followed to the grave by the largest procession that the valley had yet seen. The people who had come from near and far, witnessed a touching sight.

They saw seven gray-haired veterans, with old rifles in their hands, stand beside the grave of the hero, and fire a military salute. They were the last of that hardy band of ninety-six, which had marched with Morgan to Boston to join Washington, nearly thirty years before. This was their last military farewell!

96. The Battle of Guilford Court House. General Greene won a great victory by retreating. He and his army were still among friends, and his army was growing. Cornwallis was hundreds of miles from his supplies and from reinforcements. After a few weeks, Greene crossed back into North Carolina and fiercely attacked Cornwallis at Guilford Court House, and killed or wounded one-fourth of his army.

Cornwallis claimed the victory, but instead of attacking Greene he marched his army rapidly to Wilmington, on the sea-coast, and from there marched into Virginia, where Washington and Lafayette caught him in a trap at Yorktown.

A touch-
ing scene

Greene's
"vic-
tory"

Greene turned back to South Carolina, where the British still held Charleston and a few other towns. The British lost so many men at Hobkirks Hill, and at Eutaw Springs, their last important battles in the South, that they were compelled to retreat to Charleston, where they were when the news from Yorktown put an end to serious fighting.

Greene drives the British to Charleston

General Greene's work as a soldier was done. Besides the medal presented to him by Congress for the battle of Eutaw Springs, South Carolina, as a token of affection, gave him a large sum of money, and the state of Georgia a beautiful plantation on the Savannah River, where he died in 1786. Greene's fame as a soldier of the Revolution stands next to that of Washington.

Congress, South Carolina, and Georgia honor Greene

97. Francis Marion. Of all the brave men who helped Greene win back the South, none was braver than General Francis Marion, whom the British named the "Swamp Fox." Marion was born in the same year as Washington. He was of French parentage. He was so very small in size that people wondered how he could be so great a soldier.

Marion's "Brigade," as his company was called, was made up of only a handful of men, usually less than one hundred. But they owned and rode the swiftest horses, carried their own guns, and wore their own swords, hammered out of old saws by country blacksmiths.

Marion and his men seldom were two successive nights in the same place. The night was their time for work. At sundown



The "Swamp Fox"

Marion's "Brigade"

FRANCIS MARION

After the portrait in the painting by T. Stothard, R. A.

they swung into their saddles, and were soon riding for the enemy's camp. When near, they quietly surrounded the camp, took aim by the light of the fires, fired, and then rushed upon the frightened British or Tories, and cut them down with their terrible broadswords.

How
they
escaped

Before daybreak, Marion and his men were hiding safely in some distant swamp or other safe place. If the British chased him too closely his men scattered in different directions, but always made their way to the common hiding place. In a few days they were ready to strike again.

One hun-
dred fifty
prisoners
set free

Just after Cornwallis defeated Gates, near Camden, Marion pounced upon a guard of British soldiers that was taking one hundred fifty prisoners to Charleston, captured them all, and set the prisoners free.

At last Cornwallis ordered Colonel Tarleton to get "Mr. Marion," as he called him. But before Tarleton could act Marion had fallen on a large party of Tories going to join Cornwallis, and killed,

Tarleton
cannot
catch
Marion



ONE OF MARION'S MEN

Congress
gives
Marion a
vote of
thanks

captured, or scattered the entire party. Tarleton chased Marion for twenty-five miles, only to find a large swamp through which he could see neither road nor path. He gave up the chase in disgust, declaring he would pursue the "Swamp Fox" no farther.

When Greene returned to the last campaign in South Carolina, he found no better, bolder, or more vigilant helpers than Marion and his "brigade." Greene gave Marion high praise, and Congress gave him a vote of thanks.



"MARION AND HIS MEN" SURPRISE THE BRITISH

Dashing out of the swamp Marion fell upon the guard, strong in numbers, of a band of patriot prisoners, killed or captured the British and in turn set the prisoners to guarding the redcoats

Marion was the true soldier of liberty. He cared nothing for display, only for the success of the patriot cause. Marion thought of his men before himself, was watchful, patient, and silent. He always struck his foes where and when they did not look for him. If they were too strong he vanished like smoke in a breeze.

Marion was as true and gentle as he was bold and brave. He was never cruel to prisoners, and was greatly opposed to punishing the Tories after the war was over. Marion's neighbors often elected him to high office and in many other ways showed that they admired him, even if some did not agree with him.

After
the war

During the war a British officer was invited to take dinner with Marion. What was his surprise to see only sweet potatoes, baked in the ashes, set before him. After this feast the officer resigned, saying it was useless trying to defeat such soldiers.

A potato
feast

SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

The Leading Facts. 1. When Hale heard the news of the fight at Lexington, he hastened to the front. 2. He went inside the British lines to learn their plans, was caught, and executed. 3. Greene went to Boston, saw the British army, returned home and prepared his minutemen. 4. Washington sent him to the Carolinas after the defeat of Gates. 5. In the retreat of the American army after the battle of Cowpens, Greene turned and fought the battles of Guilford Court House, Hobkirk's Hill, and Eutaw Springs. 6. Daniel Morgan with ninety-six men marched from the Shenandoah Valley to Boston to join Washington. 7. He won the battle of Cowpens against Colonel Tarleton. 8. Francis Marion's "Brigade" was made up of a small number, mounted on their own horses, and armed with their own guns and swords. 9. He was called the "Swamp Fox," because his men, attacking after nightfall, usually escaped to a swamp before daylight.

Study Questions. 1. What was Hale doing when war broke out? 2. Why did he go within the British lines? 3. Where was Greene born and why was he called "the learned blacksmith"? 4. How did he get his company of minutemen drilled? 5. What leaders did Greene have to help him? 6. Who was General Morgan? 7. What did Burgoyne say to Morgan? 8. Explain how Morgan prepared for the battle of Cowpens. 9. Picture the battle. 10. What anecdotes are told of Tarleton? 11. Picture the scene at General Morgan's burial. 12. How did Greene win a victory by retreating? 13. What became of Cornwallis after the battle of Guilford Court House? 14. What other battles did Greene fight? 15. What proofs of affection did South Carolina and Georgia give? 16. What is the rank of Greene as a general? 17. How many were in Marion's "Brigade," how were they armed, and how did they fight? 18. Why did Tarleton call Marion the "Swamp Fox"? 19. Who praised General Marion? 20. Read "The Song of Marion's Men," by William Cullen Bryant.

Suggested Readings. NATHAN HALE: Brown, *Nathan Hale, the Martyr Spy*.

NATHANAEL GREENE: Fiske, *Irving's Washington*, 430-456; Francis V. Greene, *General Greene*, 1-22, 94-105, 160-262; Frost, *Heroes of the Revolution*, 27-75.

DANIEL MORGAN: Blaisdell and Ball, *Hero Stories from American History*, 105-122; Brooks, *Century Book of the American Revolution*, 168-173; Frost, *Heroes of the Revolution*, 76-89.

FRANCIS MARION: McCrady, *South Carolina in the Revolution*, 568-572, 577-652, 660-672, 748-752, 816-881.

THE MEN WHO HELPED WIN INDEPENDENCE BY FIGHTING ENGLAND ON THE SEA

PAUL JONES, A SCOTCHMAN, WHO WON THE GREAT VICTORY IN THE
FRENCH SHIP, "BON HOMME RICHARD"

98. John Paul Jones. In 1747, in far-away Scotland, on the arm of the sea called Solway Firth, a great sailor was born. John Paul played along the seashore, saw tall ships, and heard wonderful stories of a new land called America, whose ships filled with tobacco came into the firth.

John
Paul
born in
Scotland

John Paul did not get much schooling, and at the age of thirteen he went as a sailor lad on the "Friendship" to America. The ship sailed into Chesapeake Bay and up the Rappahannock River to the town of Fredericksburg, where he found his brother William living on a plantation. In the very same town where George Washington had just been to school, John Paul also went to school, and studied hard to make up for lost time, and left a great name among the boys.



Sails on
the
"Friend-
ship" to
America

JOHN PAUL JONES

*From a painting by Charles Wilson
Peale in Independence Hall,
Philadelphia*

He afterward returned to Scotland, and at the age of nineteen sailed as an officer on a slave-trading ship to Africa, and carried a load of negroes away from their native land. Many people did not then think it wrong to do this, but John Paul hated the cruel business, and left the slave ship as soon as he reached Jamaica.

Returns
and sails
for Africa

Made
captain

On his way back to Scotland, the officers of the ship died, and John Paul, although but twenty years old, had to take charge. The owners of the vessel were so pleased with the way he handled it that they made him captain, and he went on many voyages to different countries.

In
Virginia
again

After a time John Paul went to Virginia to take care of his dead brother's plantation. While he was living in Virginia he watched the quarrel between England and her colonies break out in open war.

Offers
his ser-
vices to
Congress

99. John Paul Jones Enters the American Navy. He hastened to Philadelphia and offered his services to Congress. He knew that England would send thousands of soldiers to America; and that she would send her war ships along our seacoasts and up and down our bays and rivers, to capture and burn our towns. He also knew that the Congress did not own a single war ship when the war began.

Congress ordered war ships to be built. While these were being made, Congress ordered trading vessels to be fitted with cannon and sent out to capture British ships.

Changes
his name

When John Paul went to Philadelphia he gave his name as Paul Jones, probably in honor of Willie Jones, a friend who lived in North Carolina. Some have thought that he did not want the British to know him, if they should capture him in a sea fight.

Really
wants to
fight

Although Paul Jones really knew more about war ships than most of the men in Philadelphia, Congress gave him a very low office. But that made no difference to him, for he really wanted to get into a sea fight. In 1775, he was made a lieutenant, and joined an expedition to capture cannon and powder from the British in the West Indies. He did so well that Congress made him captain and gave him a ship. He then went on a cruise to the West Indies where in six weeks he captured sixteen prizes and destroyed a number of small vessels.

What he
could do

Congress afterward gave him command of the ship "Ranger," and sent him to carry letters to Benjamin Franklin, who was in France trying to get the king to take sides with the Americans.

Sent to
France

Franklin planned for Jones to take the "Ranger" to the coast of England, and show that American as well as English ships could burn, destroy, and fight. He captured two vessels, made straight for his old town of Whitehaven, "spiked" the cannon in the fort, set some ships on fire, and escaped without harm.

With the
"Ran-
ger" at
White-
haven

Near by this place, his sailors took all the silver from the home of a rich lady. This robbery troubled him so much that, afterward, at great expense to himself, he returned the silver to its owner.

"Look out for Paul Jones, the pirate!" the people said; and the "Drake," carrying two more cannon than the "Ranger," was sent to capture her. Five boat loads of people went to see the pirate captured. The fight lasted more than an hour. When the "Drake" surrendered, her captain and forty-two men had been killed. The "Ranger" had lost only two men. After this fight the English towns were still more afraid of Paul Jones.

"Paul,
the
Pirate"



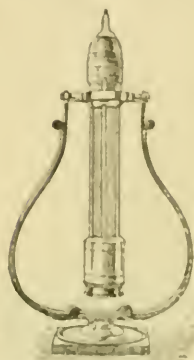
THE FIRST AMERICAN ENSIGN
*This, the first flag to float above
an American man of war, was
raised by John Paul Jones*

There was great joy in France when Paul Jones sailed into port. The king, who was now making war on England, promised him a larger fleet of war vessels. So, in 1779, he found himself captain of a large ship armed with fifty cannon. He called the ship the "Bon Homme Richard" in honor of Franklin's Almanac, the "Poor Richard." Three smaller vessels joined him, and he again set sail for the English coast. The news of his coming caused great alarm.

The
"Good
Man
Richard"

The
"Rich-
ard" and
the "Ser-
apis"

100. **A Great Sea Fight and a Great Victory.** As Paul Jones sailed along the British coasts he captured many trading ships and frightened the people. At last he came upon two British war ships. Just at dark the "Richard" attacked a larger English ship, the "Serapis." At the first fire two of Jones's cannon burst, tearing up the deck and killing a dozen of his own men.



MARINE CANDLE TICK
*From man of war
"Constitution"*

The
great sea
fight

The fight went on for an hour, when the "Serapis" came near, and Jones ran the "Richard" into her. "Have you struck your colors?" called out the English captain. "I have not yet begun to fight!" replied Captain Jones. When the ships came together again Paul Jones himself seized a great rope and tied them together. Now the fighting was terrific. The cannon tore huge holes

in the sides of the ships.

A great explosion on the "Serapis" killed twenty of her men. Both ships were on fire, and the "Richard" began to fill with water. The men on each ship had to fight fire. It was ten o'clock at night. The British prisoners on the "Richard" had to help pump out water to keep the ship from sinking.

Only a few cannon on each ship could be fired. The decks of both ships were covered with dead and wounded, but neither captain would give up. Finally Paul Jones, with his own hands, pointed two cannon at the great mast of the "Serapis." Just as it was about to fall, the English captain surrendered.

All night Jones and his men were kept busy fighting fire and pumping water, while the wounded were removed to the "Serapis."

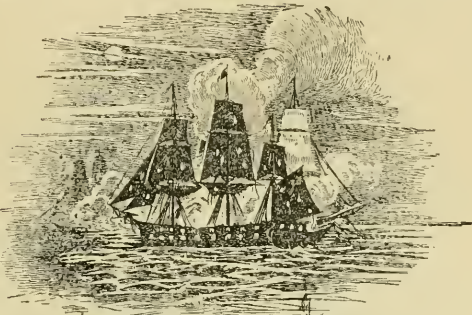
A
great
victory



NAVAL FITCHER
*This was made in
commemoration of
the American
Navy, 1795*

The "Good Man Richard" sank the next day at ten o'clock. Paul Jones sailed to France with his two English ships, where he was praised and rewarded by the King of France. He was a great hero in the eyes of the French people, and in the eyes of the Americans, too.

After the war Paul Jones was an officer in the Russian navy. He died in France in 1792. His grave was forgotten for many years, but was discovered in 1905, and his bones were brought to America with great honor, and buried at Annapolis, Maryland.



THE CAPTURE OF THE SERAPIS

Because of this victory three nations, France, Russia, and Denmark, bestowed special honors upon John Paul Jones as "the valiant assertor of the freedom of the Sea."

A
great
naval
hero

Finally
buried in
America

JOHN BARRY, WHO WON MORE SEA FIGHTS IN THE REVOLUTION THAN ANY OTHER CAPTAIN

101. John Barry. Although born on a farm in Ireland (1745), John Barry wanted to be a sailor lad. While still young he was put to service on board a merchant ship. Here young Barry learned more than being a mere sailor. Between voyages he used his time well in hard study, and soon gained a useful education. At the age of fifteen he came to Philadelphia, and was so pleased with the country and the people that he resolved to make America his home.

Barry
visits
America

He rose rapidly as a sailor and soon came to be master of a merchant ship. When the news of the first bloodshed between England and her colonies came he had already been captain of half a dozen vessels. He now offered his services to Congress.

Becomes
master
of a
merchant
ship

Made
captain
of the
"Lexing-
ton"

In 1776, Congress made him captain of the ship "Lexington," the first Continental vessel to sail from William Penn's old city. Barry immediately put to sea, and met and captured the "Edward" after a fierce fight. Thus the "Lexington" was the first ship to bear the American flag to victory.

Congress, pleased with the result, put him in charge of a larger ship, called the "Effingham." She did not do much, as the British bottled her up in the Delaware.

But Barry was not idle. He armed four boats full of men, and, with muffled oars, rowed down the Delaware at night. Just as the sun was rising Barry saw a British vessel of ten guns. With this

ship were four transports loaded with forage for the British army. Barry's boats made for the British ship. His men climbed on board with guns and swords in hand. The British soldiers threw down their arms and ran below. Barry fastened down the hatchways, and then turned his attention to the four transports, which quickly surrendered. Barry took the five prizes across the river to an American fort. There he found he had captured a major, two cap-



BARRY'S BOATS ATTACKING THE BRITISH

tains, three lieutenants, and more than one hundred soldiers and sailors. Not a bad day's work for thirty Americans!

He cap-
tures a
British
vessel
and four
trans-
ports

Washington and the Americans were loud in their praises of Barry. The British general, Howe, it is said, offered him \$100,000 and the command of a British ship if he would desert the Americans. "Not the value and command of the whole British fleet can seduce me to desert the cause of my country," was Barry's answer.

In 1778 Congress promoted John Barry to the command of the "Raleigh," a fine ship with a noble name. He set sail for Boston, and on his way met a British ship carrying thirty-two

guns. His sailors had taken an oath never to surrender. They fought with great bravery, and had every hope of winning the fight, when a British 64-gun ship came in sight. To keep their oaths, they ran the "Raleigh" ashore on an island, and set her on fire. The British put out the fire and saved the ship.

102. Barry Given Command of the "Alliance." In 1781 Barry was placed in command of the "Alliance," a ship whose name was given in honor of France's helping America in this war. He carried important news to France. On the voyage home, Barry captured a number of vessels.

In May the "Alliance" met two British ships, and a hard battle

Barry
praised
by Wash-
ington



WASHINGTON PRESENTING COMMISSION TO BARRY
From an engraving by Duval after a design by Höffy, to be found in the United States Military Magazine of February 27, 1797, now in the possession of the Pennsylvania Historical Society

He takes
com-
mand of
the "Ral-
eigh"

Carries
news to
France

Wounded, but forces the British to strike their colors followed. Barry was dangerously wounded. Eleven of his men were killed, and twenty-one wounded. Barry would not surrender, but fought on and forced the British ships to strike their colors.

He next took General Lafayette to France. After his return to America he went on a cruise and captured several vessels.

In 1783, Barry, in the "Alliance," sailed on his last voyage of the Revolution. His companion ship was the "Luzerne." Three

British ships discovered the Americans and quickly gave chase. The "Luzerne" was slow and threw overboard her guns.

Another vessel came into view; it was a French ship of fifty guns. With her aid Barry immediately decided to fight. He made a speech to his men, and went from gun to gun urging the men not to fire until ordered. A terrific battle with the foremost British ship followed. The "Alliance" soon had the British ship badly cut up. Most of her guns were silenced, and after fifty minutes fighting, she showed signals of distress.



JOHN BARRY

*From the portrait painted by
Colin Campbell Cooper after
the Stuart painting, now in
Independence Hall,
Philadelphia*

The remaining British ships now came up to rescue her, and the "Alliance" sailed away. The French ships took no part in the battle.

The Revolution was now over, and the colonies were free states. There were no more war ships to command. But John Barry was born for the sea. He immediately took command of a merchant ship, and began to add to his own fortune.

When Congress provided a navy, General Knox, Washington's Secretary of War and of the Navy, named John Barry as first

On his
last voy-
age of
the Rev-
olution

Named
first com-
mander
of a navy

commodore. He superintended the construction of the war ship, the "United States," and served on board her as the senior commander of the American navy, until his death, at Philadelphia, in 1803. The people of Philadelphia have erected a monument to his memory (1907).

SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

The Leading Facts. 1. John Paul was born a sailor in Scotland and went to America. 2. He was in America when war broke out; offered his service and was made lieutenant. 3. Congress sent him to France, and Franklin sent him to prey on English commerce. 4. Paul Jones won the great sea fight in the "Bon Homme Richard." 5. John Barry was born in Ireland, but went to sea early. 6. Congress made him captain in 1776, in charge of the "Lexington." 7. Barry set the country talking by capturing a war vessel and four transports. 8. John Barry won more naval victories in the Revolutionary War than any other officer. 9. Named first commodore in 1794 by the Secretary of the Navy.

Study Questions. 1. Give an account of John Paul's boyhood. 2. What of his first visit to America? 3. How did Paul happen, at so early an age, to have full charge of a vessel? 4. Why did he go to Virginia a second time? 5. Why did he hasten to Congress as soon as war began? 6. How did Paul Jones prove his right to be captain? 7. Tell the story of the battle between the "Drake" and the "Ranger." 8. Picture the battle between the "Bon Homme Richard" and the "Serapis." 9. What rewards came to Paul Jones? 10. Where is he buried?

11. Give an account of John Barry's youth. 12. When the war came, what was Barry's action? 13. What was the first victory on the part of the navy? 14. Commit to memory Barry's reply to the offer of the British. 15. What was the outcome of the battle on the "Raleigh"? 16. What were Barry's experiences in the "Alliance"? Picture Barry's last battle.

Suggested Readings. PAUL JONES: Beebe, *Four American Naval Heroes*, 17-68; Abbot, *Blue Jackets of '76*, 83-154; Frothingham, *Sea Fighters*, 226-266; Hart, *Camps and Firesides of the American Revolution*, 285-289; Hart, *How Our Grandfathers Lived*, 217-219; Seawell, *Paul Jones*.

JOHN BARRY: Griffin, *Commodore John Barry*, 1-96.

FOREIGNERS WHO CAME OVER THE SEA TO HELP WASHINGTON WIN INDEPENDENCE

MARQUIS DE LAFAYETTE

103. Lafayette. The most famous of the men who came from Europe to fight in the army of Washington was Lafayette. He was a young French nobleman, and had inherited great riches.

When he heard of the battle of Lexington, and how the American farmers had beaten the king's regulars, he made up his mind to go to help them. In order to do this Lafayette fitted out a vessel at his own expense, and with eleven other officers including De Kalb set sail for America.

The Congress made Lafayette a general in the Continental army, and the next day he was presented to General Washington. Very soon he was in the battle of Brandywine, where he was wounded while trying to rally his troops. After he got well,

he became interested in Indian affairs and went with General Schuyler to an Indian council. He gave the Indians money and goods, and reminded them of their warm friendship for France.

Again, Washington put him in command of a part of his army at Valley Forge. He took part in several battles with the British, the most important one being that of Monmouth. Lafayette now went to Rhode Island to help the patriots in that section. For work there Congress gave him a vote of thanks.



JEAN PAUL LAFAYETTE

From a painting by Samuel F. B. Morse in the Mayor's Room, New York City Hall

Lafayette
decides
to come
to
America

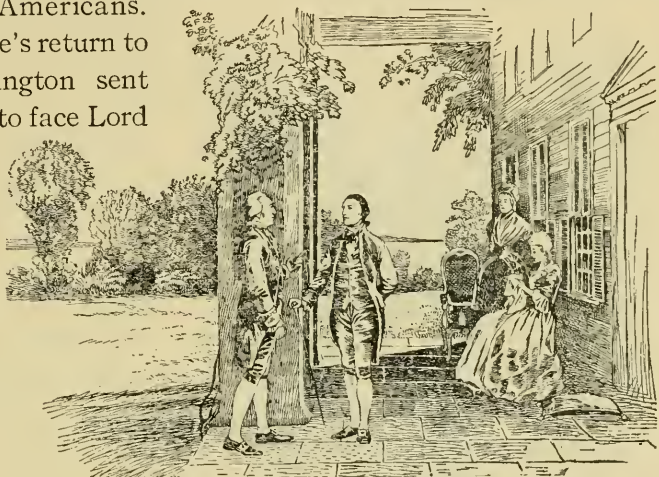
Lafayette
wounded
at Bran-
dywine

At the
battle of
Mon-
mouth

In 1779, he was welcomed home by his family. Through his influence France sent Rochambeau over with six thousand troops to help the Americans.

Welcome home

On Lafayette's return to America Washington sent him to Virginia to face Lord Cornwallis, who had just come from North Carolina. After receiving more soldiers Lafayette followed Cornwallis to Yorktown. Here, we remember, Washington with his aid caught Cornwallis in his "mouse trap."



LAFAYETTE AT MOUNT VERNON

After a painting by Rossiter and Mignot

Lafayette at Mount Vernon

The year after peace Lafayette came back to America to visit Washington. There were great times at Mount Vernon. Washington, Lafayette, and other noble men sat around the table and there told stories of their struggles and of their triumphs.

Lafayette visited many other places and received a warm welcome wherever he went.

A few years after his return to France, the people of that country rose and overthrew their king. Lafayette was made commander-in-chief of the National Guard. The king and queen were placed under his protection. He promised the people that the king and queen would not run away. They did try it, but were caught and brought back.

Commands the French National Guard

Both the mob and the king and queen blamed Lafayette. His command was taken from him and he fled from France, intending to come to the United States; but he was seized and imprisoned by orders from the government of Austria.

Long
imprison-
ment



A RECEPTION TO LAFAYETTE

Visits the
United
States
in 1824

In 1824 he came to the United States upon invitation from President Monroe, and in the White House celebrated his sixty-sixth birthday with great ceremony. He made visits to every state in the Union. Eleven new states had entered the Union which he had fought to establish. Lafayette was welcomed in the new states as well as in the old. He visited all the Revolutionary battlefields, and wept over the grave of Washington at Mount Vernon, and over that of his own brave De Kalb at Camden, South Carolina.

At the
grave of
Wash-
ington



LAFAYETTE AT THE TOMB OF WASHINGTON

Before Lafayette went home Congress voted him two hundred thousand dollars and twenty-four thousand acres of land. He returned to France in the ship "Brandywine," bearing the gratitude and love of every American.

Congress
rewards
Lafayette

He died in 1834, and was followed to the grave by a vast body of people. He left a son named after George Washington, and two daughters, one of whom was called Virginia. A monument to Lafayette, given by the school children of America, was placed in a beautiful park of Paris at the time of the great French Exposition.

BARON VON STEUBEN, KOSCIUSZKO, PULASKI, AND DE KALB.

104. Other Foreigners Who Fought for American Liberty.

Baron von Steuben was the drill master of the American army. Before coming to America he had been an officer on the staff of Frederick the Great of Prussia. While the American army lay in camp at Valley Forge, Steuben drilled the soldiers and taught them how to use the bayonet. Later, in the battles of Monmouth, Camden, and Yorktown, they showed the British soldiers how well they had learned their lesson. Steuben served the Americans without pay and spent his own fortune in providing food and clothing for the soldiers. Congress rewarded him liberally, after the war.

Steuben
drilled
the
American
soldiers

Tadeusz Kosciuszko was a Polish nobleman. When the colonists began to fight for liberty he hastened to help them. He served as a colonel of engineers. The forts at Bemis Heights and at West Point were planned by him. At the close of the war he returned to Poland and fought for his own country's liberty.

Polish
patriots
help
the
Americans

Casimir Pulaski was a Polish patriot. He joined Washington's army and was given command of the cavalry. At the siege of Savannah he led a gallant charge and was mortally wounded. Lafayette laid the corner stone to his monument at Savannah.

Gave his
life in
a famous
charge

Johann de Kalb was of German parentage. He served the Americans nobly. During the terrible winter at Valley Forge he stayed with the army, and at the battle of Camden led a famous bayonet charge. He was wounded eleven times in this battle, and died three days later. A monument has been erected to his memory on the battlefield.

SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

The Leading Facts. 1. The battle of Lexington aroused Lafayette and others to come to America. 2. Lafayette was wounded at the battle of Brandywine, went to Rhode Island to help the patriots there, and returned home to influence the King of France to send Rochambeau to America. 3. Lafayette prepared the way for the capture of Cornwallis. 4. Lafayette took part in the French Revolution, returned to America in 1824, and received many tokens of affection. 5. Baron von Steuben, a drill master of Frederick the Great, came to America and drilled Washington's troops. 6. Kosciuszko, a Polish patriot, came to America and prepared the forts at Bemis Heights and at West Point. 7. Pulaski led a famous charge of cavalry at Savannah, and was slain. 8. De Kalb made a famous charge at Camden, where he was mortally wounded.

Study Questions. 1. Who came with Lafayette to help the Americans? 2. In what battles did Lafayette fight before the Cornwallis campaign? 3. Where was he sent after his return from France? 4. What social gathering at Mount Vernon in the year after the peace was made? 5. How was Lafayette finally released from imprisonment? 6. How old was Lafayette when he came for his last visit, and what men were dead that he loved? 7. How many states did he visit? 8. Whose graves did he visit? 9. How did Congress testify its love for Lafayette? 10. What had Steuben been before he came to America? 11. What proof can you give of his generosity? 12. What great lesson did Steuben teach the American soldier during the winter at Valley Forge? 13. Where did the American soldier show the British soldier an example of Steuben's bayonet charge? 14. How did Kosciuszko help the Americans? 15. What command was given to Pulaski? 16. Where was he killed? 17. What gallant charge was led by De Kalb? 18. Who laid the corner stone of his monument, and where?

Suggested Readings. LAFAYETTE: Glascock, *Stories of Columbia*, 114-126; Blaisdell and Ball, *Hero Stories from American History*, 199-216; Brooks, *True Story of Lafayette*.

THE MEN WHO CROSSED THE MOUNTAINS, DEFEATED
THE INDIANS AND BRITISH, AND MADE THE MISSIS-
SIPPI RIVER THE FIRST WESTERN BOUNDARY
OF THE UNITED STATES

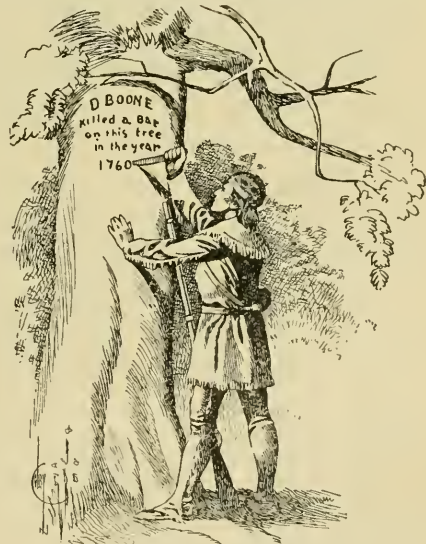
DANIEL BOONE, THE HUNTER AND PIONEER OF KENTUCKY

105. A Famous Frontier Hero. Daniel Boone was born in Pennsylvania in 1735. He was only three years younger than Washington. While yet a boy he loved the woods, and often spent days deep in the forest with no companion but his rifle and dog. Boone
born in
Penn-
sylvania

Boone's parents moved to North Carolina, and settled on the Yadkin River. There he married at the early age of twenty, and, pioneer-like, moved farther into the forest, where people were scarcer and game more plentiful. He built a log cabin for his bride, and made a "clearing" for raising corn and vegetables. But his trusty rifle furnished their table with all kinds of wild meat, such as bear, deer, squirrel, and turkey.

In 1760, Boone with a friend crossed the mountains to the Watauga in east Tennessee, on a hunting expedition, where he killed a bear, and cut the date of the event on a beech tree, which still stands on Boone's Creek in east Tennessee.

One of Boone's hunter friends came back from a journey across the Cumberland Mountains and told of the beauty of the land



BOONE AND HIS BEAR TREE

Moved to
the
Yadkin

Crossed
the
mountains in
1760

News
from
across
the Cum-
berland

beyond—its hills and valleys, its forests and canebrakes, full of game. Boone was anxious to go. Too many people were settling near him. But Kentucky was a dangerous country, even if beautiful. It was called "No-man's-land," because not even Indians lived there, and the "dark and bloody ground," because the tribes from the North and from the South met there in deadly conflict.

Boone
and com-
panions
go to
Ken-
tucky

106. Boone Goes to the Land of Canebrake and Blue Grass.

While the people along the seacoast were disputing with the king, Boone and five companions, after climbing over mountains, fording rivers, and making their way through pathless forests reached Kentucky, the land of salt springs, canebrakes, and blue grass.

Danger
from
animals

They built a log camp and spent several months enjoying the wild life so dear to the hunter. But it was full of danger. Sometimes it was a battle with a father and a mother bear fighting for their little ones. The sneaking panther or the lurking wildcat threatened their lives. Now and then, hundreds of buffaloes came rushing through the canebrakes.

Danger
from
Indians
ever
present

But danger from the Indians was present every moment. Day and night, sleeping in their camp or tramping through the woods, the hunters had to be ready for the death grapple. One day Boone and a companion named Stewart were off their guard. The Indians rushed upon them and captured them.

Captured
but
escapes

Boone and his companion understood the ways of the Indians, and won their confidence. One night, as the savages slept around the camp fire, Boone arose and quietly awoke Stewart. They stole silently from the camp and hastened by night and day back to their old camp, only to find it destroyed and their comrades gone.

News
from the
old home

One day Daniel Boone saw his brother coming through the woods. What a happy meeting five hundred miles from home! The brother brought good news from kindred and friends.

Stewart was shot by the Indians, but Boone and his brother remained all winter in Kentucky. Powder, lead, and salt were growing scarce.

What should be done? Boone's brother returned home for supplies, but Daniel remained without even a dog for a companion. He very seldom slept twice in the same place for fear of the Indians.



His
brother
returns
home for
supplies

BOONE FIGHTING OVER THE BODY OF HIS SON

He wandered to the banks of the Ohio, and was charmed with all he saw. He decided that some day he would make Kentucky his home.

Boone's brother returned in the spring, bringing supplies on two pack horses. After further explorations the two brothers returned to their home on the Yadkin and told their neighbors of the wonders of the new land.

Brings
supplies
and both
go home

In the fall of 1773, several families, with cattle and horses, bade farewell to their friends and started for Kentucky, "a second Paradise," as Boone called it. Before they reached the new land Indians fell upon them and killed six. Among the killed was Boone's eldest son. The party returned for a time to a settlement in Virginia.

An
Indian
attack

Richard Henderson, a rich planter, claimed a great tract of land in Kentucky, and put Boone at the head of thirty brave men to cut and blaze a road from the Holston River over the mountains, through Cumberland Gap to the Kentucky River. The result

Making
the "Wil-
derness
Road"

was the famous "Wilderness Road," the first road across the mountains, and over which hundreds of pack horses and thousands of settlers made their way.

Fort
Boones-
boro

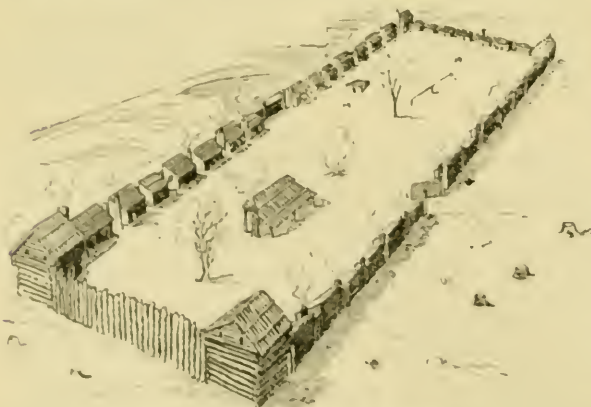
When the road was finished to the banks of the Kentucky River, Daniel Boone built Fort Boonesboro. The fort was about two hundred sixty feet long, and one hundred fifty feet wide. At each corner of it stood a two-story blockhouse with loopholes, through which the settlers could shoot at Indians. Cabins with loopholes were built along the sides of the fort. Between the cabins a high fence was made by sinking log posts into the ground. Two heavy gates were built on opposite sides of the fort. Every night the horses and cattle were driven inside the fort.

His fami-
ly in the
"second
Para-
dise"

107. Boone Takes His Family to Kentucky. When the fort was finished Boone brought his family, and several others, over the mountains to his "second Paradise." Other settlers came and Boonesboro began to grow. Some of the bolder settlers built cabins outside of the fort, where they cut away and burned the trees to raise

corn and vegetables.

To the Indian all this seemed to threaten his hunting ground. The red men were anxious, therefore, to kill and scalp these brave pioneers. One day, Boone's daughter and two girl friends were out late in a boat near the shore



Three
girl
prisoners

FORT BOONESBORO IN WINTER
*After the plan by Colonel Henderson in Collins's
Historical Collections of Kentucky*

opposite the fort when the Indians suddenly seized the girls and hastened away with them. The people heard their screams for help, but too late to risk crossing the river.

What sorrow in the fort that night! Had the Indians scalped the girls, or were they hastening to cross the Ohio with them? The next day Boone with eight men seized their guns, found the Indian trail, and marched with all speed. What if the



The chase and the capture

BOONE AND HIS MEN TRAILING THE INDIANS

Indians should see the white men first! On the second day Boone's party came upon the Indians building a fire, and fired before they were seen. Two of the Indians fell, and the others ran away, leaving the girls behind, unharmed, but badly frightened.

The War of the Revolution was already raging east of the mountains, and the Indians were taking the side of the British. In April, 1777, a small army of Indians crossed the Ohio and attacked Boonesboro. The little fort made a bold fight. The Indians retreated, but returned on the Fourth of July in large numbers, to destroy the fort and scalp the settlers. For two days and nights the battle went on. The fierce war cry of the Indians filled the woods around the fort. The white men took deadly aim. The women aided by melting the lead into bullets. The Indians again failed and finally retreated.

Kentucky in the War of the Revolution

The
prize
prisoner

While making salt at the "Blue Licks," Boone and twenty-seven of his men were captured by the Indians and marched all the way to Detroit, the headquarters of the British army in the Northwest. The British offered the Indians five hundred dollars for Boone, but the savages were too proud of their great prisoner, and marched him back to their towns in what is now Ohio.

Adopted
by an
Indian
family

Here he was adopted by an Indian chief. They plucked out all of Boone's hair except a "scalp lock," which they ornamented with feathers. They painted and dressed him like an Indian. His new parents were quite proud of their son. Sometimes he went hunting alone, but the Indians counted his bullets and measured his powder. But Boone was too shrewd for them. He cut the bullets in two, and used half charges of powder.

Steals
away to
Boones-
boro

One day he saw four hundred fifty painted warriors getting ready to march against Boonesboro. He went hunting that day, but he did not come back. What excitement in that Indian town! Soon the woods were full of Indians hunting for Boone. In five days—with but one meal—he reached Boonesboro.

All hands fell to repairing the fort. The horses, cattle, and provisions were brought inside the fort, and water was brought from the river.

The Indians came, and Boone's "Indian father" called on him to surrender. Boone asked for two days to think about it, but he used this time in getting ready to fight. At the end of the two days Boone told him that his men would fight to the last.

An
Indian
trick
spoiled

The Indians then proposed that twelve from each side meet to make a treaty of peace. Boone took his strongest men. While parleying, each Indian suddenly seized a white man. The white men broke away, and ran for the fort. Boone's riflemen were ready, and poured a hot fire into the Indians.

The Indians climbed into trees to shoot down into the fort. They tried to set the fort on fire, but failed. They then tried to dig a tunnel under the fort, but that failed also.

After nine days of failure, and after losing many warriors, the Indians gave up the fight and recrossed the Ohio. Although the settlers had to keep a daily watch for Indians, and had to fight them in other parts of Kentucky, they never attacked Boonesboro again.

During the Revolutionary War other brave men came as pioneers into Kentucky, and built forts, and defended their settlements against the Indians. As the settlements grew thicker, game grew scarcer. Boone resolved once more to move farther west. When asked why, he replied: "Too much crowded. I want more elbow room."

At the age of sixty, while Washington was still president, and after he had seen Kentucky become a state, Daniel Boone and his faithful wife made the long journey to the region beyond the Mississippi, into what is now Missouri. There he lived and hunted. He saw this region pass from Spain to France, and from France to the United States (1803). He was still a hunter at eighty-two, and saw Missouri preparing to enter the Union as the twenty-fourth state.

He died in 1820 at the age of eighty-six. Years afterward, remembering the noble deeds of the great pioneer, Kentucky brought his body to the capital city and buried it with great honors.

The
Indians
cannot
capture
Boone's
fort



DANIEL BOONE

From a portrait made in 1819 when Boone was 85 years old, painted by Chester Harding, and now in possession of the Massachusetts Historical Society, Boston, Massachusetts

Boone's
reason
for again
moving
west

Moves to
Missouri

Died
in 1820

Buried
at Frank-
fort, Ken-
tucky

The
Louisiana
country
and the
French

108. Life on the Mississippi. When Boone led his brave men into Kentucky, white men had been living for years in the Mississippi Valley, farther west. These were the French of Louisiana, as they called their country. Their chief settlement was St. Louis.

These people came at first to dig lead from the old Indian mines of southern Missouri and to trade for furs. They were a quiet people who knew little and cared less about the rest of the world. They did not work hard, and they loved good times. A traveler who visited them says they were "the happiest people on the globe."

JOHN SEVIER "NOLICHUCKY JACK"

109. A Famous Indian Fighter. John Sevier was born in the Shenandoah Valley in 1745. His mother taught him to read, but he obtained most of his schooling in George Washington's old school town, Fredericksburg. He quit school at sixteen. He built a fort-like storehouse on the Shenandoah and called it Newmarket. He lived there, selling goods and fighting Indians, until, at the early age of twenty-six, he was a wealthy man. He had already made such a name as an Indian fighter that the governor made him captain in the militia of which George Washington was then colonel.



JOHN SEVIER

*After an engraving from a miniature
now in possession of one of his
descendants at New York*

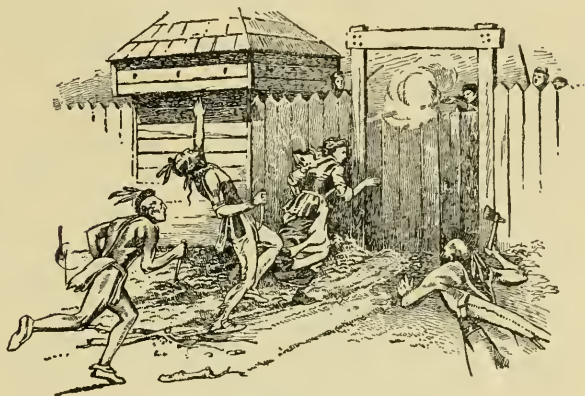
Early
life in
the Shen-
andoah

Fine
looking

Sevier was a fine-looking man. He was tall, slender, erect, graceful in action, fair skinned, blue eyed, and had pleasing

manners, which had come to him from his French parents. He charmed everybody who met him from backwoodsmen up to the king's governor at Williamsburg.

A most promising future opened before him in Virginia. But hearing of a band of pioneers on the Watauga, he rode over one day to see them and resolved to cast in his lot with them.



KATE SHERRILL RACING FOR LIFE

He goes
to the
Watauga

During the Revolutionary War, British agents went among the Cherokee Indians and gave them guns and ammunition. Indian-like, they planned to take Fort Watauga by surprise. They came creeping up to the fort one morning just at daybreak. Forty deadly rifles suddenly blazed from portholes and drove them back to the woods. During the siege of three weeks, food grew scarce at the fort, and the men grew tired of being cooped up so long. Some of them ventured out and were shot or had very narrow escapes from death.

Tennes-
see in the
Revolu-
tion

The story is told that Sevier, during the siege, fell in love with the beautiful, tall, brown-haired Kate Sherrill. One day she ventured out of the fort. It was a daring act, for four men had lost their lives in this way. The Indians tried to catch the girl, for they did not want to kill her. But she could run like a deer, and almost flew to the fort. Sevier was watching and shot the Indian nearest her. The gate was closed but she jumped with all her might,

The
story of
Jack Se-
vier and
Kate
Sherrill

seized the top of the stockade, drew herself up, and sprang over into the arms of Sevier. Not long after she became his wife.

Sevier
acts
quickly

In 1778, Sevier heard that the Indians were coming again. He quickly called his men together, took boats, and paddled rapidly down the Tennessee to the Indian towns. He burned the towns, captured their store of hides, and marched home on foot. How surprised the Indians were when they returned!

Moves
to the
Noli-
chucky

110. Nolichucky Jack. The Watauga Settlement was growing in numbers, and Sevier went to live on the Nolichucky, a branch of the French Broad River. There he built a large log house, or rather two houses, and joined them by a covered porch. Outside were large verandas, while inside were great stone fireplaces.

Wel-
comes
rich and
poor

Here Sevier gave hearty welcome to friend and stranger, no matter how poor, if they were honest. The settlers far and wide, and new settlers from over the mountains, partook of his cider, hominy, corn bread, and of wild meat of many kinds. Sometimes he invited them with their families to a barbecue. Whether people came for advice or to call him to arms against the Indians, no one was turned away. "Nolichucky Jack," as his neighbors loved to call him, held a warm place in every settler's heart.

British
challenge
to Kings
Moun-
tain

In 1780, Cornwallis, then victorious in South Carolina, sent Colonel Ferguson with one thousand British soldiers into western North Carolina to punish the backwoodsmen. Ferguson grew bold, and sent word across the mountains, threatening to punish Sevier and his brave riflemen. This was enough. Colonel Shelby of Kentucky and Sevier resolved to rouse the frontiersmen, cross the mountains, and teach Colonel Ferguson a lesson. Colonel Campbell with his men from the Holston, in Virginia, joined them. A thousand well-mounted backwoodsmen, with their long rifles, fringed hunting shirts, and coonskin caps, began the march from



THE BATTLE OF KINGS MOUNTAIN

Where 900 frontiersmen attacked and totally destroyed 1,000 British soldiers entrenched and better armed

the Watauga across the mountains. Once across they were joined by several hundred Carolinians. Ferguson retreated to Kings Mountain, too steep on one side to be climbed. He felt safe behind his thousand gleaming bayonets.

The backwoodsmen picked nine hundred men to make the charge up the mountain in face of the bayonets, although among themselves there was not a bayonet. Three divisions, one for each side, marched up the mountain. Down the mountain side came the flashing bayonets. The backwoodsmen in the center retreated from tree to tree, firing steadily all the time. The British, now shot at from both sides as well as in front, turned and charged at one

The plan
of battle

Battle of
Kings
Mountain

side. Then one division fired into their backs and the other on their side. What could bayonets do in the midst of trees?

The
result

The backwoodsmen kept to trees and their rifles seldom missed their aim. The British retreated to the top of the mountain. Colonel Ferguson was killed and his entire army was killed or captured. This victory caused great rejoicing among the Americans and prepared the way for the work of Greene and Morgan.

A deadly
blow

Sevier and Campbell hastened back over the mountains, for the Indians were scalping and burning again. With seven hundred riflemen, they marched against the Indian towns and burned a thousand cabins and fifty thousand bushels of corn. This was a hard blow, but the Indians kept fighting several years longer.

Sevier, in all, fought thirty-five battles. He was the most famous Indian fighter of his time.

Governor
of Ten-
nessee
many
times

When Tennessee became a state the people elected him governor. They reelected him till he had held the office for twelve years. The people of Tennessee almost worshiped the bold pioneer. He had spent all his time and all his wealth in their service. And while he was governor, and living in Knoxville, the early capital, one or more of his old riflemen were always living at his home. Even the Indian chiefs often came to visit him. When the people of Tennessee were debating questions of great importance, they always asked: "What says the good old governor?"

Indians
trusted
him

One Sunday, when all the people of a backwoods settlement were at the country church, a bareheaded runner rushed in and shouted "Nolichucky Jack's a-coming!" The people rushed out to see their governor. As he came near, he greeted one of his old riflemen, put his hand upon the head of the old soldier's son, spoke a kindly word, and rode on. The boy looked up at his father and said: "Why, father, 'Chucky Jack' is only a man!"

The
boy's dis-
appoint-
ment

Sevier died in 1815, while acting as an officer in marking the boundary line between Georgia and the Indian lands. Only a few soldiers and Indians were present. There he lies, with only the name "John Sevier" cut on a simple slab. But for generations the children of the pioneers went on repeating to their children the story of the courage and goodness of "Nolichucky Jack." His name is yet a household word among the people of eastern Tennessee.

Died
in 1815



"NOLICHUCKY JACK'S A-COMING"

Sevier welcomed by the congregation of a country church

Their children are taught the story of his life. In the Court House yard at Knoxville stands a monument erected to his memory.

SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

The Leading Facts. 1. Boone loved the woods, crossed the mountains into east Tennessee, and later went to Kentucky. 2. He wintered alone in Kentucky; his brother returned home for supplies. 3. Boone built the "Wilderness Road," and also built Fort Boonesboro. 4. Boone took part in the War of the Revolution, was captured by the Indians, carried to Detroit, but escaped. 5. Years after his death his remains were taken to Frankfort, Kentucky. 6. John Sevier studied at Fredericksburg; fought Indians in the Shenandoah. 7. He went over to Watauga; helped defend it against the Indians. 8. Sevier helped win the great victory at Kings Mountain. 9. He was many times Governor of Tennessee.

Study Questions. 1. What did Boone do that was pioneerlike? 2. What was the country doing in 1760? 3. Why did Boone wish to leave North Carolina? 4. What were the early names of Kentucky, and what did these names mean? 5. Tell the story of Boone's first visit to Kentucky. 6. Picture the capture and escape of Boone and Stewart. 7. Find the places on the map which are named on Boone's Wilderness Road. 8. Picture the scene in Boonesboro the night of the capture of the girls and also of their rescue and return home. 9. Go with Boone to Blue Licks and help make salt. 10. Be captured and tell of the long journey to Detroit, what you saw there, and how and why Boone made his escape. 11. Tell the story of the last attack on Boonesboro. 12. Why did Boone move to Missouri? 13. What famous men went to school at Fredericksburg? 14. What famous men have lived a part of their time in the Shenandoah? 15. What changed Sevier's career? 16. Tell what happened to Sevier at the siege of Fort Watauga. 17. Why did Sevier leave Watauga, and what sort of life did he lead on the Nolichucky? 18. Tell of the gathering of the clans and picture the battle of Kings Mountain. 19. Why did the people of Tennessee love Sevier? 20. Why was the boy disappointed?

Suggested Readings. DANIEL BOONE: Wright, *Children's Stories of American Progress*, 1-40; Glascock, *Stories of Columbia*, 138-147; Hart, *Camps and Firesides of the Revolution*, 101-116; McMurry, *Pioneers of the Mississippi Valley*, 68-83.

JOHN SEVIER: Blaisdell and Ball, *Hero Stories from American History*, 90-104; McMurry, *Pioneers of the Mississippi Valley*, 104-123; Phelan, *History of Tennessee*, 57-66, 241-257.

GEORGE ROGERS CLARK, THE HERO OF VINCENNES

III. A Successful Leader Against the Indians and the British.

George Rogers Clark was born in Virginia in 1752. From childhood Clark liked to roam the woods. He became a surveyor and an Indian fighter at the age of twenty-one. Like Washington, with chain and compass, and with axe and rifle, he made his way far into the wild and lonely forests of the upper Ohio.

Clark was a scout for the Governor of Virginia in the expedition which defeated Cornstalk, the great Indian chief of the Shawnees, at the mouth of the Kanawha.

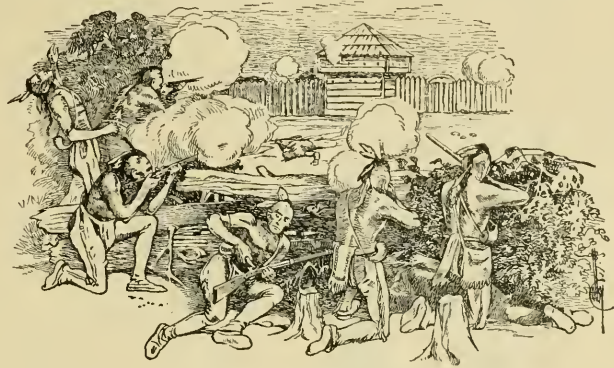
Clark
born in
Virginia

A
surveyor

A scout

Two years later Clark made his way alone over the mountains and became a leader in Kentucky, along with Boone. The Kentucky hunters chose Clark to go to Virginia as their lawmaker.

He told Governor Patrick Henry that if Kentucky was not worth defending against the Indians, it was not worth having. At this the Virginian lawmakers made Kentucky into a Virginia county and gave Clark five hundred pounds of powder which he carried down the Ohio River to Kentucky.



In Kentucky

INDIANS ATTACKING A FORT

Again and again, when a surprise was not possible, the Indians from safe hiding places picked off the men in a garrison

Clark lived at Harrodsburg where, for more than a year, he was kept busy helping the settlers fight off the Indians. This was the very time when Boonesboro and other settlements were so often surrounded by Indians who had been aroused by the British officers at Detroit. These officers paid a certain sum for each scalp the Indians brought them.

Life at Harrodsburg

After having seen brave men and women scalped by the Indians, Clark decided to strike a blow at the British across the Ohio. But where could he find money and men for an army? Kentucky did not have men enough. Clark thought of that noble patriot across the mountains, Patrick Henry. He mounted his horse and guided some settlers back to Virginia, but kept his secret. In Virginia he heard the good news that Burgoyne had surrendered.

Turns to Patrick Henry in time of need

Governor Henry was heart and soul for Clark's plan. He made Clark a colonel, gave him six thousand dollars in paper money, and ordered him to raise an army to defend Kentucky.

112. The Campaign Against Old Vincennes. In May, 1778, Clark's little army of about one hundred fifty backwoodsmen with several families took their flatboats and floated down the Monongahela to Fort Pitt. Clark did not dare tell the riflemen where they were going, for fear the British might get the word. Here they took on supplies and a few small cannon.

On they floated, in the middle of the river to keep away from the Indians who might be hiding in the deep, dark forests on the river banks. At the falls of the Ohio, on Corn Island, Clark landed his party. He built a blockhouse and cabins, and drilled the riflemen into soldiers while the settlers planted corn. This was the beginning of the city of Louisville.

One day Clark called his men together and told them the secret—he was really leading them against the British forts on the Illinois and the Wabash rivers.

A few of the men refused to go so far from home—a thousand miles—but the rest were willing to follow their leader.

GEORGE ROGERS CLARK
From a painting on wood by John Wesley Jarvis, now in the State Library at Richmond, Virginia

In June, Clark's boats "shot the falls" and were soon at the mouth of the Tennessee, where a band of hunters joined the party. There Clark hid the boats and began the long march through

A colonel with a secret

Floating down the beautiful Ohio

Clark tells his secret

A long march begun



tangled forests and over grand prairies. But they did not know what minute the Indians might attack, or some British scout discover them and carry the news to General Hamilton at Detroit.

They reached the old French town of Kaskaskia at dusk on July 4. They did not dare give a shout or fire a gun, for the British officer had more men than Clark. **Kaskaskia, July 4, 1778**

Clark sent part of his men silently to surround the town, while he led the others to the fort, where they heard the merry music of the violin and the voices of the dancers. **Surrounds the town**

Clark himself slipped into the great hall, folded his arms, and looked in silence on the dimly-lighted scene. An Indian lying on the floor saw Clark's face by the light of the torches. He sprang to his feet, and gave the terrible war whoop. Instantly the dancing ceased, the women screamed, and the men rushed toward Clark.

But Clark simply said: "Go on with your dance, but remember that you dance under Virginia and not under Great Britain!"

The British general surrendered, and the French inhabitants trembled, when they learned that the backwoodsmen

had captured the town. They sent their priest, Father Gibault, and other chief men to beg for their lives. Imagine their surprise



**Virginia
not Great
Britain**

CLARK'S SURPRISE AT KASKASKIA

**The
French
settlers
alarmed**

and joy when Clark told them that not only were their lives safe, but that the new Republic made war on no church, and protected all from insult.

The
treaty
with
France

He also told them that the King of France had made a treaty with the United States and was sending his great war ships and soldiers to help America. The town of Cahokia also surrendered.

Vin-
cennes
surren-
ders

Father Gibault went to Vincennes to tell the French settlers about the doings of Clark and to give them the news that France had taken sides with the Americans. The people rejoiced and ran up the American flag. Clark sent Captain Helm to command the fort.

General Hamilton at Detroit was busy planning to attack Fort Pitt and to encourage the Ohio Indians to kill and scalp Kentuckians.

General
Hamilton
stirred up

How astonished he was when he heard that the forts on the Illinois and the Wabash had fallen! He gathered a mixed army of British, Canadians, and Indians, crossed Lake Erie to the mouth of the Maumee, and "poled" and paddled up that river to the portage. Down the Wabash they floated, five hundred strong. Vincennes surrendered without a blow. Hamilton decided to stay there for the winter and march against Clark in the spring. This was a blunder. He did not yet know Clark and his backwoodsmen.

Stays in
Vin-
cennes
until
spring

"I must take Hamilton or Hamilton will take me," said Clark, when he heard the news. He immediately set to work to build a rude sort of gunboat, which he fitted out with his cannon and about forty men. He sent the "Willing," as it was called, down the Mississippi, around into the Ohio, and up the Wabash to meet him at Vincennes.

Clark
begins
the
march

All was excitement in the French towns. Forty or fifty French joined Clark's riflemen. Father Gibault gave them his blessing and the march overland to Vincennes began.

Clark divided his men into parties. Each, in its turn, did the hunting, and at night invited the others to sit around great camp fires to feast on "bear ham, buffalo hump, elk saddle, and venison haunch." They ate, sang, danced, and told stories. No doubt they often talked of their loved ones far away in the cabins of Virginia and Kentucky.

On the
march

On they pushed till they came to the "drowned lands of the Wabash," and there they saw miles and miles of muddy water. They made a rude boat to carry them over the deepest parts. The horses had to swim.

The
drowned
lands

Soon they were near enough Vincennes to hear the "morning gun" at the fort, but they did not dare fire a gun themselves for fear of being discovered by parties of hunters. Food grew scarce, game was hard to find, and starvation threatened the men.

The
morning
gun



CLARK'S MEN ON THEIR WAY THROUGH THE DROWNED LANDS OF THE WABASH VALLEY

Sometimes, after wading all day, they could hardly find a dry spot to camp for the night. Some grew too weak to wade and were

Terrible
suffering



THE BIG TROOPER CARRIED THE-
DRUMMER BOY

carried in boats. The stronger sang songs to keep up the courage of the weak. When they finally reached the opposite shore of the Wabash many fell, worn out—some lying partly in the water.

Those who were well built great fires and warmed and fed the faint ones on hot deer broth. But these brave men soon forgot their hardships and again were full of fight.

Clark now decided to take a bold course. He sent a letter to the people of Vincennes telling them that he was about to attack the town. He advised all friends of America to remain quietly in their homes, and asked all friends of the British to go to the fort and join

the "hair-buyer," as the backwoodsmen called Hamilton.

At dark, Clark's men charged into the town and attacked the fort. The fight went on all night. As soon as it was daylight the backwoodsmen fired through the portholes and drove the gunners from the cannon.

The
attack

Clark's men begged to storm the fort. Only one American had been wounded, but several British soldiers had been killed and others wounded. In the afternoon Hamilton surrendered and once more the stars and stripes floated over "old Vincennes."

Hamilton
sur-
renders

The "Willing" appeared in a few days. Her men were deeply disappointed because they were too late to take part.



EXPEDITIONS TO THE WEST AND THE SCENE OF GEORGE ROGERS CLARK'S CAMPAIGN

Clark put men in the forts at Kaskaskia, Cahokia, and Vincennes, and made peace with the Indians round about. But he was never able to march against Detroit, as once he had planned to do.

Virginia rewarded the brave men who had followed Clark by giving to each three hundred acres of land in southern Indiana. The land was surveyed and is known to-day as "Clark's Grant."

Clark and his men had performed one of the greatest deeds of

Kaskaskia, Cahokia, Vincennes held by Americans
Clark's Grant

the Revolutionary War. They made it possible for the United States to have the Mississippi River for her western boundary when England acknowledged our independence.

Clark
unre-
warded

George Rogers Clark was never properly rewarded. He spent his last days in poverty at the falls of the Ohio, on Corn Island, and died in 1818. In 1895 a monument was erected in honor of his memory in the city of Indianapolis, Indiana.

SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

The Leading Facts. 1. George Rogers Clark loved the woods; was a surveyor and an Indian fighter at twenty-one. 2. Moved to Kentucky, saw men and women scalped, and resolved to capture the British posts north of the Ohio. 3. Clark received permission from Patrick Henry, collected his little army, and floated down the Ohio to the falls. 4. He drilled his men; set out for Kaskaskia, which he captured. 5. Clark marched for Vincennes through the drowned lands, attacked and captured Vincennes. 6. Clark was not rewarded by the government, but the state of Indiana has erected a great monument to his memory.

Study Questions. 1. What were Clark's surroundings in boyhood? 2. When was he a scout? A leader in Kentucky? 3. What made Clark learn to hate the British? 4. Tell the story of his secret. 5. Picture the voyage to the falls of the Ohio. 6. What did Clark do here? 7. Tell the story of events from the falls of the Ohio till he reached Kaskaskia. 8. Picture the scene of the dance at Kaskaskia. 9. What news did Clark give Father Gibault? 10. Where were the British, and what did they do? 11. Picture Clark's march to Vincennes. 12. Be one of the soldiers of Clark and tell what was seen, heard, and done the night of the attack on Vincennes and the next day. 13. Where was Clark's Grant? 14. Why do we call Clark's conquest of Kaskaskia and Vincennes one of the greatest events in American History? 15. Where is a monument erected to his memory? 16. Find on the map the places mentioned in the campaign.

Suggested Readings. GEORGE ROGERS CLARK: McMurry, *Pioneers of the Mississippi Valley*, 124-149; Blaisdell and Ball, *Hero Stories from American History*, 1-17; Eggleston, *Tecumseh and the Shawnee Prophet*, 41-51; Roosevelt, *The Winning of the West*, II. 31-85.

DEVELOPMENT OF THE NEW REPUBLIC

ELI WHITNEY, WHO INVENTED THE COTTON GIN AND CHANGED
THE HISTORY OF THE SOUTH

113. What a Boy's Love of Tools Led to. Before the Revolution there lived in a Massachusetts village a boy named Eli Whitney. His father had a farm, on which there was also a tool shop. This was the most wonderful place in the world to young Eli. Whenever he had a moment to spare, he was sure to be working away at his father's lathe or cabinet tools. At the age of twelve he made a good fiddle. After that people with broken fiddles came to him to have them mended. One day, while his father was in church, Eli got Mr. Whitney's fine watch and took it all apart. Other boys often try the same thing. But Eli succeeded in putting it together again, and it ran as smoothly as before. During the war he made quite a bit of money as a nailsmith. At college he helped pay his expenses by mending things and doing a carpenter's work.

Eli at
work
in his
father's
tool
shop

If Eli Whitney were living to-day he would surely have been an engineer. But there were no engineers in those days, and so he decided to teach school. He found a position in far-off Georgia, and took passage on a ship to Savannah. On board ship he learned to know the widow of the old war hero, General Nathanael Greene. She liked the young man for his friendly nature and his intelligence. He had a very pleasant voyage. Sad was his disappointment, however, when he arrived at Savannah! The people who had asked him to come had changed their minds, and he was left without a school.

Goes
to
Georgia
to teach
school

He was in a strange place, without money, and did not know what to do. Just then came an invitation from Mulberry Grove, where Mrs. Greene lived. He went gladly and was treated very kindly. He made many new friends. The men liked the interest

Invited
to
Mulberry
Grove

he took in their farms and their work. The children were his friends because he made for them wonderful toys of all sorts.

One day some visitors were talking with Mrs. Greene about cotton. This plant was little grown at that time. People knew that it had a fine soft fiber which could be made into excellent cloth. But the fiber had to be separated from the seed before it could be spun. In those days the seeds were taken out by hand, and even a skillful slave could clean only about a



ELI WHITNEY WORKING ON HIS COTTON GIN

pound a day. Think of working a whole day for a handful of cotton! Because of this difficulty, cotton was very expensive, more so even than wool or linen. Only well-to-do people could wear cotton clothes.

114. The Cotton Gin Invented. One of the visitors said that a machine ought to be invented which would clean the cotton. Mrs. Greene thought of Whitney. She had seen him make many wonderful things. She believed he could make such a machine, and asked him to try. He thought about it, and believed he could make iron fingers do the work that the fingers of the slaves had done.

Whitney got a basketful of cotton and fixed up a shop. Then he went to work patiently. He had a good deal of trouble, but he kept on. One day he called in Mrs. Greene and her overseer

Cotton
fiber
separated
from
seed
by
hand

Whitney
sets to
work

and proudly showed them his little machine, made of rollers and wires and brushes. Into this he poured the cotton just as it came from the field. When he turned a crank the soft, clean cotton came tumbling out of one side and the seeds out of another. This was the cotton gin, which in a few years was to change the entire life of the South.

Invents
cotton
gin

A few years before Whitney made the cotton gin a vessel came to Liverpool with cotton from the United States. The people in Liverpool were astonished. They did not know that cotton grew in America! As soon as Whitney began to sell his new machines, all the South became a great cotton field. In 1825, the year of Whitney's death, the South shipped abroad thirty-seven million dollars' worth of cotton, more than that of all other goods exported from this country! Before this time many planters had thought that slavery was unnecessary. But when Whitney's gin made cotton growing so profitable, they had to have many more laborers to work this new crop. Thousands of black slaves were imported to all parts of the South. The planters then believed they could not grow cotton without slaves, and it took a terrible war to settle the question.

More
slaves
brought
into
the
South

SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

The Leading Facts. 1. Eli Whitney was born in Massachusetts. 2. As a boy he was very much interested in tools, and worked in his father's shop with all kinds of mechanical contrivances. 3. He earned his way through college doing carpenter work. 4. After graduation he set out to teach in Savannah. 5. He failed to get the situation, and went to visit a friend who had taken much interest in him. 6. The South needed a machine to separate the cotton fiber from the seed. 7. Whitney set to work to make one, at the suggestion of his friend, Mrs. Greene. 8. The cotton gin revolutionized the South. 9. It made cotton raising the chief industry, and brought thousands of slaves into the country.

Study Questions. 1. What did Whitney like to do as a boy? 2. How did he help himself through college? 3. Why did he go to Savannah? 4. Whom did he meet on the way? 5. Describe how cotton was then separated from the seed. 6. Describe the action of the machine made by Whitney. 7. What was the effect of his invention? 8. How did the value of cotton shipped out of the country compare with other goods? 9. What effect did the invention have on negro slavery in the South?

Suggested Readings. ELI WHITNEY: Brooks, *The Story of Cotton*, 90-99; Southworth, *Builders of Our Country*, Vol. II, 108-116; Shillig, *The Four Wonders*, 1-32.

THOMAS JEFFERSON, WHO WROTE THE DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE, FOUNDED THE DEMOCRATIC PARTY, AND PURCHASED THE LOUISIANA TERRITORY

115. The Early Years of Jefferson. The author of the Declaration of Independence was born in 1743, near Charlottesville, Virginia. Like other Virginia boys, Thomas Jefferson lived on a large plantation, and spent much time in hunting, fishing, and horseback

riding. While yet a boy, and throughout his long life, Jefferson loved books and studied hard every subject that came before his mind.

At seventeen he rode away to Williamsburg to attend the College of William and Mary, the second oldest college in America.

Although Williamsburg was the capital of the largest and oldest of all the colonies, it had scarcely more than



WHERE JEFFERSON WENT TO SCHOOL BEFORE HE WENT TO WILLIAM AND MARY COLLEGE

Jefferson
born in
Virginia

A lover
of books
from
boyhood

Went to
William
and Mary
College

two hundred houses, and not more than a thousand people. But it was a wonderful town in Jefferson's eyes, although it had but one main street. The capitol stood at one end of the street and the college at the other. It was the first town he had ever seen.

At the opening of the House of Burgesses, Jefferson saw the best people in the Old Colony come pouring in. The planters came in fine coaches drawn by

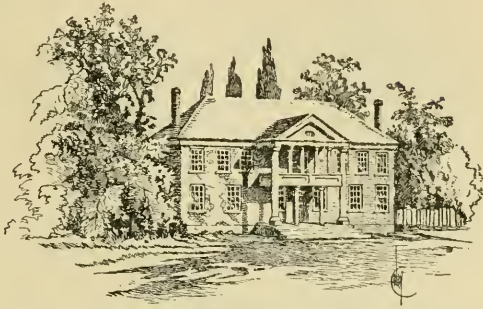
beautiful horses. The wives and daughters came to attend the governor's reception, and to enjoy meeting their old friends.

Jefferson became acquainted with the great men of his colony, and with many young men who were to be the future leaders in America. Here he met Patrick Henry, a student in a law office. Jefferson liked the fun-making Henry, and the two young men enjoyed many happy hours together, playing their violins.

After his graduation Jefferson remained in his old college town to study law in the office of one of Virginia's ablest lawyers. Henry often lodged in Jefferson's rooms when he came to attend the meetings of the Burgesses. When Henry made his stirring speech against the Stamp Act, Jefferson stood in the doorway of the House and listened spellbound to his friend's fiery eloquence.

In a few years Jefferson himself was honored with a seat in the House of Burgesses. He immediately took a leading part in opposing the tax on tea. The king's governor became angry and sent the members of the House of Burgesses home. But before

A wonderful
old town



THE OLD CAPITOL, WILLIAMSBURG
*Here Jefferson heard Patrick Henry make his
famous Cæsar-Charles First speech*

He knew
great
men

Studies
law

Hears
Patrick
Henry's
stirring
speech

Jefferson
a mem-
ber of the
House of
Bur-
gesses

they went, the bolder ones met and signed a paper which pledged the people of Virginia to buy no more goods from England.

The next important event in Jefferson's life was his falling in love, and his marriage to a young widow. She was beautiful in looks, winning in her manner, and rich in lands and slaves. Jefferson took his young wife to a handsome mansion which he had built on his great plantation. He called the home Monticello. Here these two Virginians, like Washington and his wife at Mount Vernon, spent many happy days.

Jefferson, with his wife's estate added to his own, was a very wealthy man. Together they owned at this time nearly one hundred thousand acres of land and three hundred slaves.

But stirring events took Jefferson away from the quiet life at Monticello. After his marriage, he went to the meeting of the Bur-

gesses, and there with other leaders formed a committee of correspondence. This committee wrote to the other colonies to get news of what the leaders were doing, and to tell them what the men in Virginia were planning to do. Each of the other colonies appointed committees of correspondence. They kept the news going back and forth as fast as rapid horsemen could carry it. These committees had a strong influence in uniting the colonies against England.

Marries
and be-
gins life
at Monti-
cello

A rich
man

Commit-
tee of
corre-
spond-
ence



JEFFERSON AND HIS WIFE AT MONTICELLO

116. Writes the Declaration of Independence. In 1775 the Burgesses chose Thomas Jefferson, Richard Henry Lee, and Benjamin Harrison as delegates to the Continental Congress in Philadelphia. In this Congress Richard Henry Lee made a motion declaring that the Thirteen Colonies were free and independent of Great Britain.



THE RALEIGH TAVERN, WILLIAMSBURG

When barred from the House of the Burgesses the committee of correspondence met in this tavern

In the
Conti-
nental
Congress

The Congress appointed Thomas Jefferson of Virginia, John Adams of Massachusetts, Benjamin Franklin of Pennsylvania, Roger Sherman of Connecticut, and Robert R. Livingston of New York, to draw up a Declaration of Independence.

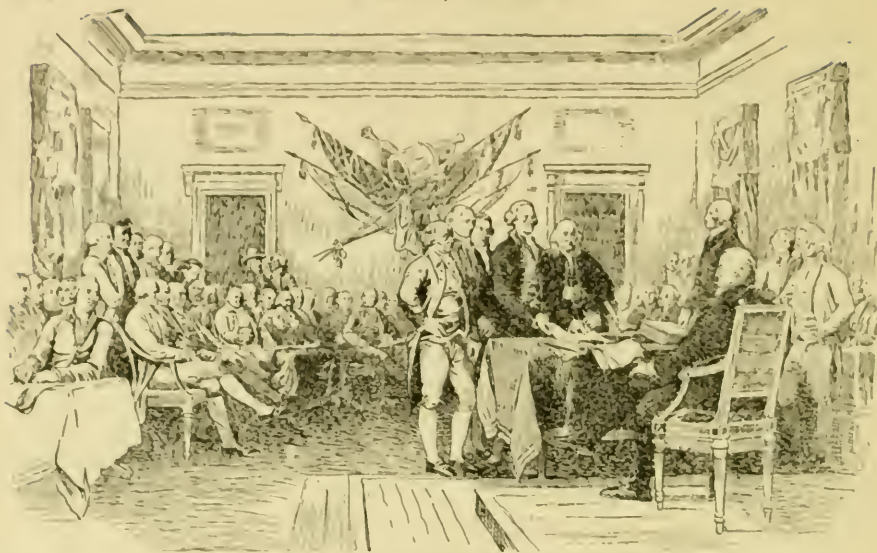
When these great men met to talk over the Declaration, the others urged Jefferson to do the writing, for he was able to put his thoughts on paper in plain, strong words. How important that the Declaration should be well written, and should contain powerful reasons for breaking away from England and setting up an independent government! A large number of people in America were opposed to separating from England. Besides, good reasons must be given to those brave Englishmen who, like Pitt and Burke, had been our defenders in Parliament.

When Jefferson showed what he had written, the others liked it so well only a few words were changed. Even after several days' debate in Congress, only a few more words were changed. Then it was signed by the members of the Congress and sent out for all the world to see why America was driven to fight for independence.

John Hancock, the president of the Congress, was the first to sign the Declaration, and he did so in large letters, saying that

Jefferson
writes
the Dec-
laration
of Inde-
pendence

The other
members
liked
what
Jefferson
wrote



SIGNING THE DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE

From the first historical painting of John Trumbull now in the rotunda of the Capitol at Washington

George III might read his name without spectacles. He also said: "We must all hang together in this matter." "Yes," replied Franklin, "we must all hang together, or we shall hang separately."

Jefferson returned to Virginia, and later became governor, on the resignation of Patrick Henry.

Minister
to
France

Helps
France
become a
Republic

After the war was over and England had taken her armies home, Congress sent Thomas Jefferson as minister to France (1785). The French people liked Jefferson very much, because, like Franklin, he was very democratic, and treated all men alike. The French people were just beginning to overthrow the power of their king, and plan a republic. Jefferson told them how happy the Americans were since they had broken away from George III.

After five years Jefferson returned home. When his negro slaves heard that he was coming back to Monticello they went

several miles to greet him. When the carriage reached home they carried him on their shoulders into the house. The slaves were happy, for Jefferson, like Washington, was a kind master, and hoped for the day to come when slavery would be no more.

Greeted
by his
slaves

Washington had just been elected the first President of the United States (1789), and was looking for a good man to be his adviser on questions about foreign nations. He chose Jefferson to do that work and gave him the office of Secretary of State.

First
Secretary of
State

Congress disputed and debated over the best ways of paying the Revolutionary War debt, and also over the question as to whether America should take sides with France in the great war between that country and England. The people also disputed over these questions, and formed themselves into two parties. One, the Democratic-Republican, was led by Thomas Jefferson, and the other, the Federalist party, was led by Alexander Hamilton.

Leader
of the
Demo-
cratic-
Repub-
lican
party

117. Jefferson President. In 1800 the people elected Jefferson

President. He was very popular because he was a friend of the poor as well as of the rich people. He declared that the new national government should in every way be plain and simple, instead of showy, like the governments of Europe.

Elected
President



JEFFERSON WELCOMED BACK TO MONTICELLO BY HIS NEGROES

Presidents Washington and Adams had had fine receptions, where people wore wigs, silver shoe buckles, and fine lace. When Jefferson became President he did away with all this show and style.

Jefferson also pleased the people by reducing the expenses of the government. He cut down the number of government clerks, soldiers in the army, and sailors in the navy. He spent just as little money as possible in running the government.

One of Jefferson's most important acts while President was the purchase of Louisiana. Thanks to George Rogers Clark and his brave men, England had been forced to give the United States the Mississippi as our western boundary.

In 1800 Napoleon, the great French general, forced Spain to give France all of the region then known as Loui-

siana, which extended from the Mississippi to the Rocky Mountains, and from Canada to the Gulf of Mexico. Spain, a weak country, had already refused to permit American boats to use the mouth of the Mississippi. What if Napoleon should send his victorious army to Louisiana and close the Mississippi entirely? Jefferson saw the danger at once, and sent James Monroe to Paris to help our minister, Robert R. Livingston, one of the signers of the Declaration of Independence, buy New Orleans and a strip of land on the east side of the Mississippi River near its mouth.



THOMAS JEFFERSON

From a painting by Rembrandt Peale, now in the possession of the New York Historical Society, New York City.

Reduces
expenses

Napoleon
forces
Spain to
give
France
Louisiana



THE UNITED STATES IN 1803, AFTER THE LOUISIANA PURCHASE

Napoleon was about to enter on a terrible war with England, and needed money badly. He was only too glad to sell all of Louisiana for fifteen million dollars (1803). This was more than Livingston was told to buy, but he and Monroe accepted it.

Sells
Louisiana
to
America

If you will count the number of great states which have been carved out of the "Louisiana Purchase," and look at the great cities and the number of towns which have grown up within "old Louisiana," you will understand why great honor is given to the men who purchased this vast region.

The
greatness
of the
purchase

In the very next year, Jefferson sent out an expedition under the command of Meriwether Lewis and William Clark to explore this vast country of Louisiana. With men, Indians, and boats they made their way slowly up the Missouri, across the mountains, and down the Columbia River to the Pacific coast.

The
Lewis
and Clark
expedi-
tion

Louisiana Purchase Exposition

The wonderful stories told by Lewis and Clark gave Americans their first real knowledge of parts of the Louisiana Purchase and of the Oregon region. In 1904, America, with the help of all the great nations of the world, celebrated at St Louis the buying of this region by holding the Louisiana Purchase Exposition.

President a second time

In 1804, Jefferson was elected President again by a greater majority than before. After serving a second term, he, like Washington, refused to be President for a third time. He retired to Monticello where he spent his last days pleasantly and where hundreds of friends from all parts of America and Europe came to consult him. The people called him the "Sage of Monticello."

Friends visit him at Monticello

Died July 4, 1826

Jefferson lived to see the first two great states, Louisiana and Missouri, carved out of the Louisiana Purchase. He died at Monticello, July 4, 1826. On the same day, at Quincy, Massachusetts, died his longtime friend, John Adams. These two patriots, one the writer, the other the defender of the Declaration of Independence, died just half a century after it was signed.

LEWIS AND CLARK, AMERICAN EXPLORERS IN THE OREGON COUNTRY

A vast unexplored country

118. Discovery of the Columbia River. The purchase of the Louisiana territory by Jefferson opened up a great new field for settlers. It was necessary to know something about the new territory. It was a vast unexplored country stretching from the Mississippi River to the Rockies. The Pacific shore had already been visited by explorers. Boston merchants had sent Captain Robert Gray to the Pacific coast to buy furs of the Indians. He did not try to find an overland route, but sailed around South America and up along the coast to Vancouver Island, where he obtained a rich cargo of furs. He then made his way across the Pacific to China, and came back to Boston by way of the Cape of Good Hope—the first American to carry the Stars and Stripes around the world.

Gray visits the Pacific

On a second voyage to the same region in the good ship, "Columbia," Gray discovered the mouth of a great river (1792). Up this river he went for nearly thirty miles, probably the first white man to sail upon its waters. Captain Gray named the river the Columbia after his vessel. The Indians had called it the Oregon.

Discovers
the
mouth
of the
Columbia

119. The Lewis and Clark Expedition.

The next important step in finding a route to the Oregon country was the great expedition undertaken while Thomas Jefferson was yet President.

Lewis and Clark were two young men chosen by Jefferson to explore the region known as the Louisiana Purchase and to make their way across the Rocky Mountains to the Oregon country and to the Pacific. They chose forty-two men to go with them—some as soldiers, others as servants, and still others as hunters. From the little French village of St. Louis they began their journey in boats in the spring of 1804.

Up the Missouri River they slowly made their way against the current of the muddy, rushing stream. At one time it was so swift that they could not force boats against it and at another time the brushwood that came down the river broke their oars.

Near where the city of Council Bluffs now stands, Lewis and Clark held a great meeting with the Indians. They told the Indians that the people of the United States and not the people of France were now the owners of this great land. Together they smoked the "pipe of peace" and the Indians promised to be friendly.



CAPTAIN MERIWETHER LEWIS
*From the original painting by
Charles Wilson Peale in Inde-
pendence Hall, Philadelphia*

Expedi-
tion
leaves
St. Louis

Smoked
the "pipe
of peace"

On they went till the region near the Black Hills was reached. It was the fall of the year and the trees were bright with color, and the wild duck and geese in large numbers were seen going southward.

The company spent the winter on an island sixteen hundred miles from St. Louis. The men built rude homes and fortified them. The Indians were friendly and the explorers spent many evenings around the wigwam fires listening to stories of the country the Indians had to tell them.

In the spring they bade the Indians good-by, passed the mouth of the Yellowstone, and traveled on till the Rocky Mountains with their long rows of snow-covered peaks came into view.

On the thirteenth day of June they beheld wonderful pictures of the "Falls of the Missouri." The water tore through a vast gorge a dozen miles or more in length.

120. The Way Over the Mountains. On they went until their boats could go no farther. They had reached rough and rugged hills and mountains. They climbed the heights as best they could. From now on the suffering was very great indeed.

One day Captain Lewis went ahead with three men to find Indian guides for the party. They climbed higher and higher until finally they came to a place where the Missouri River takes its rise. They went on and at last came to the western slope of the mountains, down which flowed a stream toward the Pacific.

Finally Captain Lewis came upon a company of Indian women

Spent the
winter
with the
Indians



CAPTAIN WILLIAM CLARK

*From the original painting by
Charles Wilson Peale in Inde-
pendence Hall, Philadelphia*

The
Rocky
Moun-
tains

The
source
of the
Missouri

who could not get away. They all bowed their heads as if expecting to be killed. They led the white men to a band of Indians who received them with all the signs of kindness they could show.

Now they all turned back to find Clark and his party. When they reached Clark the Indians smoked the "pipe of peace" and Lewis and Clark told the Indians why the United States had sent them out.

Indians
are
friendly

They were the first white men these Indians had ever seen. They looked the men over carefully and took a deep interest in their clothing, their food, and in their guns.

The mountains were now rough and barren and the streams ran through deep gorges. The explorers took an old Indian guide and crossed the Bitter Root Mountains into a valley of the same name. They followed an Indian trail over the mountains again and into the Clearwater. They suffered for want of food and on account of the cold. When they reached a tribe of the Nez Percé (Pierced Nose) Indians they ate so much they were all ill.

Explorers
suffer
from
hunger
and cold

121. On Waters Flowing Into the Pacific.

In five log boats, which they had dug out of trees, they glided down the Clearwater to where it meets the Snake River. They camped near the spot where now is the present town of Lewiston, Idaho. Then they embarked on the Snake River and floated down to where it joins the mighty Columbia.

They were among the Indians again, who had plenty of dried fish. Here is the home of the salmon, a fish found in astonishing numbers. The men had never seen so many fish before.



Reach
the
Columbia
River

STATUE OF SACAJAWEA
*This Indian woman, as
interpreter and guide,
was a great aid to the
exploring party*



LEWIS AND CLARK ON THEIR WAY DOWN SNAKE RIVER

Explorers
reach the
Pacific

The number of Indians increased as they went toward the Pacific. Finally the party of explorers passed through the Cascade Mountains and were once more on the smooth current of the Columbia. They soon beheld the blue waters of the Pacific.

During their five months' stay on the Pacific, Captain Clark made a map of the region they had gone through. They repaired their guns and made clothes of the skins of elk and of other game.

Lewis
and
Clark
travel
different
routes

The Indians told them of a shorter route to the Falls of the Missouri and Captain Lewis and nine men went by this route while Captain Clark with others retraced the old route. They saw nothing of each other for two months, when they all met again in August on the banks of the Missouri.

All
return to
St. Louis

They reached St. Louis September 23, 1806. The people of the United States were glad to hear of the safe return of the exploring party, for they had long thought the men were dead.

Both President Jefferson and Congress put great value upon the useful information that the expedition gathered. Congress rewarded every one connected with the expedition. Each man was granted double pay for the time he spent and three hundred acres of land. To Captain Lewis was given fifteen hundred acres and to Captain Clark a thousand acres. Lewis was appointed first Governor of Louisiana Territory and Clark was made Governor of Missouri Territory.

Reward-
ed by
Congress

Lewis
made
Governor
of Loui-
siana
Territory

122. Fur Traders and Missionaries Lead the Way. Soon after this expedition the fur traders pushed their way across the Rocky Mountains from St. Louis to the Pacific. They found the "gateway of the Rockies," called the South Pass, which opened the way to the Oregon country (1824).

After the fur traders came the missionary, Nathaniel Wyeth, a New Englander who led a party to the Columbia and established a post (1832). Five missionaries followed him and began to work among the Indians. Very soon Parker and Whitman went out to the Nez Percé Indians who came over the mountains to meet them near the headwaters of the Green River. Parker returned with the Indians and visited Walla Walla, Vancouver, and the Spokane and Colville regions. Whitman returned East, was married, and found a missionary, Spaulding, and his wife, and the party went out to the Oregon country to work among the Indians.

The com-
ing of
the mis-
sionaries

123. The Boundary Established. During this time fur traders from Canada and Great Britain were occupying the Oregon country as far as the Columbia River. The United States and Great Britain made a treaty by which they agreed to occupy the country together. This treaty lasted till settlers from the United States made it necessary to have a new treaty. In 1846 a new treaty was made and the present northern boundary was established.

The
treaty
of 1846

OLIVER HAZARD PERRY, VICTOR IN THE BATTLE OF
LAKE ERIE

124. A Young Man Who Captured a British Fleet. Perry was born in Rhode Island in 1785. He went to the best schools, and learned the science of navigation. At fourteen years of age he was a midshipman on his father's vessel, and before he was twenty-one he had served in a war against the Barbary pirates.

A Rhode
Islander

Perry
bitter
toward
the
British

Ready
for
battle



OLIVER HAZARD PERRY

*After an engraving by Edwin made
in 1813 from the Waldo picture*

Drives
the
"Law-
rence"
into the
British
fleet

When young Perry returned to his home, the British were seizing American sailors on American ships, claiming that they were British sailors. Perry was very bitter toward the British for these insults to his country, and when war was declared he was eager to fight. A fleet of vessels was being built on Lake Erie, and Perry was sent as commandant to take charge of their construction. He promptly set to work, and in a few weeks the ships were ready for battle.

He immediately set sail for Put-In-Bay, where the British fleet was stationed. There he arranged his ships for battle and raised a banner with the words "Don't give up the ship!" Driving his flagship, the "Lawrence," right in among the enemy's ships, he made them turn all their cannon against it. The loss of life was dreadful, but Perry kept cool. When the last gun of the "Lawrence" could no longer be fired, he ordered a boat to be lowered and with some brave men rowed through a storm of shot and shell to the "Niagara," another of Perry's large ships. Then he drove this ship

into the midst of the fight. In fifteen minutes, the two largest British ships struck their colors. The remainder of the fleet then surrendered.

This victory broke the British power in the West. Congress voted resolutions in praise of Perry and ordered a gold medal struck in his honor. Wherever he went the people paid him great attention and at his home he was given a royal welcome.

Broke
British
power
in the
West

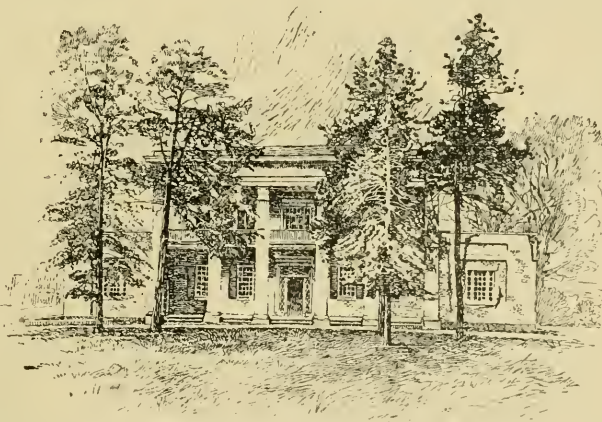
ANDREW JACKSON, THE VICTOR OF NEW ORLEANS

125. How a Poor Boy Began to Rise. Andrew Jackson was born of Scotch-Irish parents who had emigrated from Ireland to South Carolina. His father died and his mother moved to North Carolina to be among her own people. Here, a few days after his father's death, in the same year in which England passed the Tea Act (1767), Andrew was born.

Jackson
a Scotch-
Irishman

Schools were few and poor. In fact, Andrew was too poor himself to do anything but work. He learned far more from the pine woods in which he played than from books. At

nine he was a tall, slender, freckle-faced lad, fond of sports, and full of fun and mischief. But woe to the boy that made "Andy" angry.



Learns
from the
woods

THE HERMITAGE NEAR NASHVILLE

This historic house, the home of Andrew Jackson, is now owned by the state of Tennessee

When thirteen, he learned what war meant, for it was in the days of the Revolution when Colonel Tarleton came along and

Learns to
hate the
British



JACKSON REFUSES TO SHINE THE
OFFICER'S BOOTS

killed more than a hundred and wounded one hundred fifty of Jackson's neighbors and friends. Among the killed was one of the boy's own brothers. Andrew never forgave the British.

A prison-
er of war

At fourteen he was taken prisoner by the British. "Boy," said an officer, "clean these boots!" "I will not," replied Jackson. "I am a prisoner of war, and claim to be treated as such." The officer drew his sword

and struck Jackson a blow upon the head, and another upon the hand. These blows left scars which Jackson carried to his grave. He was taken a prisoner to Camden, where smallpox killed his remaining brother and left Andrew poor and sickly looking. His mother had come to Camden to nurse her sons. A little later she lost her life in caring for American prisoners on British ships in Charleston Harbor. Jackson was now an orphan of the Revolution.

Loses
his
mother

After the Revolutionary times had gone by, Jackson studied law and at the age of twenty was admitted to practice in the courts.

A lawyer
before
twenty

But stories of the beautiful country that were coming over the mountains from Tennessee, stirred his blood. He longed to go, and in company with nearly a hundred men, women, and children, Jackson set out for the goodly land.

They crossed the mountains into east Tennessee, where was the town of Jonesboro, not far from where Governor Sevier lived.

Jackson and the others rested awhile before taking up their

march to Nashville. From Jonesboro to Nashville, they had to look out for Indians. Only once were they troubled. One night, when men, women, and children were resting in their rude tents, Jackson sat at the foot of a tree smoking his corncob pipe. He heard "owls" hooting. These were Indian signals. "A little too natural," thought Jackson. He aroused the people, and silently they marched away. Another party, coming an hour or two later, stopped in the same place, and were massacred by Indians.

Follows
the
settlers
over the
mountains

Outwits
the
Indians

Arriving in Nashville, Jackson began the practice of law. To reach the court, he sometimes had to ride miles and miles, day after day, through thick forests, where the Indians might lie in wait.

Practicing law
on the
frontier

When Tennessee was made a territory, Jackson became district attorney. He had many "ups and downs" with the bad men of the frontier. Jackson himself had a bad temper, and woe to the man who made him angry. He either got a sound thrashing or had to fight a duel.

When Tennessee became a state, Jackson was elected to Congress. A year or so afterward (1797), he was appointed a United States Senator to fill a vacancy. But such a position did not give him excitement enough. He resigned the next year and returned to Nashville. He was a frontier judge for a time, then he became a man of business.

In
Congress

126. How Jackson Won a Great Victory. When the War of 1812 broke out there was a call to arms! The British will capture New Orleans! Twenty-five hundred frontiersmen rallied to Jackson's call. He was just the man to lead them. They decided to go to New Orleans by water.

A call to
arms

Down the Cumberland to the Ohio in boats! Down the Ohio to the Mississippi, and down the Mississippi to Natchez! Here they stopped, only to learn that there were no British near.

How he won the name "Old Hickory" The twenty-five hundred men marched the long, dreary way home. Jackson was the toughest one among them. He could march farther and last longer without food than any of them. The soldiers nicknamed him "Old Hickory."

Another call to arms Once more he was at home, where he now was a great man among his friends. About this time Jackson had a fierce fight with Thomas H. Benton and received a pistol shot in the shoulder. Before he got well the people who suffered from the Fort Mims massacre were calling loudly for help. Tecumseh had stirred up the Creeks to murder five hundred men, women, and children at this fort in Alabama.

Jackson and the hungry soldier



JACKSON SHARES HIS ACORNS WITH THE HUNGRY SOLDIER

Twenty-five hundred men answered Jackson's call. They marched south through a barren country. Food was scarce. His army, almost starved, threatened to go home. A half-starved soldier saw Jackson sitting under a tree and asked him for something to eat. Looking up Jackson said: "It has always been a rule with me never to turn away a hungry man. I will cheerfully divide with you." Then he drew from his pocket a few acorns, saying: "This is the best and only fare I have."

But Jackson soon received reinforcements, and then, in spite of all these drawbacks, he broke the power of the Creeks in the great battle of Horseshoe Bend on Tallapoosa River in Alabama. After that they were only too glad to sue for peace.

Jackson was hardly home again before President Madison made him a major-general, and sent him with an army to guard New Orleans from the British. **A third call to arms**

After attacking and capturing Pensacola, a Spanish fort which the English occupied, he hurried his army on to New Orleans. Nothing had been done to defend the city. Jackson immediately declared martial law. He



A BREASTWORK OF COTTON BALES

threw himself with all the energy he had into getting New Orleans ready, for the British troops were already landing.

The British general had twelve thousand veterans, fresh from their victory over the great Napoleon. Jackson had only half as many men. But nearly every man was a sharpshooter. They were riflemen from the wilds of Kentucky, Tennessee, and Mississippi, and every man was burning with a desire to fight.

The two armies

Jackson had not long to wait. On came the British in solid

column, with flags flying and drums beating. The fog was breaking away. Behind the breastworks stood the Americans with cannon loaded to the muzzle and with deadly rifles primed for the fight.

The beginning of the battle



A LITTLE BREASTWORK OF SUGAR BARRELS

The cannon were the first to fire, but the redcoats closed up their shattered ranks, and moved on. Those lines of red! How splendid and terrible they looked! The Americans gave three cheers.



THE BATTLE OF NEW ORLEANS

Won by Jackson after peace was made, this battle helped to make him President and to change history

"Fire!" rang out along the line. The breastworks were instantly a sheet of fire. Along the whole line it blazed and rolled. No human being could face that fire. The British soldiers broke and fled.

Once more they rallied, led by General Pakenham, a relative of the great Duke of Wellington. But who could withstand that fire? Pakenham was slain and again his troops fled. The battle was over. The British had lost two thousand six hundred men and the Americans only twenty-one! This victory was won after peace had been made between England and America. A ship was then hurrying to America with the glad news.

Everywhere the people rejoiced greatly over the victory of New Orleans. Jackson was a great hero, and wherever he went, crowds followed him, and cried out, "Long live the victor of New Orleans!"

The battle in earnest

The victory after the treaty

Jackson a hero

For several years, Jackson remained at the head of the army in the South. The Seminole War was fought, and those Indians were compelled to make peace.

127. The People's President. The people of the United States elected Jackson President in 1828, and reelected him in 1832 by a greater majority than before, showing that he was very popular. Elected President

President Jackson had a quarrel with the men who were managing the United States Bank. This bank kept the money for the government. He ordered that the money of the government be taken out of this bank and put in different State Banks which were called "pet" banks. In the Senate of the United States at this time were three men of giant-like ability—Henry Clay, Daniel Webster, and John C. Calhoun. They joined together to oppose President Jackson in his fight against the United States Bank. These men made many long and very bitter speeches against the President. Quarrels with the bank
Great men oppose Jackson

The senate finally passed a resolution blaming President Jackson for taking the money away from the United States Bank. President Jackson was furious. He wrote a protest and sent it to the Senate. The people in the states took sides and the excitement spread to all parts of the country.

In the Senate was another great man, Thomas H. Benton of Missouri. Although Jackson and Benton had once fought a terrible duel in Nashville, they now were good friends. Benton attacked Clay, Webster, and Calhoun in Jackson and Benton friends



THE SCENE OF JACKSON'S CAMPAIGNS

powerful speeches and defended President Jackson in every way he could. At last, after several years, he succeeded in getting the Senate to expunge, or take away, from their records the resolution blaming President Jackson.



ANDREW JACKSON

From a painting by Thomas Sully which hangs in the rooms of the Historical Society of Pennsylvania at Philadelphia

There was great rejoicing among Jackson's friends, and Senator Benton was the hero of the day. President Jackson gave a great dinner party in Washington in Benton's honor.

For a long time, South Carolina and other Southern states had been complaining about the high tariff which Congress had passed. In 1832 South Carolina declared in a state convention that her people should not pay the tariff any longer. She resolved to fight rather than

obey the law and pay the tariff. This was called nullification.

President Jackson was very angry when he heard of this act of South Carolina. He told General Scott to take soldiers and war vessels to Charleston, and enforce the law at all hazards. The President published a letter to the people of South Carolina, warning them not to nullify a law of Congress.

These acts made President Jackson very popular at the North, where the people all believed the President had saved the Union from breaking up.



THE TOMB OF ANDREW JACKSON

Nullifica-
tion

President
Jack-
son's
pro-
clama-
tion

Jackson
a Union
man

In 1837 his second term as president expired and he retired from public life after having seen his good friend, Martin Van Buren of New York, made President.

Jackson returned to Tennessee, greatly beloved by the people. There, in his home, called the Hermitage, he spent the rest of his life. He died in 1845, at the age of seventy-eight.

Death at
the Her-
mitage

SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

The Leading Facts. 1. Thomas Jefferson, born in Virginia, loved books; while in college he met Patrick Henry. 2. Went to the Burgesses and planned the Committees of Correspondence. 3. Jefferson was sent to the Congress of 1776 and wrote the Declaration of Independence. 4. After the war Jefferson was sent as Minister to France. 5. Washington chose him as Secretary of State, and he founded the Democratic-Republican Party. 6. Jefferson was popular as President. 7. He cut down expenses, and with his savings purchased Louisiana.

8. The Columbia River was discovered by Gray. 9. The way to the Oregon country was made known by Lewis and Clark and by missionaries. 10. The Indians received them with kindness along the route. 11. They followed the Columbia until they reached the Pacific. Clark made a map of the region they had gone through. 12. As a reward, Lewis was appointed Governor of the Louisiana Territory and Clark of the Missouri Territory.

13. Perry went to serve against the pirates, was eager to fight the English when war broke out, and was appointed commandant at Lake Erie. 14. Perry built a fleet and won a famous victory over the English. 15. A gold medal was struck in his honor by Congress.

16. Andrew Jackson was born of poor parents; learned from the woods more than from books. 17. Jackson was captured by the British. 18. His mother died nursing American soldiers. 19. He studied law, went over the mountains to Nashville, and was elected to Congress. 20. He also served as United States Senator. 21. Jackson defeated the Indians, captured Pensacola, and won a brilliant victory at New Orleans. 22. Jackson was elected President and was opposed in his policy by Clay, Webster, and Calhoun. 23. Threatened South Carolina over nullification. 24. Died at the Hermitage in 1845.

Study Questions. 1. Name some things boys did on a Virginia plantation in Jefferson's time. 2. Name some of Virginia's great men whom Jefferson knew. 3. Explain how the "Committees of Correspond-

ence" worked. 4. Who were the men appointed to make a Declaration of Independence? 5. Why did Jefferson write the Declaration? 6. Why did French people like Jefferson? 7. Picture Jefferson's return home. 8. How was Jefferson fitted for Secretary of State? 9. What were the people then disputing about, and who were their leaders? 10. Why did Jefferson want the Government to be plain and simple? 11. Who wanted it different? 12. Tell the story of the buying of Louisiana. 13. Why did Americans think the buying a great event? 14. Why did Jefferson not become President a third time? 15. What of the friendship of John Adams and Thomas Jefferson? 16. Describe the trip of Lewis and Clark up the Missouri River. 17. How did the Indians on the way receive them? 18. How did they return home? 19. What offices were given Lewis and Clark?

20. What important command was given to Perry? 21. Tell what he did when his ships were ready for the "Battle of Lake Erie." 22. Picture the battle. 23. What honors were given to Perry?

24. Where was Andrew Jackson born? 25. Name some other boys who learned more from the woods than from books. 26. Mention some early experiences Jackson had with the British soldiers. 27. What other experiences did he have in the war? 28. What led him to go to Nashville? 29. Explain how Jackson outwitted the Indians. 30. What did he do as a young lawyer? 31. Tell the story of Jackson's first call to arms. 32. Give a full account of Jackson's second call to arms. 33. Imagine yourself one of Jackson's soldiers, and tell what you saw and heard at the battle of New Orleans. 34. Give an account of Jackson's fight against the United States Bank. 35. Who was Thomas H. Benton, and why did he defend President Jackson? 36. What action did South Carolina take in 1832, and what did the President do? 37. Where did Jackson live after his last term as President?

Suggested Readings. JEFFERSON: Wright, *Children's Stories of American Progress*, 55-85; Cooke, *Stories of the Old Dominion*, 180-192; Hart, *How Our Grandfathers Lived*, 317-320; Butterworth *In the Days of Jefferson*, 32-168, 175-206, 216-264.

PERRY: Beebe, *Four American Naval Heroes*, 71-130; Wright, *Children's Stories of American Progress*, 130-144; Hart, *How Our Grandfathers Lived*, 241-242, 248-249; Glascock, *Stories of Columbia*, 172-174.

JACKSON: Brooks, *Century Book of Famous Americans*, 162-172; Blaisdell and Ball, *Hero Stories from American History*, 185-198; Hart, *How Our Grandfathers Lived*, 284-291; Barton, *Four American Patriots*, 133-192; Frost, *Old Hickory*.

THE MEN WHO MADE THE NATION GREAT BY THEIR INVENTIONS AND DISCOVERIES

ROBERT FULTON, THE INVENTOR OF THE STEAMBOAT

128. The Invention of the Steamboat. Once there were no steam engines to drive boats. On sea and river they were driven by wind, and on canals they were pulled along by horses.

How
boats
were
driven

James Rumsey on the Potomac, John Fitch on the Delaware, and William Longstreet on the Savannah, had each invented and tried some kind of steamboat, before Robert Fulton.

Inventors
before
Fulton

Fulton was born of Irish parents, in New Britain, Pennsylvania, in 1765. At the age of three he lost his father. Young Fulton had a great taste for drawing, painting, and inventing.

Early
taste for
drawing
and in-
vention

He went to Philadelphia, then the largest city in the Union, when he was twenty, and engaged in painting and drawing. His first savings were given to his widowed mother to make her comfortable.



ROBERT FULTON

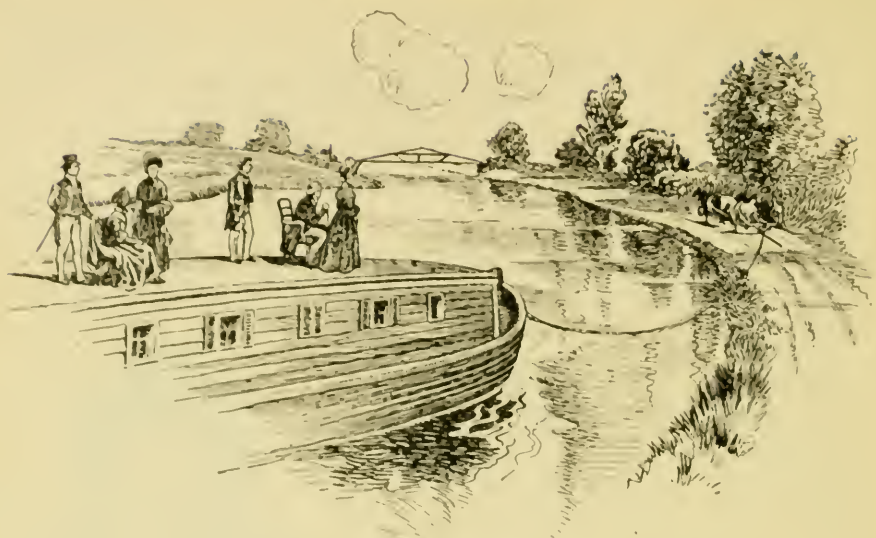
Fulton finally decided to be an artist, *After the painting by Benjamin West* and went to England to make his home with Benjamin West, a great painter who once lived at Philadelphia.

Studied
under
Ben-
jamin
West

There he became acquainted with the Duke of Bridgewater, who influenced him to become a civil engineer. Fulton now met James Watt, who was the inventor of the steam engine. At one time the young man aided Watt in building an engine.

Influ-
enced to be-
come an
engineer

Fulton next went to France, where he became interested in plans for inventing diving boats, torpedoes, and steamboats. Here



SCENE ON A CANAL

Meets
Living-
ston in
France

he met Robert R. Livingston, a signer of the Declaration of Independence, then United States Minister to France. Livingston took deep interest in his experiments in driving boats by steam, and furnished him the means to make them.

Fulton's
trial
boats

Fulton made a "model" boat, which he left in France. Shortly afterward, he built a boat twenty-six feet long and eight feet wide. In this vessel he put a steam engine. The trials proved beyond a doubt that steamboats could be made.

Twenty
years'
rights

Livingston believed in Fulton and his steamboat. When he returned to New York, Livingston obtained from the legislature the right to navigate the waters of the state by steam for twenty years. The one condition was that the boat should go against the current of the Hudson at the rate of four miles an hour.

Gets en-
gine in
England

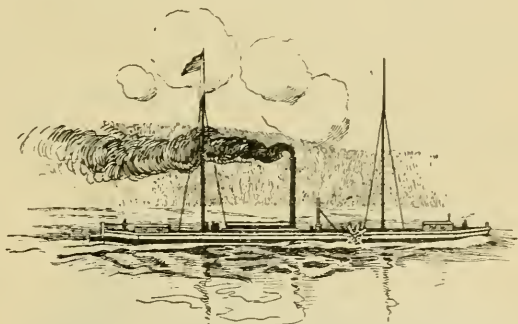
Fulton got his engine from the inventors, Watt and Boulton, in England—the only place where suitable engines could be found.

The engine came in 1806. A boat called the "Clermont" was built to carry it. She was one hundred thirty feet long and eighteen feet wide. She had a mast with a sail. At both ends she was decked over, and in the middle the engine was placed. Two large side-wheels dipped two feet into the water.

The
"Cler-
mont"

129. The "Clermont" Moves. At one o'clock in the afternoon of August 7, 1807, a great crowd gathered to see the first voyage of the "Clermont." Many people did not expect to see the vessel go. They believed Fulton and Livingston had spent their money for nothing. Fulton gave his signal from the deck of the "Clermont." The people looked on in astonishment as the boat moved steadily up the pathway of the Hudson.

The "Clermont" kept on going till out of sight, and the crowds of wondering people went home hardly believing the evidence of their eyes. Up



THE "CLERMONT"

A great
victory
for
Fulton
and Liv-
ingston

the river, against the current of the mighty Hudson, she made her way till Albany was reached. She had gone one hundred fifty miles in thirty-two hours, and won a great victory for Fulton and Livingston.

When winter came the "Clermont" was taken out of the water and rebuilt. They covered her from stem to stern with a deck. Under the deck they built two cabins, with a double row of berths. Everything was done to make her attractive in the eyes of the people. They changed her name to the "North River." In the spring she made her trips regularly up and down the Hudson.

Name
of boat
changed
to "North
River"

Steam-boats appear on different rivers

130. Steamboats On All the Rivers. In 1809, a steamboat was built on Lake Champlain, another on the Raritan, and a third on the Delaware. From this time forward, steamboats began to appear on all the great rivers in the settled portions of the United States.

People along the Ohio frightened

In 1811, a steamboat was built on the Ohio River at Pittsburg. It started on its trip down the beautiful Ohio. People gathered on the banks of the river to see it go by. The steamboat, at first, made a frightful noise. Hence when it came to places where news traveled slowly, the people were sometimes frightened, and the negroes ran crying into the woods.

A steam-boat helped Jackson

In 1814 a steamboat carried supplies to General Jackson at New Orleans, and helped him to win the great battle fought there.

Seven steamboats were running on the Ohio and the Mississippi at the close of the War of 1812. Before another year went by, a steamboat had made its way from New Orleans against the currents of the Mississippi and the Ohio rivers to Louisville, laden with goods from Europe.



WATCHING THE "CLERMONT" ON ITS FIRST VOYAGE UP THE HUDSON

Robert Fulton dies 1815

Robert Fulton died in 1815, deeply mourned by all his countrymen, and was buried in Trinity churchyard, New York City.

The steamboat had now won a place on the American rivers. It aided in the rapid settlement of the country. It made travel quick and easy, and it carried the goods of settlers up and down the rivers.

131. The Erie Canal. Before Fulton invented the steamboat, supplies had been carried to the western settlers over the mountains from the East. Now, however, steamboats puffed up the Mississippi from New Orleans loaded down with goods that had been brought all the way from Europe. The settlers could get as much as they wanted and at a much lower cost. For this reason the merchants of New York and the East were losing all their trade with the settlers. They saw that they must have some connection with the West by water, and so they planned the Erie Canal. It took seven years to dig. When it was finished it was three hundred sixty-three miles long, forty feet wide, and four feet deep. The depth was later increased to seven feet. It stretched straight across the state of New York from Lake Erie to the Hudson River.

Steamboats carry goods up the Mississippi

Erie canal across New York

In the autumn of 1825, when the canal was finished, there was a great celebration. A "fleet" of canal boats carried Governor Clinton of New York and a number of other distinguished men across the state.

The merchants of the East were no longer afraid of the Mississippi route. They had a route of their own. The canal became the great highway of commerce from the East to the West and from the West to the East. New York recovered her trade, and flourishing cities grew up along the canal.

New York recovered her trade

But there were cities in the East that could not use the canal. Farther south they could not dig a canal across the mountains. All their goods had to be carried over the Cumberland Gap on the backs of horses. But a new means of travel and transportation had been invented, which was to far surpass the steamboat and which was to help every city no matter where located.

The first railroad

132. Railroad Building. The first railroad in America was a very rude affair. There were no "palace cars" nor steel rails, nor

did the trains run at a speed of sixty miles an hour. Instead, cars that looked like huge wagons ran on wooden rails and were dragged along by horses.

Steven-
son's
"Puffing
Billy"

But George Stephenson had thought out a plan for a machine that would pull the cars along by steam. He called his engine "Puffing Billy." He kept at work always improving it. In 1825, after eleven years of work, he made an engine that could pull both passengers and freight.

The
first
long
railroad

In 1828 the first long railroad in America was started. A great ceremony took place. It was a very solemn occasion. Charles Carroll, the only living signer of the Declaration of Independence, drove the first spade into the ground where the first rail was to be laid. As he did so he said, "I consider this among the most important acts of my life, second only to that of signing the Declaration of Independence." This railroad was the famous Baltimore & Ohio.

Inventors continued to improve the locomotive. In 1831 an American company built one which ran at the rate of fifteen miles an hour. At that time it was considered a very rapid rate.

By
rail
from
Boston
to
Buffalo

Since then railroad building and transportation has improved wonderfully. By 1842 one could travel by rail from Boston to Buffalo. But it was not until ten years later that Chicago was connected by rail with the East.

To the
Pacific
coast

Gradually the railroads spread a network over the country. In 1857, St. Louis and Chicago were connected. A railroad to the Pacific Coast was much needed, and Congress voted an appropriation of \$50,000,000 for the work. By 1869, the great work was completed. Other lines to the coast were started, and to-day five railroads cross the mountains, connecting the Pacific with the North, South, and Atlantic regions.

SAMUEL F. B. MORSE, INVENTOR OF THE TELEGRAPH

133. The Coming of the Telegraph. Samuel Morse was born in Massachusetts (1791). His father was a Presbyterian minister. Morse 1791
Young Morse went to the common schools and to Yale College.

In college he used his spare time in painting and, after graduation, he went to England and studied under the best artists. He came home and for a time painted portraits for a living.

After having spent some years abroad, in work and study, Morse was again returning home from France when the idea of sending news by electricity first came to him.

"Why can't it be?"

said Morse to a friend, who answered, "There is great need of sending news by electricity." He began, then and there, to plan a machine and to invent an alphabet. This was all done on ship-board. When he reached land he went to work with a will at his new-found problem.

For a long time the work went on very slowly, for inventors must eat and sleep and pay their way in the world. While Morse was struggling over his machine and trying to make himself master of the strange force called electricity, he was very often hungry and at times even on the point of starvation.



MORSE WORKING AT HIS MACHINE

Paints portraits

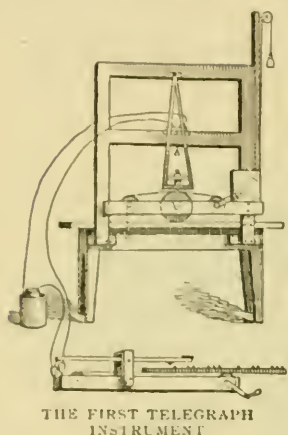
The idea came to him of sending news by electricity

A machine came to him and an alphabet

The hungry inventor

Alfred
Vail

Now came a bright spot in his career. A young man named Alfred Vail, an excellent mechanic, saw Morse's telegraph instruments, and immediately believed they would be successful. Young Vail borrowed money and became Morse's assistant in the great work. For what he did he deserves credit next to Morse himself.



Getting
ready for
Congress

Behind
locked
doors

A patent must now be had and the telegraph must be so improved that they could show it to a committee of Congress. It was arranged that Vail and a mechanic by the name of Baxter should do the work behind locked doors. For, if some one should happen to see the instruments and obtain a patent first, then Morse and Vail would be ruined.

The dot
and dash
alphabet

In the locked shop the two men worked steadily day after day. Vail made many improvements. Among these was the new "dot and dash" alphabet. At last, one day in January, 1838, everything was in complete working order. Baxter, hatless and coatless, ran for Mr. Vail's father to come at once and see the telegraph work.

At one end of the wire stood young Vail, and at the other stood Morse. This wire was stretched around the room so that it was three miles in length. The elder Vail wrote: "A patient waiter is no loser." He said to his son: "If you can send this message, and Mr. Morse can read it at the other end,



MORSE SHOWING HIS COMPLETED WORK

The
final
test

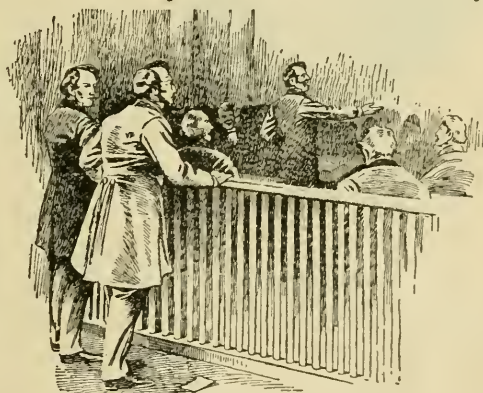
I shall be convinced." It was done, and there was great rejoicing. The invention was hurried to Washington and young Vail took out a patent in the name of Morse.

Patented
in
Morse's
name

Morse obtained permission to set up his telegraphic instruments in rooms in the capitol. These rooms were filled with congressmen watching the strange business. Members in one room would carry on witty conversations with persons in the other room. This was great fun for those looking on. But it was slow work talking with members of Congress and winning their help.

Congressmen
watch
the in-
stru-
ments

134. The Government Aids. Finally Morse asked for thirty thousand dollars to build a line from Washington to Baltimore. The bill met opposition, one member moving that a part of the money be used in building a railroad to the moon, another that it be used in making experiments in mesmerism.



MORSE LISTENING TO CONGRESS MAKING
FUN OF HIS INVENTION

Congress
makes
fun of
the idea

Morse stood leaning against the railing which separated the members from the outsiders. He was greatly excited, and turning to a friend said: "I have spent seven years and all that I have in making this instrument perfect. If it succeeds, I am a made man. If it fails, I am ruined. I have a large family, and not money enough to pay my board bill when I leave the city."

Morse
ruined if
the bill
does not
pass

It was ten o'clock, March 3, 1843, the last night of that Congress. Morse gave up and went to his hotel. In the morning a friend met and congratulated him on the action of Congress in

Gives up
in de-
spair

Tele-
graph
line to
Balti-
more
built

The first
message

Honors
heaped
on the
inventor

Morse
dies 1872

The tele-
phone

Marconi
beats
them all

granting thirty thousand dollars for his telegraph line—the last thing Congress did that night. Morse was surprised. The telegraph line to Baltimore was built and the first dispatch was ready to send. Morse called the young woman who had been the first to congratulate him, to send this first message: "What hath God wrought."



SAMUEL F. B. MORSE

*From a photograph taken by
Abraham Bogardus, New
York City*

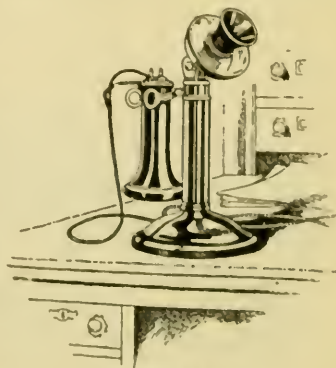
The success of Morse was slow at first, but he lived to see the day when his instrument was used in Europe. He visited Europe again, was given gold medals, and received other rewards and honors from many of the rulers of the different European countries.

He died in 1872 at the good old age of eighty-one. Congress and state legislatures paid tribute to his memory.

135. A Wider Use for Electricity. Morse was hardly in his grave before a wonderful invention was made which called electricity into far wider use in carrying news. This new invention was the telephone, and two men, Bell and Gray, applied for patents on it at almost the same time.

The instruments are wonderful conductors of sound, carrying, as they do, the actual words and tones of the voice.

But Marconi has gone beyond them all in his invention. He sends the electric wave forth without the aid of a wire, thus giving rise to wireless telegraphy.



THE TELEPHONE

CYRUS WEST FIELD, WHO LAID THE ATLANTIC CABLE BETWEEN
AMERICA AND EUROPE

136. The Atlantic Cable. Cyrus W. Field was born in Massachusetts in 1819. His grandfather was a Revolutionary soldier. Cyrus went to school in his native town of Stockbridge, and at fifteen was given a place in a New York store at fifty dollars a year. Before he was twenty-one, he went into business for himself. At the end of a dozen years, he was the head of a prosperous firm. In 1853, he retired from active business.

Cyrus W.
Field
1819



PRESIDENT PIERCE SIGNING THE
FIELD BILL

In busi-
ness for
himself

Field became interested in a man who was joining Newfoundland with the mainland by means of a telegraph line. "Why not make a telegraph line to span the Atlantic?" thought Field. He went to work, and put his schemes before Peter Cooper and other generous men. They believed in them.

Why not
span the
Atlantic?

Field next went abroad and laid his plan before a number of Englishmen. He pleaded so eloquently that they, too, were convinced. He returned to America to lay the matter before Congress and ask that body to vote him a sum of money.

English-
men also
approve
the plan

Congress was very slow about it, and the bill did not pass until the last days of that session. President Pierce signed it the last day of his term as President.

President
Pierce
signs the
bill

Field returned to England and watched over the making of his "Cable." In August, 1857, everything was ready. The cable lay coiled on shipboard, ready to be let out in the Atlantic. The great ship started, and everything went well till three hundred thirty-five miles of the cable had been let out, when it broke in two. It was the same as losing half a million dollars.

Half a
million
dollars
gone

A second
trial

Field went back to England and began promptly to prepare for a second trial. He then came to America and made arrange-



LAYING THE FIRST ATLANTIC CABLE

ments to use the "Niagara," a large vessel. The British ship, "Agamemnon," was also taken to help in this second trial. The ships started in mid-ocean, one

Breaks
again

going one way and one going the other way. This time only one hundred eleven miles were laid, when the cable again parted.

A council
of war

Field hastened to London to meet the men who had backed him in his undertaking with their money. It was a council of war after a terrible defeat! But Mr. Field did not believe in surrender, even to the sea.

Success

On the seventeenth of July, 1858, the ships again set sail for mid-ocean. They "spliced" the cable, and the "Niagara" with Mr. Field on board sailed away for Newfoundland. The British ship went the other way. This time they were successful. Both countries were excited. Queen Victoria flashed a message under the sea to President Buchanan.

A great
day in
New
York

Great was the rejoicing in New York, the home of Mr. Field. A religious service, expressive of the deep interest of the people in the success of his work, was held in Trinity Church, at which two hundred clergymen in gowns appeared; national salutes were fired, a great procession was formed, an address was made by the mayor of the city and, at a very late hour, a grand banquet was held. While the banquet was going on, the cable gave its last throb and parted.

The very day that a whole city rose up to do honor to the Atlantic telegraph and its author, it gave its last flash and then went to sleep forever in its ocean grave.

The cable parts the third time

After five years of slow and toilsome work, caused by the fact that the Civil War was raging in the United States, Cyrus W. Field was again ready. When the vessel, bearing the cable, was within six hundred miles of land, the cable broke again.

After a wait of five years

137. The Final Success. An Anglo-American Telegraph Company was now formed. Mr. Field subscribed \$50,000, Daniel Gooch, \$100,000, and another person promised to bear a part of the expense. On Friday they set out and on another Friday they reached America with the cable safely laid. Mr. Field sent this message to England:

The money subscribed

"Hearts Content, July 27, 1866. We arrived here at nine o'clock this morning. All well. Thank God, the cable is laid, and is in perfect working order."

"Hearts Content"



CYRUS W. FIELD

From a photograph by Elliott and Fry, London

The success of this undertaking, after so many years of failure, produced a great effect throughout the civilized world. Mr. Field was the center of all rejoicing. Congress voted him a gold medal. England did honor to his name. The Paris Exposition of 1867 gave him the highest medal it had to bestow. From Italy he received a decoration. States and chambers of commerce in all parts of the nation passed resolutions in praise of his great work.

Effect on the civilized world

Great honor for Mr. Field

Finally he took a trip around the world and received honors from many nations. Mr. Field lived at Tarrytown, New York. He died in New York City in 1892, at the age of seventy-three.

New York 1892

THOMAS A. EDISON, THE GREATEST INVENTOR OF ELECTRICAL
MACHINERY IN THE WORLD

138. **The Wizard of the Electrical World.** Thomas A. Edison was born in 1847 at Milan, Ohio. His father's people were Dutch and his mother's were Scotch. When he was seven years of age, his parents removed to Port Huron, Michigan.

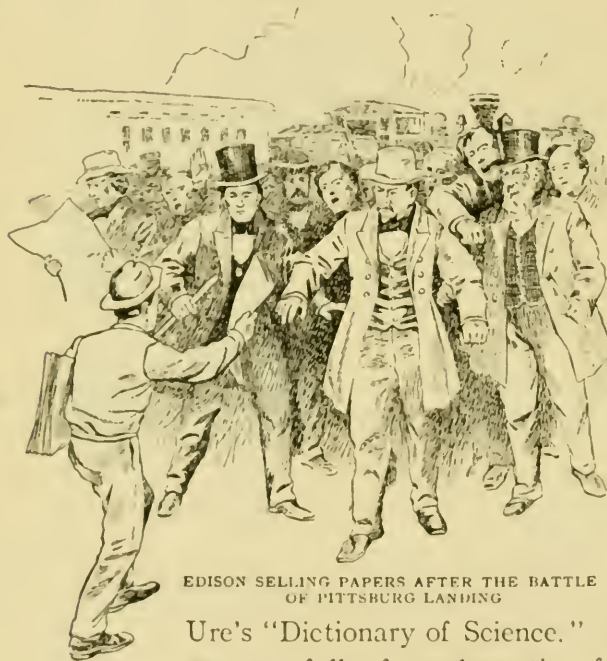
Edison owed his early training to his mother's care. At the age of twelve he was reading such books as Gibbon's "Decline and Fall of the Roman Empire," Hume's "History of England," Newton's "Principia," and

EDISON SELLING PAPERS AFTER THE BATTLE
OF PITTSBURG LANDING

Ure's "Dictionary of Science." The last-named book was too full of mathematics for him.

That Edison was a great reader is proved by his resolution to read all the books in the Detroit Free Library! He did finish "fifteen feet of volumes" before any one knew what he was doing.

In 1862 General Grant fought the terrible battle of Pittsburg Landing. Everybody wanted to hear the news. Edison bought a thousand newspapers, boarded a train, and the engineer allowed him a few minutes at each station to sell papers.



His
parent-
age

A tireless
reader

As the first station came in sight, Edison looked ahead and saw a wild crowd of men. He grabbed an armful of papers, rushed out, and sold forty before the train left. At the next station the platform was crowded with a yelling mob. He raised the price to ten cents, but sold one hundred fifty.

His experience as a news-boy

Finally he reached Port Huron. The station was a mile from town. Edison seized his papers. He met the crowd coming just as he reached a church where a prayer meeting was being held. The prayer meeting broke up, and though he raised his price to twenty-five cents, he "took in a young fortune."

Edison began very early to make experiments in electricity. After rigging up a line at home, hitching the wire to the legs of a cat, and rubbing the cat's back vigorously, he saw the failure of his first experiment—the cat would not stand!

Experimenting in electricity

At Mt. Clemens, one day, young Edison saw a child playing on the railroad with its back to an on-coming freight car. He dashed at the child and both tumbled to the ground at the roadside. For this act of bravery the telegraph operator gave him lessons in telegraphy.

Saves a life and receives lessons in telegraphy

139. Begins to Study Electricity. He studied ten days, then disappeared. He returned with a complete set of telegraphic instruments made by his own hand! After his trade was learned he began a period of wandering as a telegraph operator. For many boys still in their teens this would have been a time of destruction, but Edison neither drank nor smoked. He wandered from Adrian to Fort Wayne, Indianapolis, Cincinnati, Memphis, and Boston, stopping for shorter or longer periods at each place.

Makes a set of telegraphic instruments

Becomes a tramp telegrapher

By the time he was twenty-two he had invented and partly finished his plan of sending two dispatches along the same wire at the same time. This was equal to doubling the number of wires in use.

Edison was a poor boy and was two or three hundred dollars in debt. He went from Boston to New York. The speculators in Wall Street were wild with excitement, for the electric machinery had broken down. Nobody could make it work. Edison pushed his way to the front, saw, and at once removed, the difficulty.

Repairs
electric
machin-
ery and
gains a
situation

All were loud in their praise of Edison. On the next day he was engaged to take charge of all the electric machinery at three hundred dollars per month.

After a time he joined a company and gave his time to working out inventions. The company finally sent a number of men to ask Edison how much he would take for his inventions. He had already decided to say five thousand. But when the men came he said that he did not know. He was dumbfounded when they offered him forty thousand dollars!

Receives
forty
thousand
dollars
for his in-
ventions



THOMAS ALVA EDISON
After a photograph from life

Estab-
lishes
his first
work-
shop

140. Edison's Inventions. In 1873, Edison established his first laboratory or workshop in Newark, New Jersey. Here he gathered more than

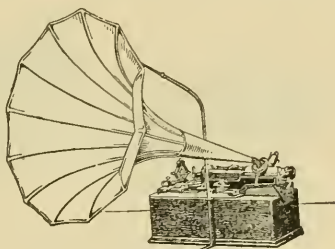
three hundred men to turn out the inventions pertaining to electricity which his busy brain suggested. They were all as enthusiastic over the inventions as Edison himself. No fixed hours of labor in this shop! When the day's work was done the men often begged to be allowed to return to the shop to complete their work.

More
inven-
tions

Many telegraph and telephone inventions were made in this laboratory. There were forty-five inventions all told. They brought in so much money that Edison decided they must have

a better place to work. He built at Menlo Park, New Jersey, twenty-four miles from New York City, the finest laboratory then in the world. On instruments alone he spent \$100,000. In the great laboratory at Menlo Park Edison gathered one of the finest scientific libraries that money could buy. This library was for the men in the factory—to help them in their inventions and to give them pleasure.

Builds a new laboratory and gathers a fine library



THE PHONOGRAPH

The microphone is one of Edison's inventions. Its purpose is to increase sound while sending it over the wire. The passing of a delicate camel's-hair brush is magnified so as to seem like the roar of a mighty wind in a forest of giant pines.

Invents the microphone

Next came the megaphone, an instrument to bring far-away sounds to one's hearing. Persons talking a long distance apart are able to hear each other with ease.

The megaphone

The most interesting and one of the most profitable of his discoveries is the phonograph. This instrument, now to be seen everywhere, simply records sounds just as they are. The human voice is reproduced in conversation, in public speaking, and in singing. It goes further and reproduces the music of the grandest orchestras.

The phonograph

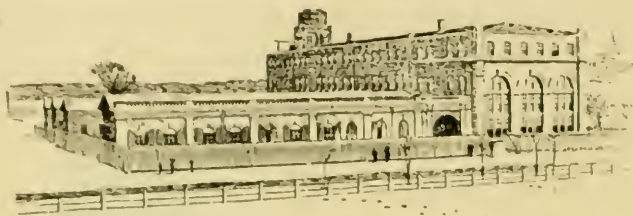
From the phonograph to the electric light seems a long step. Edison does not claim to be the discoverer of the electric light. He did much, however, to make it useful to people in lighting their houses, and also in lighting great cities.

Develops the electric light

In the winter of 1880, in Menlo Park, Edison gave to the public an exhibition of his electric light. Visitors came from all parts of the country to see this wonderful show. Seven hundred lights were put up in the streets, in the grounds, and inside the buildings. Special trains had to be run between Jersey City and Menlo Park.

Exhibition in Menlo Park

Receives
medals
and
diplomas
from
foreign
exposi-
tions



EDISON'S GREAT WORKSHOP AT ORANGE, NEW JERSEY

Edison received five gold medals and a diploma from the Electrical Exposition held in Paris, France. At the English Electrical Exposition held the next year at the Crystal Palace, London, both papers and people were loud in their praise of Edison's inventions.

In Munich, Germany, in 1882, and in Vienna, Austria, his exhibitions of the wonders of electric lighting won the highest praise.

His
greatest
labora-
tory

The laboratories at Menlo Park were now far too small for the business that this man of genius set in motion. In 1886, at Orange, New Jersey, Edison built the greatest of all his laboratories. Nothing was spared to make this new workshop complete.

SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

The Leading Facts. 1. Rumsey, Fitch, and Longstreet were inventors of steamboats before Fulton. 2. Fulton went to England to study art and became interested in steam engines. 3. He invented the "Clermont," which ran more than four miles an hour. 4. The Erie Canal was built because steamboats on the Mississippi were taking all the trade with western settlers away from New York. 5. The locomotive was invented by George Stephenson, and railroads were built to connect all parts of the country. 6. Samuel Morse went to Yale College; studied painting in England. 7. He planned a telegraph instrument on shipboard, and afterwards Vail helped him perfect it. 8. Morse took his telegraph to Washington, showed it to Congress, and received a grant of money. 9. Bell and Gray invented the telephone; Marconi invented wireless telegraphy. 10. Cyrus West Field made money so fast that he retired at thirty-four. 11. He became interested in a cable, and after many failures succeeded in laying a permanent one across the Atlantic in 1866. 12. Edison was a great reader at twelve, and a newsboy at fifteen. 13. He learned telegraphy, and made a set of telegraphic instruments of his

own. 14. Edison saved the day in Wall Street; made a reputation and plenty of money. 15. He built several laboratories in New Jersey, and has made many great inventions.

Study Questions. 1. What were the early ways of driving boats? 2. Who invented boats on American rivers before Fulton? 3. Tell the story of Robert Fulton until 1803. 4. How fast was Fulton's first boat to go against the current? 5. Where did Fulton get the engine for the "Clermont"? 6. Picture the "starting" and the after history of the "Clermont." 7. Tell the story of the spread of the steamboat, and how and why the Erie Canal was built. 8. Tell the story of the railroad.

9. Tell of Morse's early life. 10. When did the idea of sending news by electricity first come to him? 11. Tell the story of his early trials. 12. Who aided him? 13. Picture the scene within the "locked shop." 14. Tell the story of the instrument in Washington. 15. What did Morse say on the night his bill was before Congress? 16. What was the message sent by the young lady? 17. Mention something about Bell, Gray, and Marconi.

18. How old was Cyrus Field when he retired from business? 19. Who was Peter Cooper? 20. Tell the story of Field's early efforts at cable laying. 21. Picture the scenes in New York. 22. The final message. 23. What honors were given Field?

24. What books could Edison read at twelve? 25. Prove that he was a great reader. 26. Tell the story of his thousand newspapers. 27. How did his experiment with the cat succeed? 28. What was the cause and what was the effect of his first lessons in telegraphy? 29. Give some reasons why Edison did not fall into bad habits as a "tramp operator." 30. What was his first great invention? 31. What did Edison find in Wall Street, New York? 32. How much did Edison think of asking for his invention? How much did the men offer him? 33. Tell the story of the work in Edison's shop at Newark, New Jersey. 34. Why a library at Menlo Park? 35. Make a list of his great inventions.

Suggested Readings. ROBERT FULTON: Glascock, *Stories of Columbia*, 186-188; Wright, *Children's Stories of American Progress*, 104-120; Mowry, *American Inventions and Inventors*, 194-222; Thurston, *Robert Fulton*

SAMUEL F. B. MORSE: Trowbridge, *Samuel Finley Breese Morse*; Mowry, *American Inventions and Inventors*, 270-277.

CYRUS WEST FIELD: Judson, *Cyrus W. Field*; Mowry, *American Inventions and Inventors*, 278-285; Doubleday, *Stories of Inventors*, 3-16.

THOMAS A. EDISON: Mowry, *American Inventions and Inventors*, 85-89; Dickson, *Life and Inventions of Edison*, 4-153, 280-338.

THE MEN WHO WON TEXAS, THE OREGON COUNTRY, AND CALIFORNIA

SAM HOUSTON, HERO OF SAN JACINTO

141. Sam Houston. Young Houston was born of Scotch-Irish parents, in Virginia (1793). His father had fought under General Morgan in the Revolution. Sam Houston did not have much schooling, and when but thirteen his family moved to east

Tennessee. Made angry by his older brother, he left home and went to live with the Cherokee Indians. He liked the wild life of the Indians and took part with the Indian boys in their past-times of hunting, fishing, and playing at games.

He was now eighteen. He returned home and went to school a term at Marysville Academy. In the war of 1812 General Jackson called the men of Tennessee to arms.

Young Houston responded to the call, and fought against the Indians in the great "Battle of Horseshoe Bend." He was dangerously wounded after doing heroic deeds. Houston was a long time in getting well.

At twenty-five he began to study law in Nashville and in six

Houston
among
the
Chero-
kees

Returns
home



THE BATTLE OF HORSESHOE BEND
*Here Houston, under Jackson in the victory over
the Creeks, won great distinction*

Wound-
ed in
battle

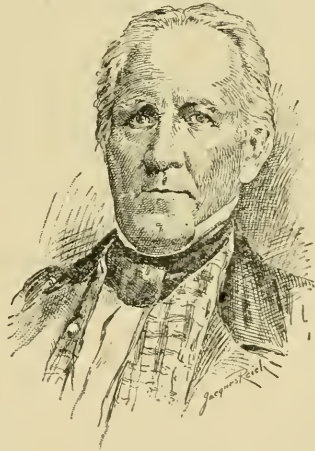
months—just a third of the time said to be necessary—he was ready to practice. Houston's rise in the law and in the favor of the people was rapid. He went from one position to another until the people elected him to Congress.

Elected
to
Congress

He was in Congress four years. He won many friends by his gracious behavior. The people of Tennessee made Houston their governor. But suddenly, without warning, Houston resigned as governor, and forsook his home and friends. He sailed down the Mississippi River to the Arkansas, and up this river several hundred miles to the land of his early friends, the Cherokees, whom the United States Government had sent to that far-away country.

Governor
of Ten-
nessee
Forsakes
his home

Here Houston found the old chief—now the head of his tribe—who had adopted him as a son years before on the banks of the Tennessee. The chief threw his arms around him in great affection and said: "My son, eleven winters have passed since we met. My heart has wandered often where you were; and I heard you were a great chief among your people . . . I have heard that a dark cloud had fallen on the white path you were walking, and when it fell . . . you turned your thoughts to my wigwam. I am glad of it, —it was done by the Great Spirit . . . My wigwam is yours, my home is yours, my people are yours,—rest with us."



Returns
to the
Chero-
kees

The old
chief's
welcome

SAM HOUSTON

*From a photograph by Matthew
B. Brady in the collection of
the War Department,
Washington, D. C.*

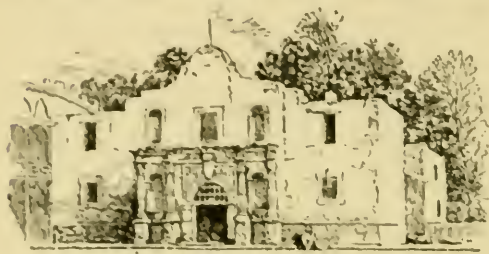
When Andrew Jackson became President of the United States, Houston went, in his Indian dress, on a visit to Washington. He was warmly received by his old friend from Tennessee.

Visits
Wash-
ington

Visits
Tennes-
see

Once more he turned his face toward the wilderness. He stopped in Tennessee and was warmly greeted by old friends. He did not stay long in Tennessee.

Hastens
to Texas



THE ALAMO, SAN ANTONIO

Of its defense by Travis, Crockett, and their few men it was said "Thermopylae had her messenger of woe—the Alamo had none"

Texas
declares
inde-
pendence

upon the Mexicans resolved to send a large army into Texas and force the revolutionists into submission to the government.

A most important event of this war was the capture, by a large Mexican force, of an old fortress called the Alamo. It was defended by one hundred forty men, among them the famous "Davy" Crockett and Colonel Bowie—the inventor of the bowie knife. Only six Texans were alive after the capture of the fort. These heroic men died, fighting the Mexicans to the last.

"Re-
member
the
Alamo!"

"Remember the Alamo!"

became the war cry of every Texan. The Mexicans were

Neither did he stay long with the Cherokees, but hastened to Texas where the people were already murmuring against the treatment they were receiving from Mexico.

The people of Texas finally issued a Declaration of Independence. There-



HOUSTON AT SAN JACINTO

Where his battle cry "Remember the Alamo!" won Texas independence from Mexico

approaching, five thousand strong, under General Santa Anna. General Houston commanded the Texans, about seven hundred in all.

Suddenly the news came that General Fannin and his men, five hundred in number, had been massacred by the Mexicans at Goliad. The cause of Texan independence looked dark indeed.

Houston began a retreat of two hundred fifty miles to the eastward. Santa Anna followed closely after him, but scattered his men, just as Houston wanted him to do, until he had with him

but eighteen hundred men. They were now on the banks of the San Jacinto.

Houston waited till the Mexicans were a bit careless, then seven hundred Texans charged the breastworks of the Mexicans. After the first fire they clubbed their guns and went at it, pioneer fashion, with the cry "Remember the Alamo!" The right and the left wings of the Mexicans gave way first, and then the center.

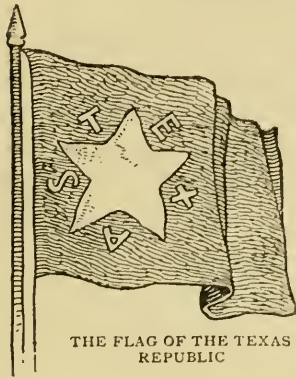
They retreated, expecting to cross a deep, narrow bayou or stream on a log bridge, but Houston had had the bridge destroyed. The slaughter was terrific. The stream was choked with Mexicans and their horses.

**Massacre
of Goliad**

**Houston's
retreat**

**Battle
of San
Jacinto**

**Retreat
of the
Mexicans**



THE FLAG OF THE TEXAS
REPUBLIC



SCENE OF HOUSTON'S CAMPAIGN

Santa Anna captured and sent to visit Washington

Santa Anna was captured and was turned over to the Texan government. Many thought he ought to die because of the massacres at the Alamo and Goliad, but Houston was generous toward the beaten man, and sent him on to visit Washington.

Houston had been badly wounded and sailed to New Orleans for medical care. He returned to be elected first President of the

Houston elected President of Texas



MAP OF THE WEST AFTER THE WAR WITH MEXICO
Showing the territory added to the United States
after the Louisiana Purchase

Annexation of Texas

“Lone Star Republic,” as Texas was called. He was reelected for a second term and served his country well.

Houston wanted Texas made a part of the United States. This was afterwards done and war followed with Mexico. In 1845, Texas sent Houston to the United States Senate, where he served his state for fourteen years.

He fully believed in the Union. He died in 1863.

DAVID CROCKETT, GREAT HUNTER AND HERO OF THE ALAMO

142. A Brave Backwoodsman. At the close of the Revolution, Tennessee was still largely a wilderness. Here David Crockett was born in 1786. In those days, schools on the frontier were few and poor, and young “Davy” found most of his schooling in the backwoods. He learned to know the woods and streams and the animals that lived in them. As a boy he spent most of his time hunting and trapping. As a young man he was one of the most famous

Crockett found his schooling in the woods

When the Creek War broke out, he enlisted under Andrew Jackson to march against the Indians. The young rifleman fought so well under "Old Hickory" that Tennessee made him a colonel.

He had become a famous hunter and fighter. He thought he would try politics next. Instead of making political speeches, he went about from place to place telling stories. The people liked both him and his stories so well that they elected him to the legislature. A few years later they sent him to Congress.

Enters
politics
and
elected
to
Congress

By and by Crockett grew tired of civilization. He wanted to get back to the wilderness. His old home was too well settled to suit him. So he wandered to Texas. Here he heard that the Mexicans were surrounding the Americans at San Antonio. "Davy" Crockett loved a good fight too well to stay away. He hastened to join the small band of brave men who were defending the Alamo. All could have escaped had they chosen to do so. But with iron courage these hundred and forty stayed and defied Santa Anna's thousands.

Returns
to the
wilderness

For several days the Mexicans were held at a distance. They dared not bring their cannon close to the building, for the concealed sharpshooters picked off the men who tried to man the guns. Old Crockett himself laid low five men in charge of one cannon. The fall of the Alamo was however merely a question of time. Little by little the walls were battered down, and finally the Mexicans were ready to storm. On they came, a great charging mass. The American riflemen shot them down by scores, but when one Mexican fell another took his place. One by one the fearless defenders fell. The last man to go down was Davy Crockett.

Joins
the fight
at the
Alamo

It is said that he stood with his back to the wall, fighting to the last, and that the Mexicans, afraid to meet him hand to hand, shot him down from a distance.

David
Crockett
fights to
the last



THE PATHWAYS OF THE EARLY EXPLORERS OF THE WEST

His
father
a French
refugee

JOHN C. FREMONT, THE PATHFINDER OF THE ROCKY MOUNTAINS

143. A Great Explorer. Fremont's father was a Frenchman who was driven to America by the terrible French Revolution.

John Charles Fremont was born at Savannah (1813) while his parents were on a journey through the South. His father died soon after, and his mother went to live in Charleston, South Carolina.

Goes to
South
America

After a time at a good school, Fremont entered the junior class in Charleston College (1828). After leaving college he spent two and a half years on a voyage to South America.

Becomes
a civil
engineer

On his return he joined a company of engineers sent by the governor to explore the mountains between South Carolina and Tennessee, in order to find a suitable place for a railroad. This work was through a region rough, wild, and full of beauty. It gave young Fremont a taste for exploration which never left him.

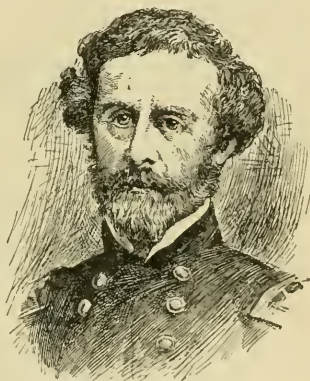
Fremont's longing for a wild life was gratified when he was made assistant to a famous Frenchman who was exploring the wild region between the upper Missouri River and Canada.

After this work Fremont returned to Washington and later married Jessie Benton, the daughter of the Senator from Missouri. Thomas H. Benton was a great friend of President Jackson.

**Marries
Senator
Benton's
daughter**

Fremont was now related to a powerful man who was deeply interested in the growth of the "Great West." Benton's repeated speeches on the "West" and on the "Oregon Country" called attention to the importance of the Pacific slope.

In 1842 Fremont, now a lieutenant of engineers, received permission from the government to explore the South Pass of the Rocky Mountains. With a party made up largely of French Canadians, and assisted by that famous guide, Kit Carson, he passed up the Kansas River, crossed to the Platte, went up this river, and thus reached the South Pass.



**Receives
permis-
sion to
explore
South
Pass**

JOHN C. FREMONT

After a photo from life

144. On the Watershed. Standing on the watershed of a continent, he saw the beginnings of rivers that flow into the Atlantic, and of others that stretched away through unknown regions to the Pacific. He took four men and climbed what has since been called Fremonts Peak, one of the highest of the Rockies, about 13,800 feet above the sea. At the top Fremont unfurled the stars and stripes in all its glory!

**Unfurls
the Stars
and
Stripes
on Fre-
monts
Peak**

145. A Pathway to the Pacific. Fremont reported his discovery at Washington and immediately applied for orders to make an expedition to discover a more southerly route to California and Oregon.

He left the little town of Kansas City with his guide, Kit Carson, in May, 1843. In September, after traveling seventeen hundred miles, the little party beheld the shores of Great Salt Lake. What feelings must have stirred the breasts of men shut in for months by mountains, at seeing what appeared to be an ocean, here in the midst of a continent! Little did they dream of that hardy band of immigrants, so soon to follow, who would make the shores of this sea blossom like a garden! Fremont wrote: "As we looked over that vast expanse of water and strained our eyes along the silent shores, over which hung so much doubt and uncertainty, I could hardly repress the almost irresistible desire to continue our exploration."



GAZING OUT AT THE BEGINNINGS OF RIVERS

Behold
Great
Salt LakeReach
Fort Van-
couver

After making preparations, the party crossed over to a branch of the Columbia River. Down this they traveled till Fort Vancouver was reached, November 4. Here Fremont was the guest of the Governor of the British Hudson Bay Company.



FREMONT'S MEN BUILDING A FIRE IN THE SNOW

They crossed into the Great Basin, but did not know it.

According to Fremont's observations, they were in the latitude

November 10, on the way home, the little party started to make the circuit of the Great Basin, a vast depression beyond the east wall of the Sierra Nevada Mountains. But very soon they found deep snow on the

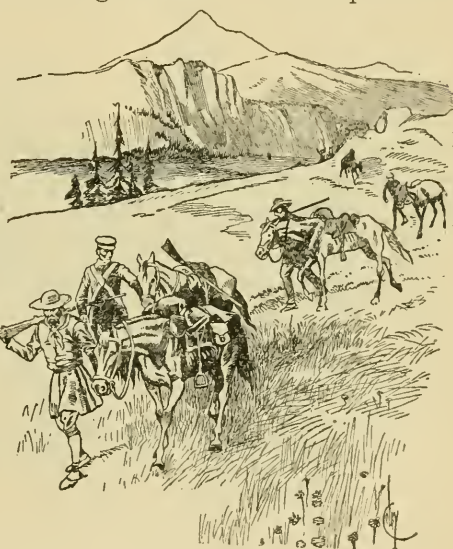
Travel
in deep
snow

of San Francisco Bay and only seventy miles from it. But what miles! Up and down that snowy mountain, which the Indians told him no man could cross in winter, with snow upon it as deep as the trees were high, and places where if a man slipped off he would fall half a mile at a time!

Crossing
the Sierra
Nevada

They attempted to cross without a guide, in the dead of winter. In forty days the men and the surviving horses—a woeful procession crawling along one by one, skeleton men leading skeleton horses—arrived at Sutters Fort (Sacramento) in the beautiful valley of the Sacramento. Here genial warmth, trees in foliage, grassy ground, and flowers made a fairy contrast to the famine and freezing they had met on the mountains they had climbed.

After enjoying the hospitality of Colonel Sutter, Fremont again crossed the mountains some five hundred miles farther south where the beautiful San Joaquin River makes a gap or pass.



In the
Valley of
the Sac-
ramento

FREMONT'S EXPEDITION REACHING SUTTERS
FORT, CALIFORNIA

He was once more in the Great Basin, where he found a tribe of Digger Indians, so named because they got their food by digging. Roots, insects, and lizards were their common food.

The
Digger
Indians

Pushing forward with great energy, he reached Utah Lake, thus having nearly made the circuit of the Great Basin.

End of
second
expedi-
tion

Fremont hastened to Washington with the story of his discoveries. General Scott now recommended that he be made captain.

Third ex-
pedition

Fremont's third expedition, with Carson as a helper, began in the spring of 1845, and aimed to explore the Great Basin and the coast of California and Oregon.

146. In the Mexican War. Little did Fremont—or any of his men—think what fortune had in store for them. On his way to the Oregon Country Fremont received news that the Mexicans were planning to kill

War
breaks
out



THE UNFURLING OF THE AMERICAN FLAG IN CALIFORNIA
The Stars and Stripes were raised for the first time in California by Fremont, in 1846, over his camp near Monterey

Conquest
of Cal-
ifornia

Mexicans and declared northern California independent.

Fremont marched with all speed to Monterey and occupied it. This practically finished the conquest of all California in sixty days.

147. Becomes a Private Citizen. Soon after this event Fremont returned to Washington, gave up his place in the regular army, and went to live in California. His journey to California made up his fourth expedition. But the people would not let him

Fourth
expedi-
tion

all the Americans in the Sacramento Valley. War had already broken out between the United States and Mexico, but he did not know it. He returned, reaching the valley in May, 1846, and the settlers rushed to join him. In one month he had beaten the

long remain in private. The state elected him to the United States Senate. Fremont was not long in Congress, but was of great service in giving advice concerning the long-talked-of railroad to the Pacific.

Elected
to United
States
Senate

Early in 1848 gold was discovered in the sand along the American river near San Francisco. As the news spread, great excitement arose, and everybody wanted to dig gold. This was the "gold fever" of 1848 and 1849. The rush to the coast was tremendous. It made the building of a railroad urgent. Fremont made his fifth expedition to survey three routes to the Pacific. After great hardships Fremont returned to Washington to report what he had found.

He now took up his residence in New York City and became a member of the party opposed to the extension of slavery. The new party, the Republican, nominated him as its first candidate for President (1856). He was defeated after a most exciting time, yet he carried all the Northern states but four.

Nomi-
nated for
President

During the Civil War he was made a major-general, but after a year or two he resigned. He was talked of for President in 1864, but did not make the race.

A major-
general
in the
Civil War

After the war was over he was interested in a great continental railroad. From 1878 to 1881, he was governor of Arizona. Congress voted him a pension just before he died in 1890.

SPANISH MISSIONS IN THE SOUTHWEST

148. How the Franciscans Ruled the Southwest. Centuries before Fremont or Kit Carson or any other American had seen the wonders of our western country, Spaniards made their homes there. Before the "Mayflower" landed at Plymouth, Spanish missionaries had built many churches in the Southwest and had baptized thousands of Indians into the Christian faith.

Spanish
mis-
sionaries
baptize
Indians

The story of the Spanish in New Mexico, Arizona, and California

Franciscan friars
friends
of the
oppressed

is not of victories won by the sword, but by the cross. The men who ruled this country were not soldiers, but pious Franciscan friars. Many years ago there lived in Italy a godly man, St. Francis, who looked upon all poor and oppressed people as his children and devoted his life to their care. His followers, who are called Franciscan friars, have gone into all parts of the world to be missionaries to the poor and the heathen.

Serra
builds a
mission
at San
Diego

Greatest of the Franciscans who worked in the Southwest was Junipero Serra. One warm day in 1769 he came riding into San Diego on muleback, a tall, thin figure, wrapped in a long gown. There were no missionaries at this time in California. He had come from Mexico with a small party to convert the Indians. At San Diego he saw "valleys studded with trees, wild vines covered with grapes, and native roses as fair and sweet as those of Castile."

Here was just the place to build a mission. First he set up a great wooden cross and said mass. There was no organ music, so the soldiers fired their arms instead. The simple Indians stood by in wonder and awe. Junipero was a man of energy and action, and in a short time he had his first mission built. From San Diego he went northward and planted mission after mission as far north as San Francisco. When he died the Franciscan missions controlled practically all of southern California.

Mission
buildings
sur-
rounded
by
gardens

Wherever the friars built a mission they made sure that the soil was good and that there was plenty of water near by. For that is a country in which little rain falls and crops will not grow unless they are watered by irrigation. Having found a suitable place, they would then build a church. This was always the largest building of the mission. Some of them were very beautiful. Around the church clustered the houses of the friars and the huts of the Indians. Each mission was surrounded by beautiful gardens and orchards.

A little farther away were the fields in which the grain was grown. All of these were watered by irrigation ditches that drew their water from some mountain stream. Beyond the cultivated land lay the ranches on which cattle and sheep grazed in great numbers.

All the Indians in the neighborhood were made to live at the mission. Here they were taught the Christian religion. They were also taught many useful occupations. The men were shown how to farm, to make saddles, work at the forge, the carpenter bench, and other useful trades. The women were instructed in spinning and weaving. In the morning the angelus called every one to mass. After breakfast the day's work began and each Indian was sent to his task. Some cultivated the fields, some took care of the stock, some worked in the shops. Each one had to do his share of the work, and was punished if he disobeyed. He had to work, pray, and live as the friars told him.

Indians
taught
useful
occupa-
tions

When Mexico freed itself of Spanish rule, California became a part of Mexico. The new government put an end to the missions. The friars were forced to leave, and the Indians drifted back into their old wild life. To-day nothing remains of the work of the friars except the old mission buildings. Most of them are in ruins, but they still tell of the quiet by-gone days when the gentle Franciscans ruled in California.

Missions
fall to
ruin

SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

The Leading Facts. 1. Houston had little schooling and went to live with the Cherokee Indians. 2. Wounded at Horse Shoe Bend; studied law in Nashville; was sent to Congress for four years; and was elected governor of Tennessee. 3. Went to live with the Cherokees again, and then went to Texas. 4. Houston won the battle of San Jacinto; was made president of the republic of Texas; and later elected to the United States Senate. 5. David Crockett was born in Tennessee, had little schooling, and became an expert rifle shot. 6. He fought the Indians

under Andrew Jackson. 7. Won an election to the legislature by telling stories; later elected to Congress. 8. Crockett grew tired of civilization and returned to the wilderness. 9. Fought against the Mexicans at the Alamo, where he was killed with all his companions. 10. Fremont went to school in Charleston, but left for a voyage to South America. 11. He worked for exploring parties; married, and thus became related to a great man interested in the Far West. 12. Fremont explored the South Pass in his first expedition; on his second, saw Great Salt Lake, and crossed the mountains with great suffering. 13. Fremont crossed a third time, conquered California; was made a United States Senator, and became first candidate of the Republican party for the presidency. 14. Franciscan friars, long before the landing of the Pilgrims, entered New Mexico, Arizona, and California. 15. They taught the Indians the Christian religion and many useful occupations.

Study Questions. 1. What was peculiar in Houston's early life? 2. What had he done before he began to study law? 3. What made people like him? 4. Where was the battle of Horse Shoe Bend fought? 5. How did the Cherokee chief welcome him? 6. Why did Houston go back to Tennessee? 7. What drew him to Texas? 8. What were the first bad defeats of the Texans? 9. Tell the story of San Jacinto. 10. What kind of a general, a president, and a senator did Houston make?

11. Where did Crockett spend his boyhood, and what fame did he gain? 12. How did he win his way to the legislature? 13. What made Crockett go back to the wilderness? 14. Describe the fight at the Alamo.

15. Who was John Charles Fremont? 16. What of his youthful days? 17. What experience in early days after college prepared him for his great work? 18. Who was Kit Carson? 19. Describe Fremont's journey to the South Pass. 20. Tell what was seen and what was done there. 21. What expedition did he now plan? 22. Picture the scene on the discovery of the Great Salt Lake. 23. Picture his exploration of the Great Basin and crossing the Sierras. 24. What was the contrast at Sutter's Fort? 25. Describe the Digger Indians. 26. At what was Fremont's third expedition aimed, and what did it really accomplish?

27. Who was St. Francis? 28. Describe Serra's arrival at San Diego. 29. Why did he build a mission at San Diego? 30. Describe life at a Spanish mission. 31. What happened when Spanish rule was ended in California?

Suggested Readings. HOUSTON: Bruce, *Life of General Houston*.

DAVID CROCKETT: Crockett, *Life of Davy Crockett*; Lodge and Roosevelt, *Hero Tales from American History*, 171-181.

FREMONT: Bigelow, *Life of John Charles Fremont*, 1-216, 319-373, 379-466.

THE THREE GREATEST STATESMEN OF THE MIDDLE PERIOD

HENRY CLAY, THE FOUNDER OF THE WHIG PARTY AND THE GREAT PACIFICATOR

149. The Rise of Henry Clay. Henry Clay was born in Virginia in the year of Burgoyne's surrender (1777). His father was a Baptist preacher, with a fine voice and a graceful way of speaking. He died when Henry was four years old.

Little Henry lived near the "Slashes," a low, flat region, and went to school in a log cabin. When not at school he worked in support of the family. He could be seen walking barefooted behind the plow, or riding the horse with a rope bridle to mill. From this he was called the "Mill boy of the Slashes."

Henry was a raw-boned and awkward lad. The other boys laughed at him, but he read books when not at work, and soon could speak far better than the boys who made fun of him.

At fourteen he was a clerk in a store. But he seemed made for other things. He was put in the office of a famous lawyer who was clerk in one of Virginia's courts.

The Chancellor of Virginia, a great judge, liked him and took him to be his private secretary. For four years Clay wrote down the judge's law decisions. The great man often talked with Clay on important subjects and advised him about the kind of books to read.



THE "MILL BOY OF THE SLASHES"

The
"Mill
boy
of the
Slashes"

Read
books
when
other
boys
played

Leader
in a de-
bating
club

After studying law for a year, Clay began to practice in Richmond. He had plenty of time, so he formed a debating club, in which he was easily the leader.

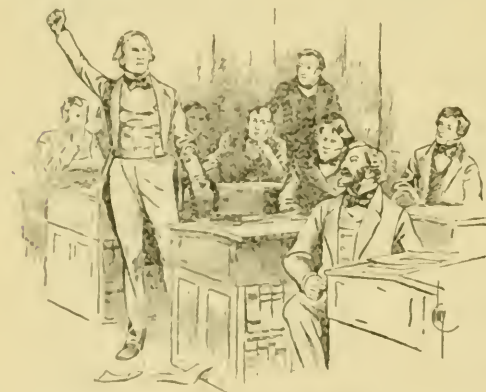
Finally he made up his mind to go to Lexington, Kentucky, and try his fortune in the West. There his rise in the law was rapid. His fame grew, and he became known as the lawyer who seldom lost a case.

He married a well-to-do young lady and lived near Lexington on a beautiful estate called Ashland.

Favors
gradual
abolition
of
slavery

Henry Clay's first work in politics was to favor the gradual abolition of slavery in Kentucky. Although beaten, he was always proud of his stand on this question.

Too
young
to be a
Senator



HENRY CLAY IN CONGRESS

*Urging war in 1811, with England or France
or even both if necessary*

When too young, according to the Constitution, to take his seat, he was made a Senator of the United States. But nobody called the attention of the Senate to his age. After his term as a Senator was out he was elected to the legislature of Kentucky, and was immediately made Speaker.

Speaker
of the
House of
Repre-
sentatives

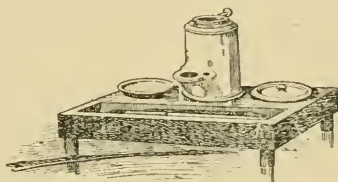
Born during the Revolution, Henry Clay like most Americans of his time grew up with hatred toward England in his heart. He was sent to Congress in 1811, and was elected Speaker of the House of Representatives. As Speaker, he did much to bring on a declaration of war with Great Britain, in 1812.

Clay made speeches in Congress and over the country, stirring

up the war spirit. "On to Canada!" was his cry. But the capture of Canada was not so easy. Many generals failed and only Harrison and Perry made much headway in defeating the British in Canada.

**The War
of 1812**

When the time for peace came President Madison sent Henry Clay and other noted Americans to Ghent, in Belgium, to meet the British agents.



INKSTAND USED BY HENRY CLAY

**The
Treaty of
Ghent**

After many months of talking and disputing, they finally agreed on a treaty. This treaty has since been called the "Treaty of Ghent." Great Britain and America were both glad that peace had come.

From 1819 to 1821 Congress was debating over the admission of Missouri as a slave state. The North opposed, and the South favored, the admission of Missouri. The excitement spread to the state legislatures and to the people. Many meetings were held. Resolutions strongly favoring, or strongly opposing, the admission of Missouri as a slave state, were drawn up and voted upon.

**The con-
flict over
Missouri**

Wise men thought the Union was in danger and Henry Clay, by his eloquence, succeeded in getting Congress to pass the famous Missouri Compromise. This resolution provided that Missouri should be admitted as a slave state, but that no other slave state north of the line of 36 degrees 30 minutes should ever be admitted. Both sides were pleased and the excitement died out.

**The
Missouri
Comprom-
ise**

We have seen how South Carolina threatened to refuse to pay the tariff in 1832, and how President Jackson hurried the army and the navy there to make her people pay it, as the people of the other states were obliged to do.

Henry Clay came forward again and introduced the Compromise Tariff Law. It was called a compromise because it gave each side a part of what it wished. Calhoun and other Carolinians favored it,

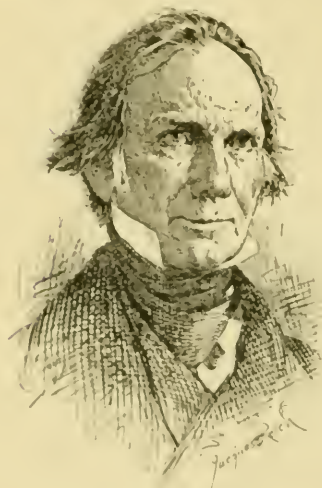
**The Com-
promise
Tariff
Law**

Henry Clay as a peace-maker again

because by this law the tariff was reduced very greatly. It was carried through Congress. The law made unnecessary the warlike preparations of both the President and South Carolina, and again Henry Clay was hailed by the people as "pacificator" or peacemaker.

150. Henry Clay the Founder of the Whig Party. But Henry Clay was not only a peacemaker. He was now a great statesman, and like Hamilton and Jefferson he led in forming a part of the people into a political party. It was called the Whig party.

The founder of the Whig party



HENRY CLAY

*From a daguerreotype owned by
Garrett Brown, Jr., Chicago*

In 1824, before there was a Whig party, Clay ran for President, but was beaten. Again in 1832, just as the new party was being formed, he ran a second time. Although he was beaten for the Presidency by Andrew Jackson, he was the life and soul of his party. It was his eloquence, the music of his words, that made men Whigs.

On one occasion, Clay spoke on the question of the Abolition of Slavery. Some one said that this might hurt his chances of being President. Clay replied: "I had rather be right than be President."

Unfortunate Henry Clay

Finally, in 1844, he was again the Whig candidate, but he was defeated for the third time. When the Whig party had a good chance of electing a President, they nominated somebody else. When they had a poor chance they nominated Henry Clay!

War with Mexico had come, and with it a great victory for the American army. The treaty of peace with Mexico, in 1848, gave the United States all the territory then known as Alta (Upper) California

and New Mexico. But the North and South disputed over this territory. The North said it must be free. The South said it must be open to slavery. The quarrel grew so bitter that many men thought the Union would be destroyed.

Dispute
over the
new ter-
ritory

Henry Clay was now an old man. He had left the Senate, and had gone home to his beloved Ashland for a few years of rest before the final summons.

Retires to
Ashland

151. The Aged Peacemaker Returns to the Senate. Kentucky was greatly excited by the threats of disunion. Her legislature sent him back to the United States Senate by a unanimous call, Democrats as well as Whigs joining in the vote. It was a proud moment for the old man.

A unani-
mous call

Now in the Senate, he offered the Compromise of 1850. This bill contained a number of points in favor of the slave states, and a number in favor of the free states.

One day, Clay made a great speech in favor of his Compromise. He had to walk to the capitol that day on the arm of a friend. He was too weak to climb the steps alone.

Walks
to the
capitol
on the
arm of a
friend

When he arose to speak, he saw before him an audience that had come from distant parts of the nation to hear his thrilling words once more. The people filled the Senate to overflowing. Outside they crowded the corridors. When Clay arose the audience broke into applause, a strange thing for the Senate to do. The people were not disappointed. For two days the ringing words flowed on. Under the excitement he was young again.

His
audience

He plead with the North to give up some things for the love of the Union. He plead with the South for peace. He told them that all the territory that the United States had purchased had been purchased for all of them. "War and the dissolution of the Union are identical."

A remarkable scene On the second day, some one suggested that he rest, and the Senate adjourn. But he refused; he might not be able to go on the next day. After he had finished his speech, a great crowd rushed forward to congratulate him. No such scene ever had been witnessed before in the Senate.

The reunion of the Union The debate went on. Now and then Clay took part in it. On one occasion he said: "I believe from the bottom of my soul that this measure is the reunion of the Union."

"This Union is my country" On another occasion he said: "The honorable Senator speaks of Virginia being my country. This Union is my country. But even if . . . my own state . . . should raise the standard of disunion . . . I would go against her. I would go against Kentucky much as I love her."

Congress finally passed the Compromise. Both political parties pledged themselves to obey it. Public meetings in all parts of the nation resolved to abide by it and the country rested for a time from the slavery question.

Henry Clay's work was done. His body was worn out, but his mind still clung to the Union. On June 29, 1852, Henry Clay died in Washington, the place of so many of his triumphs.

A great monument at Lexington, Kentucky, testifies the people's love for "Harry" Clay.



HENRY CLAY BEING CONGRATULATED
In 1850 on his great plea before the Senate for
the Federal Union

Died in Washington in 1852

DANIEL WEBSTER, THE DEFENDER OF THE CONSTITUTION

152. A College Boy and a Young Lawyer. Daniel Webster was born of good Puritan stock, in 1782, in New Hampshire. He was a very weakly child. No one dreamed that one day he would have an iron-like body. Daniel spent much of his time playing in the woods and fields. He loved the birds and beasts that he found there. He went to school, but the schoolmasters were not very learned, and Daniel could read better than most of them. The teamsters, stopping to water their horses, were glad to hear him read. He went to work in an old-fashioned sawmill, but he read books even there in odd moments of time.



HOUSE AT ELM FARMS

The birthplace of Daniel Webster. The site is now occupied by the New Hampshire State Orphans Asylum

Daniel Webster
1782

Loves the woods and fields

A good reader

One day in spring, his father took him to Exeter Academy to prepare for college. The boys laughed at his rustic dress and manners. The timid little fellow was greatly hurt by their scorn.

He finally entered Dartmouth College at the age of fifteen. He was simple, natural, and full of affection.

Webster was the best student at Dartmouth. He still kept the reading habit. The students liked him. They had a feeling that he would amount to something some day. At this time he was tall and thin, with high cheek bones. His eyes were deep set, and his voice was low and musical in its tones. He loved to speak, even then.

At the age of eighteen Webster gave the Fourth of July oration in his college town. The speech was full of the love of country and of the Union, then in its first days of trial.

Webster at Exeter Academy

The best student at Dartmouth

He loved public speaking

Teaches
school
and
studies
law

He never forgot his father's sacrifice in sending him to college. After he had finished at Dartmouth, Webster taught school in order that he might help his parents send his elder brother to college: He afterwards studied law. But he longed to finish his law studies in Boston. Finally good fortune put him in the office of Christopher Gore, a wise man, a great lawyer, and a statesman. In his office he studied until he was given the right to practice law.

Within a few years, he was earning enough to enable him to take a life partner; the beautiful and accomplished Grace Fletcher, the daughter of a minister. She made a delightful home for him and their children.

Elected
to
Congress

Webster was gaining name and fame as a lawyer, but the approach of the War of 1812 drew him into politics. He was elected to Congress, and took his seat in 1813. Henry Clay was Speaker of the House of Representatives. Webster's most important speech was in favor of a war carried on by the navy: "If the

Favors a
naval
war

war must be continued, go to the ocean. There the united wishes and exertions of the nation will go with you. Even our party divisions cease at the water's edge."

Web-
ster's ap-
pearance



SCENE OF THE FOURTH OF JULY ORATION
*Daniel Webster asserting the dignity of patriotism
at Dartmouth, July 4, 1800*

After the war, Webster left Congress for a number of years. He was now a great man. When he entered a room by his mere look and presence he drew all



SCENE IN THE UNITED STATES SENATE

Daniel Webster defending the Federal Constitution against Hayne's idea of nullification

eyes toward him, and all conversation hushed. In size, he looked larger and broader than he really was. His forehead was broad and massive. It towered above his large, dark, deep-set eyes. His hair was black and glossy as a raven's wing. He looked thus in 1830 in the Senate, when he made his famous speech in reply to Senator Hayne of South Carolina.

His battle
with
Hayne

153. The Greatest Statesman of his Time. Hayne had spoken against a protective tariff and in favor of nullification. Webster felt called upon to reply. He denied the right of a state to nullify a law of Congress, and said that nullification was another name for secession. He closed his great speech with these words: "When my eyes shall be turned to behold, for the last time, the sun in heaven, may I not see him shining on the broken and dishonored fragments of a once glorious Union . . . but may I see our flag with not a stripe erased or polluted, nor a single star obscured . . .

Denies
the right
of nulli-
fication

"Liberty
and
Union
one and
insepar-
able"

but everywhere spread all over in characters of living light, blazing on its ample folds, as they float over the sea and over the land . . .

that sentiment, dear to every American heart—Liberty and Union, now and forever, one and inseparable!"

This speech made Daniel Webster immortal. It did more; it fired the heart of every lover of his country.

We saw how South Carolina went on towards nullification, and how Clay's Compromise Tariff settled the difficulty. Webster strongly opposed this Compromise, and said that South Carolina should get out of the difficulty the best way she could.

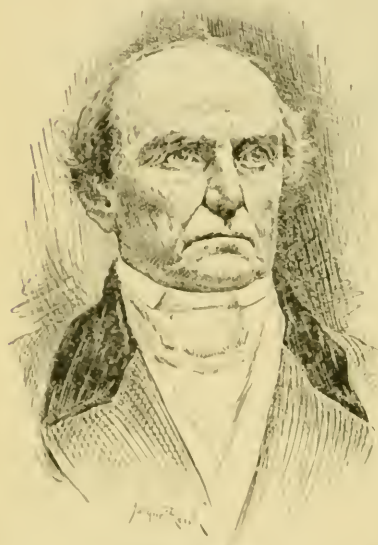
President Jackson was delighted and praised Webster in public and in private.

When Harrison captured the Presidency, after the greatest cam-

paign ever seen up to that time, he wanted the best men in the Whig party to advise him, so he made Daniel Webster Secretary of State.

It was a sad day when President Harrison died, after being in office just one month. John Tyler, of Virginia, the Vice-president, became the President. But he would not accept measures which Congress had passed. Daniel Webster left the cabinet after a time because he disliked the way Tyler was doing. He went back to the United States Senate, where he joined Clay, supporting the great Compromise of 1850.

On March 7, Webster made his speech on the Compromise,



DANIEL WEBSTER

*From a daguerreotype taken in 1850
by J. J. Hawes of Boston*

Opposes
Clay's
Comprom-
ise
Tariff

Jackson
praises
Webster

Harrison
makes
him
Secretary
of State

Webster
back in
the
Senate

entitled "For the Union and the Constitution." It was an appeal to all persons to stand by the Constitution and the Union. In blaming both the North and the South, much to the surprise of everybody, he blamed the North more than the South.

His
speech
on the
Comprom-
mise

Because he did this, many of his supporters in the North, especially in New England, turned their backs upon him. Webster was an old man now. Ever since 1832 he had wanted to be nominated for the Presidency, but his party always took some other man. His last days were made bitter by the thought that some old friends had forsaken him.

One bright spot for Webster lay in the fact that President Fillmore invited him to be Secretary of State again. After two years of service, he went back to Boston. He was received with joy by some of his friends and neighbors, and was hailed with shouts by

Again
Secretary
of State

Boston
welcomes
Webster
again



THE UNITED STATES IN 1850

the multitude. This must have made his heart leap with gratitude for the praise of friends is pleasant. But men saw he was not like his former self. He went to his home at Marshfield, where he died, October 24, 1852, the greatest figure in American politics in his day.

JOHN C. CALHOUN, THE CHAMPION OF NULLIFICATION

154. The Champion of the War of 1812. John C. Calhoun was

born in the same year as Webster (1782) in South Carolina. His parents were Scotch-Irish. His father, a Revolutionary patriot, died soon after John was born. John spent his early years roaming in the fields and woods. He learned more than from books and he learned to think before the thoughts of other people filled his memory.

At eighteen he began to prepare for college, under the care of his brother-in-law, a Presbyterian minister. In two years he entered Yale College. When in college he studied hard, and was graduated with high honors.



JOHN C. CALHOUN

From a photograph by Matthew B. Brady in the collection of the War Department, Washington, D. C.

Calhoun studied law diligently for three years, a year and a half of the time in his native state, and a year and a half in Connecticut. He began to practice

law in South Carolina, but did not have great success. Perhaps it was because the law was too dry for him, or perhaps because he was soon elected to the legislature of his state.

In 1811 he was married, and was elected to Congress—two great events in his life. Henry Clay, as Speaker, immediately put

His
death at
Marsh-
field, 1852

John C.
Calhoun,
1782

His
father a
Revolu-
tionary
patriot

Entered
Yale
College
as a
junior

A lawyer

Elected
to Con-
gress

Calhoun on an important committee. He quickly sounded a bugle call to war, declaring that it was the duty of "Congress to call forth the patriotism and resources of the country."

During the War of 1812 he worked hard in Congress for the success of the American army. After the war he favored a tariff to keep English goods out of the country.

President Monroe made him Secretary of War. He found the office in the utmost confusion, but, by hard and careful work, he left the war office a model for future secretaries.

155. Calhoun Favors Nullification. He was elected Vice-president in 1824, and again in 1828. In the last-named year, he wrote a paper called the "South Carolina Exposition." In this letter, and in others that he wrote, he told the people of South Carolina there would always be differences between the North and the South. He said the Southern people, using slave labor, would raise more tobacco and cotton than they needed, and that the tariff was hurtful to the South. That the Northern people, using free labor, would manufacture all kinds of things, and that the tariff would be helpful to them. This document took the ground that between the North and the South there always would be a conflict of interests. The South was devoted to agriculture, and the North to manufacturing. The South had slave and the North free labor.

Therefore, Calhoun concluded that to protect the South from the North, a state has the right to nullify a law of Congress. A state has this right, because the state is above the nation. The states made the Constitution. He believed that nullification was a means of saving the country from secession.

South Carolina took the fatal step, and nullified the tariffs. This decision was to take effect February 1, 1833, provided the United States did not do something before that time to lower the tariff.

Works
hard for
the suc-
cess of
the army
Secretary
of War

Twice
elected
Vice-
president

Cal-
houn's
"South
Carolina
Expo-
sition"

South
Carolina
passes
ordi-
nance of
nullifi-
cation



THE HOME AND OFFICE OF CALHOUN, AT FORT HILL, SOUTH CAROLINA

Jackson
warns
South
Carolina

President Jackson warned the citizens of South Carolina against the men who had led them to take this step. He hinted that the tariff would be collected by the use of force, if necessary.

She with-
draws
her ordi-
nance

We have seen how Henry Clay rushed his Compromise Tariff through Congress. At the same time another bill was passed by Congress, which gave President Jackson the right to use the army and navy in forcing a collection of the tariff. South Carolina stopped her nullification, and the excitement passed away.

His
speech
on the
purpose
of the
Aboli-
tionists

156. Opposed to the Abolitionists. The people who wished to do away with slavery entirely were called Abolitionists. The Abolitionists stirred Calhoun deeply by petitions in favor of abolishing slavery in the District of Columbia. He declared that "the petitions are a foul slander on nearly one-half of the states of the Union . . . The object is to humble and debase us in our own estimation . . . to blast our reputation. This is the (manner) in which they are (trying) abolition . . . and now is the time for all opposed to them to meet the attack."

"We love and cherish the Union. We remember with kindest feelings our common origin . . . but origin (is) to us as nothing compared with this question.

"The relation which now exists between the two races in the slave-holding states has existed for two centuries . . . We will not, we cannot, permit it to be destroyed . . . should it cost every drop of blood and every cent of property, we must defend ourselves . . . It is not we, but the Union which is in danger."

The
Union in
danger

Not many in the Senate agreed with Calhoun then. In 1837, Calhoun went much further in the defense of slavery than any of the other slaveholders would go. He declared in a great speech in the Senate, that "slavery is a good, a positive good."

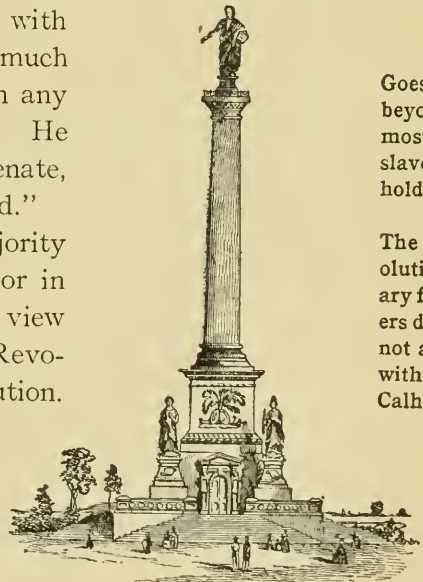
This was not the belief of the majority of even the slaveholders in Congress or in the nation. Much less had it been the view of the men who had fought out the Revolution, and who had made our Constitution.

The majority of slaveholders still looked upon slavery, at best, as a necessary evil and one to be gotten rid of sometime and somehow. Calhoun's view that "slavery is a good, a positive good," was an entirely new view of slavery.

Calhoun was made Secretary of State under President Tyler, and succeeded in annexing Texas to the United States. For this reason Mexico made war with the United States.

Goes
beyond
most
slave-
holders

The Rev-
olution-
ary fath-
ers did
not agree
with
Calhoun



MONUMENT TO CALHOUN AT CHARLESTON, S. C.
*From a photograph of the monument, which
was designed by A. E. Harnisch*

Calhoun
aids the
annexing
of Texas

The result of the war with Mexico was the gaining of territory

Dispute
over ter-
ritory

in the West and in the Southwest. Over this territory arose the great dispute that sent the aged Henry Clay back to the Senate with the Compromise of 1850.

Calhoun
opposed
Compro-
mise of
1850

Calhoun opposed that Compromise. He was too ill to speak, and a friend read his address to a hushed and listening Senate. He declared that the Union was in danger because the Abolitionists had stirred up strife. He wanted all agitation against slavery stopped. In the second place, he wanted an equal division of territory between the North and South. "If you of the North will not do this, then let our Southern states separate, and depart in peace."

Farewell
words to
the Sen-
ate

"Having faithfully done my duty to the best of my ability, both to the Union and my section . . . I shall have the consolation . . . that I am free from all responsibility."

His last
words

On March 31, 1850, he breathed his last words: "The South! The poor South! God knows what will become of her!"

SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

The Leading Facts. 1. Clay's father was a Baptist preacher. Young Henry went to school in a log cabin, and rode his horse to mill with a rope bridle. 2. He studied law, and went to Lexington, Kentucky, to practice. 3. Clay won his way to the hearts of the people; was elected to the House of Representatives for a great many years. 4. He favored the War of 1812; induced Congress to pass the Missouri Compromise and the Compromise tariff of 1833. 5. Clay ran three times for President. He was author of the great Compromise of 1850. 6. Webster was a weakly child, played in the woods, and read books. 7. He was graduated at Dartmouth, taught school, studied law, and was opposed to the War of 1812. 8. Webster replied to Hayne, opposed the nullification of South Carolina, and was made Secretary of State by Harrison. 9. Supported Clay's Compromise of 1850, and was made Secretary of State by Fillmore. 10. John C. Calhoun was born in South Carolina, and studied law. 11. He went to Congress, favored the War of 1812, and was afterwards made Secretary of War. 12. Calhoun thought that a state had the right to nullify an act of Congress. 13. He opposed Abolitionists and the Compromise of 1850.

Study Questions. 1. Who was the "mill boy of the slashes"? 2. Name some of our great men besides Clay who loved books. 3. What could Clay do better than the other boys? 4. What help did he get from the Chancellor of Virginia? 5. Why did Henry Clay form a debating club? 6. Where was Ashland? 7. What was his first great work in Kentucky? 8. What is a Speaker of the House of Representatives? 9. What did Clay do in stirring up the war spirit? 10. Why did Clay speak for the Missouri Compromise? 11. What was the Compromise Tariff? 12. Why call Clay a peacemaker? 13. How many times did Henry Clay run for President? 14. Why was Clay sent back to the United States Senate in 1850? 15. Picture the scene when Clay made his last great speech.

16. Who was Webster? 17. Why did he play in the woods? 18. What proof that he loved books too? 19. Why were Daniel Webster's feelings hurt at Exeter? 20. Why did students like Webster? 21. How did he reward his parents for sending him to college? 22. What was Webster's view of the War of 1812? 23. Picture Webster in 1830. 24. Quote something from his speech in reply to Hayne. 25. Who praised Webster for his speech against nullification? 26. Do you think Harrison selected the best man for Secretary of State? 27. Why did his friends in the North blame Webster for the Seventh of March speech? 28. How were Webster's last days affected by public opinion?

29. Who was Calhoun and what did he do roaming in the woods and fields do for him? 30. Where did he go to college and when did he reach Congress? 31. What position did he take in the War of 1812? 32. Why did he favor the Tariff and later favor the nullification of the Tariff? 33. What office did President Monroe give him? 34. What effect had the "South Carolina Exposition"? 35. What did South Carolina do? 36. How was a clash averted? 37. What did Calhoun say of the Abolitionists? 38. What did he say of the Union? 39. What did he say of slavery? 40. What was Calhoun's position on the Compromise of 1850? 41. His last words?

Suggested Readings. HENRY CLAY: Wright, *Children's Stories of American Progress*, 159-178; Brooks, *Century Book of Famous Americans*, 145-155; Anderson, *United States Reader*, 281-285; Frost, *The Mill Boy of the Slashes*.

DANIEL WEBSTER: Baldwin, *Four Great Americans*, 125-186; Brooks, *Century Book of Famous Americans*, 37-48; Hart, *How Our Grandfathers Lived*, 341-344; Bolton, *Famous American Statesmen*, 177-229.

JOHN C. CALHOUN; Brooks, *Century Book of Famous Americans*, 140-144; Rogers, *The True Henry Clay*, 248-254.

ABRAHAM LINCOLN, THE LIBERATOR AND MARTYR

A POOR BOY BECOMES A GREAT MAN

Abraham
Lincoln,
1809

157. The Backwoodsman Who Became President. Abraham Lincoln was born in Kentucky. February 12, 1809. His parents were so poor that they hardly knew that they were poor. When



THE BIRTHPLACE OF ABRAHAM LINCOLN

Moves to
Indiana
at the age
of seven

he was seven years old, his family crossed the Ohio River and settled in Indiana. There they found a place in the deep, dark forest, in the southern part of the state, and began to build a cabin for a home. Abe was an industrious little fellow and worked hard to help build it.

It was not much of a house—only fourteen feet square. One side was left out and here they built the fire. It was not very warm in winter and not very cool in summer. The hard ground was the floor.

The father was a sort of carpenter, and out of rough timbers he made a table and some three-legged stools. He also made the bedsteads, which consisted of poles driven into the wall.

Lincoln's
father
makes
the fur-
niture

In the loft of the cabin Abe made himself a bed of leaves. Every night he climbed into the loft by means of wooden pins driven into the wall. He was busy helping cut down trees and burning them to make room for a patch of corn and pumpkins.

The lad and his sister roasted the ears of young corn over the fire. The ripe corn was ground into meal from which corn bread was made. This was baked in the ashes or on a board in front of a bed of red-hot coals.

The woods, great thick woods for miles on all sides of them, were broken only here and there by a "clearing." In these forests

Abe went hunting with a gun on his shoulder. He often came back laden with squirrels, wild turkeys, and other game.

As a
hunter

They were living in the cabin when Abe's mother sickened and died. He was broken-hearted. She had taught him what little he knew. Her last words to him were: "Try to live as I have taught you and to love your Heavenly Father."

His
mother's
death

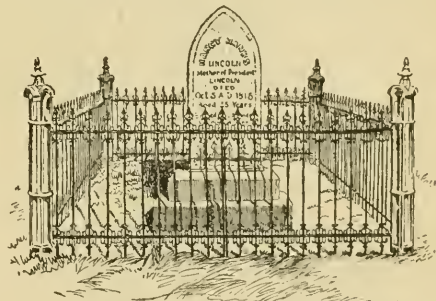
Many years after, when he became famous, he said: "All that I am or hope to be, I owe to my angel mother." She was put in a coffin roughly cut out of logs by the same tools that had made their furniture, and laid to rest in a corner of the clearing. Long years afterward a good man put a stone over the grave, with this inscription: "Nancy Hanks Lincoln, the mother of President Lincoln, died October 5, A. D. 1818, aged 35 years."

Lincoln's
tribute
to his
mother

After a year his father went back to Kentucky to look about for a wife. He found a widow, named Sarah Bush Johnston, and married her. He had known her before he met Nancy Hanks. She was thrifty and industrious, and her bedding and other household goods filled a four-horse wagon.

Lincoln
gets a
new
mother

Before winter came she made her husband put a good floor, and a door, and windows in the cabin. She took charge of Abe and his sister, and made them "look a little more human." She put good clothes on the children and put them to sleep in comfortable beds.



THE GRAVE OF NANCY HANKS LINCOLN

158. Lincoln Educates Himself. Schools were scarce in that new country, and Abe never had more than a year at school. His stepmother encouraged him in every way to study at home.

Abe's
educa-
tion

A taste
for
reading

When Abe got a taste for reading, it was hard to satisfy it. He read the Bible, "Æsop's Fables," "Robinson Crusoe," "Pilgrim's Progress," a History of the United States, and Weem's "Life of Washington." He borrowed the "Revised Statutes of Indiana." These were all solid books, good for a young boy to read. When a sentence pleased him, he read it, and re-read it. If he did not own the book, he took many notes, filling his copy book with choice sentences.



LINCOLN READING BY THE LIGHT OF THE
OPEN FIRE

He copies
down
what
pleases
him

John Hanks, a boy brought up with Lincoln, says: "When

Lincoln
reads
while he
eats

Abe and I returned to the house from work, he would go to the cupboard, snatch a piece of corn bread, sit down, take a book, cock his legs up as high as his head, and read." He read, wrote, and ciphered incessantly.

A great
story-
teller
when a
boy

Young Lincoln was soon able to do a "man's labor," although only a boy. He was strong and powerful, and a great favorite. In that family of brothers, sisters, and cousins, his good-natured jokes and stories kept peace. Abe was the great story-teller of the family.

At
nineteen
years of
age

At the age of nineteen Lincoln reached his full height of six feet four inches. By that time he had read every book he could find, and could "spell down" the whole country. "He could sink an axe deeper into the wood than any man I ever saw," said a neighbor.

Moves to
Illinois

When Abe was twenty-one, the entire family started for Illinois. Along forest roads, and across muddy prairies, for two weeks they traveled till they came to the Sangamon River.

They built a cabin on the north fork of the river. With the help of John Hanks, young Lincoln plowed fifteen acres, planted it in corn, and split the rails from the tall walnut trees on the ground and fenced it.

159. Tries to be a Business Man. The next year he was hired to take a flatboat to New Orleans. The boat was loaded with hogs, pork, and corn. The wages of the trip were fifty cents a day, and twenty dollars besides for each man.

A trip to
New
Orleans

They "poled" and rowed their slow way down the Ohio and the Mississippi. At New Orleans, Lincoln first saw a slave auction. He saw men and women sold. As he turned away he said to a friend: "If ever I get a chance to hit that thing, I'll hit it hard." He did not then dream of the mighty blow he would one day strike. After his return from New Orleans, he became a clerk in a store.

A slave
auction

Clerk in
a store

One day a woman gave Lincoln six cents too much. That very evening he walked several miles to find her and give back the money. At another time Lincoln found that he had not given a woman as much tea as she paid for. He went in search of her and gave her the rest of the tea.

About this time Lincoln joined a company of soldiers going to the Black Hawk War. An Indian chief named Black Hawk was on the "war path."

All the frontier was up in arms against him and his band of braves.

Lincoln was well pleased when nearly all the men in his company



LINCOLN SPLITTING RAILS TO FENCE
IN THEIR FARM

The
Black
Hawk
War

Lincoln
elected
captain

walked over and stood by his side. This was their way of electing a captain. No election in later days gave him greater pleasure.

Fame as
a story-
teller
spreads

Little fighting was done by Lincoln's company, but sitting around the camp fires in the evening, he became famous as a story-teller, and he made many friends.

Runs
for the
legisla-
ture

160. Makes a Success in Politics. On his return from the war, though he was only twenty-three years old, he became a candidate for the state legislature, but was defeated.

A little later he was again a candidate. This time he won. After the election, he said to a friend: "Did you vote for me?" "I did," replied the man. "Then you must lend me two hundred dollars." Lincoln needed a suit of clothes and money to pay the expenses for traveling in a stage coach to the capital!

In 1837 the legislature passed a set of resolutions in favor of slavery and condemning the Abolitionists. Lincoln could not stand this. He and one other man signed a protest declaring that slavery was founded on "injustice and bad policy."

Lincoln was reelected to the legislature seven times. He generally got more votes than other men on the ticket because the people liked his quaint sayings and his unpretending manner.

Lincoln
licensed
to prac-
tice law

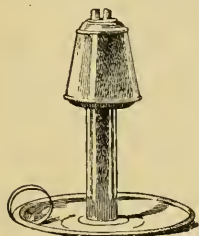
In the meantime, after three or four years of study, he was given a license to practice law. He made it a rule never to take a case which he believed to be wrong. He was a successful lawyer but the road to fame by way of the law was a slow one. It gave Lincoln a chance to engage in politics, as we have already seen.

His taste
for public
speaking

He liked "stump speaking." He liked to go about the country from one speaking place to another, or to travel from one county to another to meet the different sessions of the courts. He spoke for what he believed to be the truth. He was always in earnest, and made his hearers feel that he was sincere.

In 1840 he was one of Harrison's orators, and in 1844 he threw all his power and influence in favor of Henry Clay, his favorite among the great men, for the Presidency.

Speaks
for Har-
rison and
for Hen-
ry Clay



WHALE OIL LAMP
From Lincoln's log
cabin

In 1846 the Whigs of Springfield, where he was then living, put Lincoln forward for Congress, and succeeded in getting him elected. He was not in favor of the war with Mexico, then going on, and was not selected to run again. Lincoln returned to Springfield, and began the practice of law with greater success than ever before.

Lincoln
in
Congress

When Senator Douglas of Illinois, in 1854, carried the Kansas-Nebraska Bill through Congress, anti-slavery men all over the nation raised a storm of indignation. This bill repealed the Missouri Compromise, which had stood for thirty years, and threw the territories open to slavery.

Douglas spoke at the state fair, held in Springfield. He tried to explain why he favored the Kansas-Nebraska Bill. Lincoln made a speech four hours in length, ably answering the argument of Douglas. This speech made him the champion for the anti-slavery people in the state against Douglas.

The
cham-
pion
points
against
Douglas

The same question was fought out between them at Peoria, a little later. Again Lincoln met Douglas's arguments. People began to talk of Lincoln as the next United States Senator. More and more, popular opinion in the state began to turn toward Lincoln.

Public
opinion
points
toward
Lincoln

Accordingly, in 1858, at Springfield, the Republicans in convention named Lincoln for United States Senator. He made a speech to the Republicans, in which he said that this country can not remain half slave and half free—that it must become all slave or all free.

Nomi-
nated
for
United
States
Senator

This called every man to face a new question. No greater question could be raised. Some friends of Lincoln pleaded with

him not to say that the country could not remain half slave and half free. "I had rather be defeated with that expression in my speech than to be victorious without it," said Lincoln.

Lincoln
challenges
Douglas

161. The Lincoln-Douglas Debates. Douglas attacked this speech, and Lincoln challenged him to hold several joint debates before the people of Illinois. Seven debates were arranged, in which Douglas insisted upon opening and closing four.

People
came
from far
away to
hear the
debates

The people of Illinois were mainly farmers in 1858. They traveled long distances to hear these giants debate the question of slavery. Some of them were several days coming and going—in wagons, on horseback, or on foot. The newspapers in the larger cities sent men to listen to these debates, and take down the words used by Lincoln and Douglas. The editors knew the people were anxiously waiting to read what these men had to say about slavery.

The fatal
answer

"Can the people of a . . . Territory, in any lawful way, against the wish of any citizen . . . exclude slavery?" Lincoln asked. "Yes," said Douglas. That was a fatal answer. For, by this answer, Douglas lost the support of the Democrats of the South, although he held the Democrats of Illinois. He could still be Senator, but he could never be President.

The debates went on. "I do not perceive," said Lincoln, "that because the white man is to have the superior position, the negro should be denied everything . . . there is no reason in the world why the negro is not entitled to all the natural rights [named] in the Declaration of Independence . . . I agree with Judge Douglas, he [the negro] is not my equal in many respects—certainly not in color, perhaps not in moral or intellectual endowments. But, in the right to eat the bread, without the leave of anybody else, which his own hand earns, he is my equal, and the equal of Judge Douglas, and the equal of every living man."

These debates made Lincoln widely known. He accepted invitations to speak in Ohio, New York, and New England.

Lincoln made famous by the debates

In May, 1860, the Republicans of Illinois met in state convention. Lincoln was there. The people picked him up, lifted him over their heads, and placed him on the platform. The cheering was loud. Just at this moment John Hanks came into the hall carrying two fence rails, with the stars and stripes mounted between them, bearing in large words the following: "Taken from a lot made by

Abraham Lincoln and John Hanks in the Sangamon Bottom in the year 1830." The people stood up and cheered, and threw their hats high and shouted for Lincoln, the "rail-splitter." He made them a speech. The convention then and



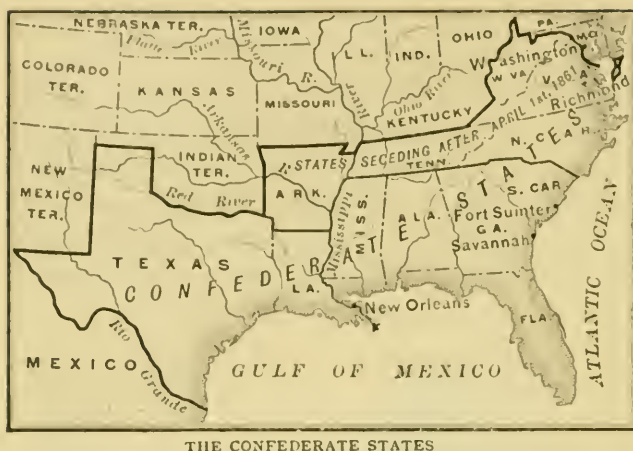
Lincoln the rail-splitter

LINCOLN SPEAKING IN THE STATE CONVENTION

there named him as the choice of the Republican party of Illinois for the next President of the United States.

162. Lincoln President. A few weeks later Abraham Lincoln was nominated in Chicago by the National Convention of the Republican party for the Presidency. Just as the passage of Douglas's Kansas-Nebraska Bill killed the old Whig party, so the debates between Lincoln and Douglas split the Democratic party into a Northern and a Southern wing.

The candidate of the Republican party



Lincoln
elected

Douglas was nominated by the Northern wing, and Breckinridge by the Southern wing. This division in the Democratic party resulted in the election of Lincoln to the Presidency, in November, 1860.

During the fall and winter, seven Southern states left the Union, and set up a government called the "Confederate States of America." They had their government all in running order before Lincoln left Springfield.

Bound
for
Wash-
ington

In February, 1861, Lincoln said good-by to the people of Springfield, and started for Washington to take his seat as President. The people were bound to see him and hear his voice and shake his hand. Along the route there were cheers, bonfires, and military parades with miles of marching men. At Philadelphia, he raised a flag over Independence Hall. He made a touching speech in regard to the men of the Revolution who had sat in that hall, and pledged himself to abide by the principles of the Declaration of Independence.

At Inde-
pendence
Hall

On March 4, with soldiers guarding the capitol, Lincoln read his inaugural address and took the oath of office which all Presidents before him had taken. This speech was listened to with the greatest interest. It was now plain to everybody that Lincoln meant to fight, if fighting were necessary to save the Union.

The in-
augura-
tion

In April Confederates fired on Fort Sumter in Charleston Harbor, South Carolina. After awful hardships, Colonel Anderson and his men surrendered the fort to the Confederate troops.

Surrender of Fort Sumter

Lincoln immediately sent forth the call for seventy-five thousand men. War had come—civil war, the most dreadful kind of war. Four more states left the Union, and joined the "Confederate States." But the slave states of Maryland, Kentucky, and Missouri remained with the Union. Lincoln made it a war to save the Union and not a war to get rid of slavery. The great majority at the North were willing to fight for the Union which Jackson, Webster, and Clay had done so much to save.

Call for seventy-five thousand men

But the slavery question would keep coming up. The Confederates used the slaves to build forts, cook for the army, and to do other work. Thus the slave took the place of the white soldier. Other slaves raised food supplies and cared for the women. In this way the slaves were constantly being used to help fight against the Union.



The slavery question comes up

ABRAHAM LINCOLN

From a rare photograph taken by Alexander Hesler in Chicago, 1860, and loaned by the Chicago Photogravure Company, who own the original

The time had come to destroy slavery. Lincoln now saw that by freeing the slaves he could strike a heavy blow at the Confederacy. So as Commander-in-chief of the Union armies, he issued the Proclamation of Emancipation January 1, 1863.

The Emancipation Proclamation

The war, however, continued more than two years longer. The long list of dead and wounded on both sides saddened Lincoln. Day by day the lines in his kindly face grew deeper.

Finally the news came that General Grant had hammered General Lee's lines to pieces, and that Jefferson Davis and his cabinet were leaving Richmond, the capital of the Confederacy.

Early in April President Lincoln went to visit Richmond. He saw a city on fire, and a mob breaking into houses.

Grant was pursuing Lee's army. He overtook it, and on April 8 offered terms of surrender. Lee accepted. The President's heart was filled with gratitude that no more lives were to be sacrificed on either side.

163. President Lincoln Assassinated.

The evening of April 14, 1865, Lincoln went to Ford's Theater in Washington to rest his body and mind. As he sat in a box, John Wilkes Booth, an actor, shot him in the back of the head. Booth sprang upon the stage, flourished his revolver, and escaped.

Abraham Lincoln died the next day. Thus the nation lost a great man. He was truly a man "with malice toward none, with charity for all."



THE STATUE OF ABRAHAM LINCOLN
IN LINCOLN PARK, CHICAGO
By Augustus St. Gaudens

Many monuments have been built to honor the name of this great man. The most unique one is in Edinburgh, Scotland—it is a life size statue with one hand holding the Emancipation Proclamation and with the other striking the chains from a half-rising slave. The largest memorial is at Springfield, Illinois, the home of Lincoln and where he lies buried. One of the most celebrated is the St. Gaudens statue in Lincoln Park, Chicago.

Lincoln
visits
Rich-
mond

Lee sur-
renders
to Grant

Lincoln
assassin-
ated

Died in
Wash-
ington
April 15,
1865

Monu-
ments to
Lincoln

SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

The Leading Facts. 1. Lincoln, born of poor parents in the state of Kentucky, went over to Indiana at seven years of age. 2. Helped build a cabin and clear the forest and went hunting. 3. Lincoln lost his mother, and his father married again. 4. His stepmother took good care of Abe and his sister. 5. Lincoln had little schooling, but read a few books very thoroughly. 6. He was very powerful at twenty-one and had read so much that he could "spell down" the whole country. 7. The family moved to Illinois, and Abe was hired to take a flatboat down the Mississippi. 8. He saw a slave auction at New Orleans. 9. Lincoln was elected captain in the Black Hawk War; elected to the legislature for four terms. 10. He studied law and was elected to Congress. 11. Attacked Douglas for the Kansas-Nebraska Bill. 12. Lincoln and Douglas held joint debates. 13. Nominated for the presidency by the Republicans in convention at Chicago. 14. Douglas displeased the South and the Democratic Party was split. 15. Lincoln was elected President, the South seceded, and Douglas stood by the Union. 16. Lincoln issued the Emancipation Proclamation. 17. Grant defeated Lee, and Lee surrendered. 18. Lincoln visited Richmond after its fall, returned to Washington, and was assassinated.

Study Questions. 1. Describe Lincoln's early surroundings. 2. Picture Abe and his sister. 3. How did Abe help get their meat? 4. What did he owe to his mother? 5. What did Abe's new mother do for him? 6. What books did Abe read and how did he read them? 7. Why was Abe liked in the family? 8. How tall was Lincoln? How old was he when the family started for Illinois? 9. What did he do soon after going to Illinois? 10. What did he see in New Orleans that was new to him? 11. Prove Lincoln was honest. 12. Prove that the men of the country-side had confidence in Lincoln. 13. How old was Lincoln when he ran for the legislature? 14. Tell the story of Lincoln's experiences in running for the legislature. 15. What was his success as a lawyer? 16. Why did Lincoln love public speaking? 17. Why was Lincoln not elected to Congress again? 18. How did Lincoln become the champion speaker against Douglas? 19. What was the effect of the debate? 20. What new declaration did Lincoln make in his Springfield speech? 21. Why did Lincoln challenge Douglas? 22. How did Lincoln become widely known? 23. What was the fatal question put to Douglas by Lincoln? 24. To what rights did Lincoln say the black man is entitled? 25. Picture the scene in the state convention of 1860. 26. What was the effect of the Lincoln-Douglas debates on the Democratic Party? 27. Why did this result in Lincoln's election to the

presidency? 28. Give an account of the demonstrations made in honor of Lincoln. 29. Who fired the first shot in the Civil War, and where? 30. How many slave states remained loyal to the Union? 31. What kind of a war did Lincoln make of the Civil War? 32. Why would the question of slavery keep coming up? 33. How did the Proclamation of Emancipation affect the strength of the Confederates? 34. Tell the story of his visit to Richmond. 35. What did Lincoln think of when Lee surrendered? 36. Tell the story of Lincoln's assassination. 37. How did the nation feel over Lincoln's death? 38. How has he been honored? 39. Describe the statue in Edinburgh. 40. Where was Lincoln buried?

Suggested Readings. ABRAHAM LINCOLN: Baldwin, *Four Great Americans*, 187-246; McMurry, *Pioneers of the Mississippi Valley*, 170-184; Wright, *Children's Stories of American Progress*, 159-178, 299-327; Brooks, *Century Book of Famous Americans*, 193-210; Hart and Stevens, *Romance of the Civil War*, 1-112; Bolton, *Lives of Poor Boys Who Became Famous*, 342-367; Mabie, *Heroes Every Child Should Know*, 309-319; Nicolay, *Boys' Life of Abraham Lincoln*; Coffin, *Abraham Lincoln*; Southworth, *Builders of Our Country*, Vol. II, 186-217.

THE MAN WHO LED THE CONFEDERATE ARMIES

ROBERT EDWARD LEE

Robert
E. Lee
1807

164. The Great General of the Confederacy. Robert E. Lee was born in Virginia in 1807, with the best blood of the Cavaliers in his veins. His father was "Light Horse Harry" Lee, the famous cavalryman of the Revolution.

Wins
honor at
West
Point

As young Lee grew up, he followed in the footsteps of his great father. He went to school at Alexandria, George Washington's old town, and prepared for West Point. He was a cadet officer at West Point, and during the last year held the rank of honor in the corps. After graduation he was given a commission in the United States Engineer Corps.

While yet a boy he visited Arlington, across the Potomac from Washington, the home of George Washington Parke Custis. Here

he played with Mary Custis. The playmate of his childhood became his wife two years after Lee left West Point. In the course of time, Arlington, a beautiful home, became his own.

**Marries
the play-
mate of
his child-
hood**

When he left West Point, Lee was a second lieutenant. Later he was made a first lieutenant, and then promoted to be captain, and given charge of a company.



ARLINGTON HOUSE, THE HOME OF GENERAL LEE

In the war with Mexico, he earned honor and fame. He was rapidly promoted from captain to major, from major to lieutenant-colonel, and from lieutenant-colonel to colonel.

**Wins
fame in
Mexico**

When the Mexican war was over, and peace had come, Lee was given charge of the Academy at West Point. While there he made improvements in the discipline and in the course of study of that famous military school.

**In charge
at West
Point**

After three years, Lee resigned his position at West Point and went to fight the Indians on the frontier. During this time the agitation over slavery began to enter even the army. Colonel Lee believed in the Union, and was opposed to secession.

But when Virginia followed other slave states out of the Union and into the Confederacy, Lee went with his native state. Before he took this step, President Lincoln sent a friend to offer him a promotion in the army, if he would fight for the Union. Lee replied: "How could I take part against my native state, or raise my hand against my relatives, my children, and my home?"

**Lee goes
with his
state**

Virginia put him at the head of her troops, and when she joined the Confederacy, he was made one of her generals. Early in 1862

Defends
Rich-
mond

he was made military adviser to the Confederate President, Jefferson Davis, but when General Joseph E. Johnston was wounded at the battle of Fair Oaks, General Lee was given charge of the army defending Richmond.

Compels
McClel-
lan to
retreat

165. Lee Wins Victory After Victory. The change was quickly seen. Although McClellan, the Union general, had a much larger army, Lee immediately attacked it in a seven days' battle, compelling McClellan to retreat. The attack upon Richmond had failed.

Defeats
General
Pope

Lee turned, and hurled his army with great fury against another Northern general, Pope, defeated him, and threatened Washington. The excitement in the capital was great.

Invades
Maryland

Flushed with victory, General Lee decided to lead his army into Maryland. Supplies for the army were abundant. But the people of Maryland did not join his army as he had expected. The bloody battle of Antietam was the result of this invasion.

Defeats
Union
Army at
Freder-
icksburg
and
Chancel-
lorsville

General Lee slowly withdrew his troops across the Potomac into Virginia.

In December, he fought and defeated the Union army at Fredericksburg. Early in the year 1863 Lee again defeated the Union forces, with great slaughter, at Chancellorsville.



LEE'S ARMY ON THE MARCH TO INVADE MARYLAND

Here Lee lost his most brilliant and dashing general, "Stonewall" Jackson, who was killed accidentally by his own troops.



PICKETT'S CHARGE AT GETTYSBURG

This heroic assault marked the turn of the Confederate tide

After resting his troops and gathering reinforcements, Lee made a dash through Maryland into Pennsylvania. Washington and the North were full of excitement, but a great Union army was now hurrying to meet him.

Invades
the
North

166. The Battle of Gettysburg. The two armies met at Gettysburg, and there for three days was fought the greatest battle of the Civil War. On the last day occurred Pickett's famous charge. Fifteen thousand Southern veterans, led by General George E. Pickett, with bayonets gleaming, charged across the valley—more than a mile in width—right up to the muzzle of the Union guns. The slaughter was fearful. Finally the Confederates retreated. Lee's army was defeated. More than fifty thousand men, on both sides, were killed, wounded, and missing at Gettysburg.

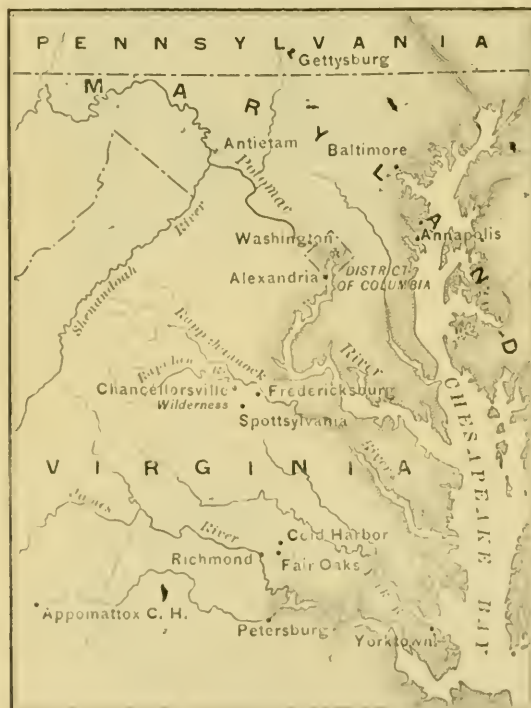
Greatest
battle of
the war

Pickett's
charge

The loss

Lee never
invades
again

167. Facing a Powerful Army. General Lee crossed the Potomac, and never again invaded the North. Little was done until General Grant, in 1864, took command of all the Union forces, which now numbered nearly one hundred twenty thousand soldiers. Against this powerful army General Lee could oppose not more than seventy thousand.



SCENE OF THE WAR AROUND WASHINGTON AND RICHMOND

Grant
plunges
into the
"Wilderness"

In May, 1864, the Union troops crossed the Rapidan near Chancellorsville, and entered the "Wilderness." Here in this thicket of underbrush the armies fought a terrible two days' battle. Lee was a match for Grant under these conditions, for the number of soldiers did not count much in such a place.

Lee
meets
Grant at
Spottsylvania
and Cold
Harbor

Lee faced the Union troops at Spottsylvania, and another two days' fight occurred. Thirty-six thousand were dead, wounded, and missing.

As a result of this battle, General Lee again faced Grant's troops at Cold Harbor, where McClellan had been defeated two years before.

After the struggle was over, twelve thousand Union men lay dead and wounded upon the field of battle. Lee was fighting behind breastworks, and Grant's men in the open field.

The
frightful
slaughter

Suddenly Lee received dispatches to move his troops to Petersburg. Soon Grant was there thundering at the gates. Lee, with his army behind fortifications, held him at bay until the spring of 1865.

Peters-
burg

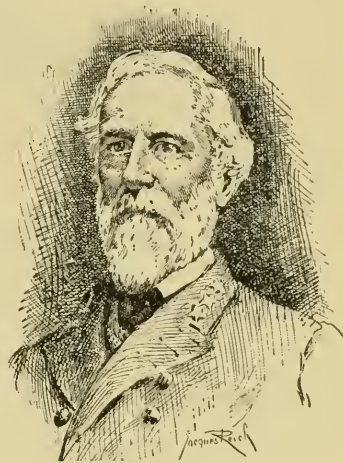
168. The Waning of the Confederacy.

General Lee's troops were wearing out. There were no more to take their places. Food and clothing became scarce. So many of the Confederate states had been overrun by the Union troops that supplies of all kinds were hard to get. Before this, Southern women had been busy knitting socks and preparing other supplies for the army, but now it was hard to find material for supplies.

In the spring, Lee told Jefferson Davis that Richmond would have to fall, and that all the papers and documents would have to be removed. General Lee was planning to take his army to Danville, Virginia, where he could unite with the army of General Joseph E. Johnston. With the two armies, it was planned to strike General Sherman before Grant's army could come to his aid.

Davis and his cabinet left Richmond at night, and got safely away. General Lee could not move so quickly. He was able to reach Appomattox Court House, and there he found his way blocked by General Sheridan and his cavalry. There was now no reason for shedding any more blood. The Confederacy was doomed.

In the spring of 1865 General Lee received a letter from General Grant, asking that further fighting cease, and that arrangements be made for surrender. The two generals met at a farmhouse,



ROBERT EDWARD LEE

From a portrait painted by Browne, now in the Westmoreland Club, Richmond, Virginia

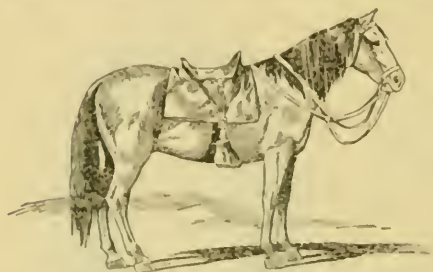
Supplies
hard to
get

Sheridan
blocks
the way

The Con-
federacy
doomed

Terms of
surrender

and agreed upon terms. General Grant permitted the officers and men to take their horses home "to do their spring plowing."



"TRAVELER," GENERAL LEE'S HORSE
*This famous war horse carried his master
through many a hard-fought battle,
escaping unharmed*

It was a trying time for General Lee. He went back "to break the sad news to the brave troops he had so long commanded . . . They pressed up to him, anxious to touch his person or even his horse." With a voice filled with emotion, he said to his soldiers: "We have fought through the war together;

I have done the best I could for you. My heart is too full to say more!" And then, in silence, he rode on to his headquarters near by and passed alone into his tent.

Morning brought the final parting with his loyal army. Surrounded by a throng of sorrowing soldiers, General Lee mounted his faithful iron gray horse, "Traveler," then, the last sad farewells said, rode slowly away to his home in Richmond.

President
of Wash-
ington
College

In a short time, General Lee was elected president of Washington College, now Washington and Lee University, at Lexington, Virginia. Many offers of help came to him at this time, but he declined them all. Other offers came to him to engage in business and make a fortune, but he refused them all, preferring his quiet duties as a college president.

He died
in 1870

General Lee died in Lexington in 1870. A monument to the memory of this great man has been erected in Richmond, and likewise one in Lexington. Since the close of the Civil War General Lee's fame as a noble man and a great soldier has grown steadily.

SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

The Leading Facts. 1. Robert E. Lee was born in Virginia; went to school at Alexandria. 2. Went to West Point, won honors, and was made second lieutenant. 3. Lee was in the Mexican War, and won praise from General Scott; took charge of West Point. 4. Followed Virginia into secession and was given command of her troops. 5. Given charge of the army defending Richmond, and began the seven days' fighting. 6. Defeated General Pope, invaded Maryland, and fought the battle of Antietam. 7. General Lee won the battles of Fredericksburg and Chancellorsville, but failed at Gettysburg. 8. Defended Richmond against Grant for nearly a year. 9. Lee accepted Grant's terms at Appomattox. 10. Accepted the presidency of Washington College.

Study Questions. 1. What do you know of "Light Horse Harry"? 2. Tell the story of young Lee until he entered West Point. 3. Tell of his promotion after leaving West Point. 4. What did Lee do for West Point? 5. Why did Lincoln think Lee would accept a promotion in the Union Army? 6. What was Lee's reply? 7. What positions had he held when he became head at Fair Oaks? 8. What two victories led Lee to invade Maryland and what great battle was fought? Have you heard of this battle before? 9. What two victories led Lee to invade Pennsylvania? 10. Tell the story of Gettysburg. 11. What was the effect on Lee's army? 12. How could 70,000 men hold 120,000 at bay? 13. Tell the story of Lee's fighting in the Wilderness. 14. Picture the condition of Lee's army in the spring of 1865. 15. What was Lee's plan after Richmond fell? 16. Why did he not carry out this plan? 17. Why did Lee's men need their horses? 18. Picture General Lee's farewell to his soldiers. 19. Tell the story of Lee after the war ceased.

Suggested Readings. ROBERT E. LEE: Hale, *Stories of War*, 61-73, 119-149; Mabie, *Heroes Every Child Should Know*, 289-308; Magill, *Stories from Virginia History*, 162-172.

OTHER HEROES OF THE CIVIL WAR

ULYSSES S. GRANT

169. Grant, the Great Union General. Next to Lincoln, the man who did most toward saving the Union was Ulysses S. Grant. When the war began he was a clerk in a small city of Illinois. Four years later he had captured Lee's great and gallant army and had brought the Civil War to an end.

Grant was called "the silent soldier." He spoke little and avoided everything showy. But he was cool and brave and fought

most stubbornly. At Vicksburg he first showed the world that he was a great soldier. At the start of this campaign Grant's men lay across the river from Vicksburg in the swamps. They were far away from other northern troops and much weaker than the Confederates. Month after month Grant failed in his attempt to seize Vicksburg.

Every one thought that he should withdraw. But, on the contrary, he decided to cross the river to the Confederate side, leaving his supplies behind. Carrying only its am-



ULYSSES S. GRANT

*From a photograph taken in 1866 by
F. Gutekunst, Philadelphia*

muniton, his army marched against the southern troops. Grant saw that if the various bodies of Confederates should join against him, he would be crushed. Accordingly he rushed his troops from one battle to another, defeating the various Confederate forces before they could unite, and driving them back to Vicksburg.

Just as one of these battles began an officer rode into camp with orders for Grant to withdraw his troops and march away from Vicksburg. Grant listened to the officer and then rode off to the fight with his cheering men. He said afterwards: "I saw no more of the officer; I think not even to this day." He had decided to take Vicksburg, and not even orders to the contrary could turn him away.

He stayed before Vicksburg until that city fell. Lincoln had need of such a man, and soon placed him over the whole Union

Grant
besieges
Vicks-
burg

Wins
many
battles
before
the
city

army. In one of his great campaigns, Grant said: "I propose to fight it out along this line if it takes all summer." And he did "fight it out" through many fierce battles until the southern armies were worn out and peace was restored.

In
command
of the
whole
Union
army

"STONEWALL" JACKSON

170. A Confederate General, who would not yield. "Stonewall"

Jackson won his name at Bull Run, the first battle of the Civil War. The Confederate troops were retreating, when one of their generals saw that Jackson and his men still held their ground. He shouted: "Look at Jackson's brigade! There it stands like a stone wall!" Jackson's example gave fresh courage to the wavering troops. They rallied and drove the Union forces from the field. From that day on the gallant officer was known as "Stonewall" Jackson.



Jackson's
bravery
at the
battle
of
Bull
Run

THOMAS JONATHAN ("STONE-
WALL") JACKSON

He was one of the most brilliant and successful generals of the war. Of his many fierce attacks none was better carried out than his last one at the battle of Chancellorsville. Here Lee was opposed by a much larger Union army under Hooker. While a part of the Confederate forces held their position in front of the Union troops, Jackson took about 20,000 men and quietly slipped away. Through the dense forest they marched around the flank of the Union army. They moved so silently that the northern men knew nothing of danger until rabbits and deer fled out of the woods through which Jackson's men were coming. Before the

*From a war-time photograph,
taken on the field by Matthew B.
Brady, in the collection of the War
Department, Washington, D. C.*

Surprises
and
defeats
the
Union
soldiers

Union troops could form, the soldiers in gray were upon them like a whirlwind. Jackson himself led his men, cheering them on. The battle resulted in a great victory for the Confederates.

In the evening Jackson was shot accidentally by his own men. His first thought was of the battle, and he said: "You must hold your ground." As he was dying, he still thought he was leading his men. His last words were: "Let us cross over the river and rest in peace."

Killed
by
his
own
men



DAVID GLASCOE FARRAGUT

From an engraving made by the Bureau of Engraving and Printing, Washington, D. C., after a photograph by Rockwood, New York

Farragut
attacks
Mobile

of the Confederates. To one of these the old sailor answered: "I mean to be whipped or to whip the enemy, not to be scared to death." Early one morning he gave the word for the attack. Slowly his ships approached the hostile forts. Farragut himself climbed into the rigging, better to observe the fight. Suddenly his leading ship began to rock from side to side and all at once sank before his horrified eyes. A hidden torpedo had exploded under the ship. How many more of these deadly bodies were in the channel ahead no one knew. One of the other ships faltered at

Scorns
danger
from
torpedoes

DAVID GLASCOE FARRAGUT

171. A Brave Union Admiral.

David Farragut was the first man in the history of our country to be made admiral. Although he was born in the South, when war broke out he supported the Union.

His greatest victory was at Mobile Bay. While Farragut and his fleet lay before Mobile he heard many warnings as to the strength

the sight of this disaster. Farragut ordered it ahead. Warned that the channel was full of torpedoes, he sent his own ship into the lead with the order: "Full speed ahead." It is said the torpedoes scraped the bottom of the ship, but none exploded. The rest of the boats followed their brave leader. Soon the entire Confederate fleet was captured or destroyed. With the fall of Mobile Bay the South lost its last port. From this time on it was cut off completely from the outside world.

The
Confed-
erate
fleet
captured

SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

The Leading Facts. 1. When the Civil War broke out, Grant was a clerk in a small town in Illinois. 2. Called "the silent soldier." 3. Besieged Vicksburg for many months, fighting many battles. 4. Defeated the Confederates by strategy and took Vicksburg. 5. Made commander-in-chief of the Union army. 6. Since the day of the battle of Bull Run, where Jackson's brigade held its ground against the Union soldiers and turned a rout into a victory, Jackson was known as "Stonewall" Jackson. 7. Jackson surprised the Union soldiers at Chancellorsville, and defeated them. 8. Accidentally shot by his own men in the evening after the battle. 9. Farragut won the battle of Mobile Bay, thus completing the blockade of the Confederate ports.

Study Questions. 1. What was Grant doing when war broke out? 2. Where did he first distinguish himself as a soldier? 3. Tell how he defeated the Confederates at Vicksburg. 4. What was his reward? 5. Where and how did "Stonewall" Jackson win his title? 6. Tell the story of Chancellorsville and of Jackson's death. 7. Tell the story of Farragut's attack on Mobile. 8. What was the effect of the fall of Mobile Bay?

Suggested Readings. ULYSSES S. GRANT: Burton, *Four American Patriots*, 195-254; Brooks, *Century Book of Famous Americans*, 181-191; Hart and Stevens, *Romance of the Civil War*, 179-183; Hale, *Stories of War*, 21-29, 74-91, 92-118, 168-187, 226-264; Bolton, *Famous American Statesmen*, 307-360.

STONEWALL JACKSON: Addey, *Stonewall Jackson*, 13-30, 31-93, 94-133, 154-240.

DAVID G. FARRAGUT: Bolton, *Lives of Poor Boys Who Have Become Famous*, 219-237; Mahan, *Admiral Farragut*, 1-306.

RESOURCES AND INDUSTRIES OF OUR COUNTRY

HOW FARM AND FACTORY HELPED BUILD THE NATION

172. Toilers in Fields, and Forests, and Cities. The men of whom you have read, lived and worked to make our country great and strong. But we have become a great country not merely because of great statesmen and soldiers like the heroes of this book. There have been many millions of men at work in field and forest, in mine and factory, who have contributed as much and more to the development of our land. These are the men who have cleared the farms, built the towns, laid the railroads, and made possible our large industries.

173. Cotton Fields and Cotton Factories. Since the days of Eli Whitney cotton has been grown in all the southern states from Virginia westward to Texas, and from the Gulf of Mexico north to Missouri. More than one half of all the cotton in the world is grown in southern United States.

A field of growing cotton is very picturesque. Its culture employs many laborers. The number of laborers needed, however, is not the same throughout the year. In the fall when the bolls ripen, all hands, large and small, turn to cotton picking. This work takes several months. The picked cotton is put through a gin which is still built along the lines of Whitney's invention. The cleaned cotton is pressed into large bales and is then ready for market.

The cotton seed goes to one mill, the cotton to another. For many years the seed was wasted. Farmers burned it or threw it away. But now in all parts of the South great mills crush the seed and make from it a valuable oil. What is left is cotton-seed cake, and is bought eagerly by cattle growers everywhere.

Men
in
fields
and
forests

The great
cotton
crop
of the
southern
states

Cotton-
seed
oil

Only a few years ago almost all the cotton grown in the South was shipped away, either to Europe or to New England. In Massachusetts and Rhode Island cotton mills employ more people than any other industry, and great cities are supported almost entirely by manufacturing cotton goods. Now the South has also discovered that it can spin and weave its cotton at home. About many of its waterfalls is heard the hum of busy cotton mills. New cities are growing up, and prosperity has returned to the South.

Cotton
Mills
in the
South

174. The Grain that Feeds the Nation. From the days of the early colonists, wheat has been one of the most valuable crops produced in this country. In the states east of the Mississippi River the farmers have long raised it in connection with a variety of other crops. But as the newer lands west of this river were taken up, the settlers discovered that in that region wheat yielded more abundantly than any other crop. From Kansas northward to Minnesota and western Canada lies a broad stretch of land which has cool spring weather and a light rainfall. This is the climate best suited to wheat, and here has developed the great wheat belt of America.

Wheat
belt
west
of the
Missis-
sippi

In this region there are vast wheat fields almost everywhere, stretching farther than the eye can see over the level surface. Most of the farms are very large, some of them including many thousands of acres. The work on these places is done with the most modern machines. Traction engines are used to pull the great plows, and in harvest time an army of binders reaps the golden grain.

Traction
engines

With the aid of this machinery a few people can cultivate a great many acres. As a result, the country is thinly settled. The towns are few and far between. In most of them the principal

Grain
elevators

building is the grain elevator, which holds the grain until it is ready to be shipped.

Flour
mills

From the elevators the wheat goes to the flour mills. The largest of these are in Minneapolis, in the eastern part of the wheat belt. The flour in its turn goes to feed the many millions of people in all parts of the country, especially those who work in the great factories and commercial houses of the East.

Grain
exports
decrease

For many years this country grew much more wheat than we needed, and we shipped great quantities to Europe. But each year our growing population needs more food, and our exports of this grain decrease steadily. Even now our farms grow but little more of this grain than is needed at home, and the time is almost at hand when we shall no longer send any of it abroad.

Texas
and
Iowa
lead

175. Cattle Raising and Meat Packing. Cattle raising, like wheat farming, is principally an industry of the West. As late as 1850 the states which raised the most cattle lay along the Atlantic coast. But to-day Texas and Iowa are in the lead and Illinois, Kansas, and Nebraska follow closely.

Cattle
ranches
of the
West

As the eastern states became peopled more densely, cattle grazing was forced west. The cattle pastures were broken up into fields. The prairies of Illinois and Iowa became a vast cornfield. Eastern Kansas and Nebraska were turned into corn and wheat farms. Always the cattle had to give way to the grain. At last the farmers came to a strip of country where the rainfall was not enough to make grain growing profitable. This comparatively narrow strip stretches north in an irregular area of plains from western Texas to Montana. This region grows fine grass and has become the great grazing country of the United States. Here vast herds of cattle still roam on large ranches and are cared for by cowboys.

East of the ranch country lies the corn belt, in which Illinois

and Iowa are the leading states. Cattle fatten better on corn than on any other food, and the meat of corn-fed stock brings the best prices. The corn states have therefore taken up the raising and fattening of cattle on a tremendous scale. For its size Iowa is the greatest cattle state. When western cattle leave the ranch they are generally not very heavy. Thousands of carloads are shipped into the corn country each year, there to be fattened before going to the packing houses.

Corn-fed
cattle

The largest meat-packing plants are located in the corn belt at Chicago, Kansas City, Omaha, and other cities. To-day meat packing is the greatest business of Chicago and many other large cities. A generation ago it had scarcely begun. But the packers learned to can meat, to use ice for cold storage, and, most important of all, the refrigerator car was invented. By this last discovery they became able to ship meat almost everywhere. Where before they had to sell their goods at home, now they have the world as a market. A steer raised on the western prairies may now be fattened for market in Illinois, slaughtered in Chicago, and served in New York, or sent to England or even to the Orient.

Invention
of
refrigerator
cars

MINES, MINING, AND MANUFACTURES

176. Coal and Iron. Next to the great farm crops, coal and iron are the most valuable products of our country. The coal that is mined in one year is worth five times as much as the gold and silver combined. Our iron mines yield as much wealth in one year as the gold mines do in three. Gold and silver are luxuries without which we could get along, but our great factories, railroads, and steamship lines could not exist without an abundance of iron and coal.

Great
value
of coal
and iron

A hundred years ago there was almost no coal mined in this

Hard
coal in
Penn-
sylvania

country. Now we use more of it than any other land, and almost a million men make a living by mining it. At first most of the coal produced was the hard anthracite of eastern Pennsylvania. But this hard coal is found only in one small part of Pennsylvania, whereas great beds of soft coal stretch from Pennsylvania west to Washington. At present there is far more soft coal used than anthracite. Pennsylvania is the leading state in the production of both hard and soft coal, but West Virginia, Illinois, and Ohio, are also great coal states. Generally where there are coal mines, factories have been built, because most of them need a great deal of coal for fuel.

Factories
need coal

Largest
iron-ore
deposits
in the
world

Iron was first worked by the colonists in the bogs of New England. Iron mining, however, did not become a great industry until the latter part of the last century. In that period the great iron "ranges" of Lake Superior were opened up. These are the largest deposits of iron ore in the world. Most of the ore lies in Minnesota. Here, far up in the northern woods, thousands of men are blasting or digging out the red and rusty ore. Huge steam-shovels load a car in a few minutes, and in a short while a trainload of ore is on its way to Duluth or Superior. From there it is carried by steamer east, most likely to one of the Ohio towns on Lake Erie. Here much of the ore is again loaded into cars and hauled to the Pittsburgh region, there to be smelted.

Carried
to the
smelters

Coal and
iron
support
great in-
dustries

Pittsburgh has become the greatest iron and steel center of America. Enormous quantities of coal are mined here and used for smelting the iron ore that is shipped in. More people of western Pennsylvania and eastern Ohio make a living by mining coal and making steel and iron than anywhere else in America. Great blast furnaces melt the iron ore. Steel works turn out huge quantities of rail and sheet steel. Foundries make cast-iron

products of all kinds. Vast shops are busily engaged in producing locomotives and machines of endless variety. Everywhere in this region are smoking chimneys and busy industrial plants, all supported by coal and iron.

SUGGESTIONS INTENDED TO HELP THE PUPIL

The Leading Facts. 1. The toilers in forest, mine, and factory contributed to the development of our land. 2. Cotton is grown in all the southern states as far west as Texas. 3. A valuable oil is made from the cotton seed. 4. The climate west of the Mississippi best suited to the raising of wheat. 5. The work of cultivating and harvesting is done by machines. 6. Wheat is sent to the flour mills, the largest of which are in Minneapolis. 7. Exports of wheat decreasing. 8. Texas and Iowa the leading cattle-raising states. 9. Cattle from the ranches are fed on corn in the corn states, principally Iowa and Illinois. 10. The refrigerator car permitted the shipment of meat to all the world. 11. Coal and iron mined in America worth many times more than the gold and silver. 12. Hard coal mined in Pennsylvania. 13. The Lake Superior iron ranges the greatest in the world. 14. Pittsburgh is the greatest iron and steel center of America.

Study Questions. 1. Describe the process of preparing cotton for the market. 2. What is done with the cotton seed? 3. What is the South preparing to do with the cotton crop? 4. Where is the wheat belt of America? 5. How is the wheat cultivated and harvested? 6. Describe the progress of the wheat from the field to its use as food. 7. What are the leading cattle-raising states? 8. Where and how are the herds fattened? 9. What was the effect of the invention of the refrigerator car? 10. How does the value of coal and iron mined in America compare with the gold and silver? 11. Where is anthracite coal mined? 12. Where was iron first mined? 13. Where is the largest deposit in the world? 14. Where is the great iron and steel center of America? 15. Tell of some of the things for which iron is used.

Suggested Readings. INDUSTRIES: Fairbanks: *The Western United States*, 215-290; Brooks, *The Story of Cotton*; Shillig, *The Four Wonders (Cotton, Wool, Linen, and Silk)*; Brooks, *The Story of Corn*.

THE INDEX

- ABOLITIONISTS**, 282, 283, 290.
- Adams, John**, sent to First Continental Congress, 151; his motion at Second Continental Congress made Washington general of American troops, 115, 116, 155, 156; appointed to help draw up Declaration of Independence, 213; his presidential receptions, 216; died, 218.
- Adams, Samuel**, 146-156; portrait of, 147; early turns to politics, 147; leads movement against Stamp Act, 147, 148; forms "Sons of Liberty Society," 148; opposes the tea tax, 148; writes famous circular letter, 148; drives British troops out of Boston, 149; his connection with Boston Tea Party, 114, 150, 151; sends Paul Revere to tell the story, 151; goes to First Continental Congress, 151; strange visitors, 152; could not be bribed by king's officers, 152; makes new and noble friends, 143, 152; forms companies of minutemen, 153; goes to Second Continental Congress, 155, 156; works for Declaration of Independence, 156; made Governor of Massachusetts, 156.
- "Agamemnon," The, 246.
- Alamo**, capture of the, 256, 257, 259.
- Alden, John**, 64.
- Algonquin Indians**, 44-46.
- "Alliance," The, 177.
- Altamaha River**, colony on, 91, 92.
- American River**, 265.
- Amerigo Vespucci**, see **Vespucci, Amerigo**.
- Anderson, Colonel**, 295.
- Anthracite coal**, 314.
- Antietam**, battle of, 300.
- Appomattox Court House**, Lee's surrender at, 303, 304.
- Arizona**, first traversed by Coronado, 22.
- Arlington**, home of General Lee, 298, 299.
- "Ashland," Clay's home, 270, 274.
- Atlantic Cable**, 245, 247.
- BALL, Mary**, mother of Washington, 102, 103.
- Baltimore & Ohio Railroad**, started, 240.
- Barlow, Captain**, 40.
- Barry, John**, 179-183; early life, 179; master of merchant ship, 179; Congress makes him captain of the "Lexington," 180; exploit on the Delaware, 180, 181; British try to bribe him, 181; commands the "Alliance," 181; captures many vessels, 181, 182; first commodore of American navy, 182, 183; portrait of, 182.
- Baxter**, —, 242.
- Bell**, —, invents telephone, 244.
- Benton, Jessie**, 261.
- Benton, Thomas H.**, 228, 231, 232, 261.
- Blackbeard the Pirate**, 62.
- Black Hawk War**, 289, 290.
- Blockade of Southern ports**, 309.
- "Bon Homme Richard," The, 173-175.
- Boone, Daniel**, 185-191; early life, 185; crosses the mountains, 185; goes to Kentucky, 186; dangers of pioneer life, 186, 187; goes for family, 187; blazes famous "Wilderness Road," 188; builds Fort Boonesboro, 188; trouble with Indians, 188-191; taken prisoner and adopted, 190, escapes, 190; siege of Boonesboro, 190, 191; moves to Missouri, 191; portrait of, 191.
- Boonesboro, Fort**, 188-191.
- Booth, John Wilkes**, 296.
- Boston**, settled, 71, 72; British soldiers in, 114, 115, 149, 151; Washington takes command at, 116, 117.
- Boston Port Bill**, 114, 151.
- "Boston Tea Party," 143, 150, 151.
- Boulton**, —, inventor, 236.
- Bowie, Colonel**, 256.
- Braddock, General**, 109, 110; defeat and death, 109, 110.
- Bradford, William**, 63, 64, 66, 70.
- Brandywine**, battle of the, 121.
- Breckenridge, John C.**, 294.
- Brewster, William**, 63.
- Bridgewater, Duke of**, 235.
- Buchanan, President**, 246.
- Buffalo**, herds of, 22.
- Bull Run**, battle of, 307.
- Bunker Hill**, battle of, 117, 154, 155.
- Burgesses, House of**, 110, 112, 113, 139, 140, 142, 146, 211.
- Burgoyne, General**, 199, 269; compliments Morgan, 163.
- Burke, Edmund**, 142, 213.
- CABOT, John**, 30-33; statue of John and Sebastian, 31; born in Genoa, Italy, 30; his voyages, 31, 32; seeks India and discovers Labrador, 31; returns to England and is honored by king and people, 31, 32; on second voyage, coasts America to North Carolina, 32; on account of his discoveries England claims large part of North America, 32.
- Calhoun, John C.**, 280-284; portrait of, 280; early life, 280; in Congress, 280, 281; works hard for success of army in War of 1812, 281; made Secretary of War, 281; twice elected vice-president, 281; favors nullification, 281; opposes President Jackson in his fight against United States Bank, 231; opposes Abolitionists, 282, 283; made Secretary of State and annexes Texas, 283; opposes Compromise of 1850, 284; dies, 284.
- Camden**, defeat at, 160, 183.
- Campbell, Colonel**, 194, 196.
- Canada**, the French in, 44-48, 94-101.
- Cape Breton Island**, 31.
- Cape of Good Hope**, rounded by Drake, 35.
- Carpenter's Hall**, 143, 152.
- Carroll, Charles**, 240.
- Carson, Kit**, 261, 264, 265.
- Cartier, Jacques**, sailing up St. Lawrence to Montreal, takes possession of country for France, 44.
- Carver, John**, first Pilgrim governor, 65, 68.
- Cattle raising**, 312-313; pasture lands, 312; fattening, 313.
- Champlain, Lake**, discovered by Champlain, 45.
- Champlain, Samuel de**, 44-47; portrait of, 44;

- founds Quebec, 44; makes friends of Algonquin Indians, joins them in war against Iroquois, and thus makes Iroquois enemies of all Frenchmen, 44-47; discovers Lake Champlain, 45; dies at Quebec, 47.
 Chancellorsville, battle of, 300, 307.
 Charles I, of England, gave charter to Puritan colony, 71.
 Charles II, of England, and William Penn, 83; gives Pennsylvania to Penn, 84.
 Charleston, 90, 91; surrenders to Cornwallis, 160.
 Cherokee Indians, 92, 193, 254, 256.
 Circular Letter, Adams's, 148, 149, 152.
 Clark, George Rogers, 198-206; portrait of, 209; early life in Virginia, 198; becomes a leader in Kentucky, 199; sent to Virginia as lawmaker for Kentucky, 199; life at Harrodsburg, 199; receives aid from Patrick Henry to raise army, 199-200; campaign against old Vincennes, 200-204; the beginning of Louisville, 200; Clark surprises Kaskaskia, 201, 202; Cahokia and Vincennes surrender, 202; General Hamilton retakes Vincennes, 202; Clark builds the Willing, 202; and marches on Vincennes, 203, 204; great suffering of Clark's men, 204; retakes Vincennes, 204; Clark's great work unrewarded, 206; result of his work, 216.
 Clark, William, see Lewis and Clark Expedition. "Clark's Grant," 205.
 Clay, Henry, 231, 269-274; "mill boy of the Slashes," 269; studies law, 269, 270; goes to Lexington, 270; sent to United States Senate, 270; speaker of House of Representatives, 270; urges war in 1812, 270; Clay and the Treaty of Ghent, 271; Clay and the Missouri Compromise, 271; the Compromise tariff law, 271, 272; Clay, the Pacifist, 272; war with Mexico, 272, 273; retires to Ashland, 273; Clay recalled to Senate, Compromise of 1850, 273, 274, 295; ovation from the people, 274; dies in Washington, 274; portrait of, 272.
 "Clermont," the first successful steamboat, 237.
 Coal, mining of, 313, 314; soft coal, 314; hard coal, 314.
 Cold storage of meat, 313.
 Cold Harbor, battle of, 302.
 Colorado, Grand Canyon of, 28.
 "Columbia," The, 219.
 Columbia River, discovered by Captain Gray, 219; Lewis and Clark embark on, 221, 222.
 Columbus, Christopher, 2-15, 17, 27, 32; boyhood of, 3, 4; goes to Lisbon, 3, 4; plans new route to India, 4; unfairly treated by King of Portugal, 4; seeks aid of Spain, 5, 6; people thought him crazy, 6; begs bread for his son at monastery, 6; prior intercedes with Queen Isabella, 7; portrait of Columbus, 7; first voyage westward, 8-12; discovers the New World, 9; names the natives Indians, 12; honored on return to Spain, 13, 14; last voyages, 14, 15; death, 15; World's Columbian Exposition, 15; effect in England of Columbus's discoveries, 30.
 Committees on Correspondence," 212.
 Compromise of 1850, 273, 274, 278, 279, 284.
 Concord Bridge, battle at, 115, 154.
 Confederate States of America, formed, 294; Confederate President, 296, 300; capital, 296; Virginia joins Confederacy, 299; waning of Confederacy, 303; Confederacy doomed, 303.
 Congress, First Continental, 114, 143, 151-153; Second Continental, 115, 116, 119, 122, 124, 134, 135, 155, 156, 180, 213; disputes in, 215; Clay in, 270-274; Webster in, 276; Calhoun in, 280, 281.
 Constitution of the United States, 125, 127, 135, 136, 146.
 Cooper, Peter, 245.
 Corn Island, 200; beginning of Louisville, 200; Clark dies on, 206.
 Cornwallis, Lord, Washington outwits, 121; gains victories, 160, 161; Green turns tide against, 162; pursues Morgan, 165; loss at Guilford Court House, 166; caught at Yorktown, 166; orders Tarleton to catch Marion, 168; surrenders at Yorktown, 123, 181.
 Coronado, Francisco, 22, 23; searches for rich cities, 23; discovers Grand Canyon of the Colorado, 23; finds buffalo, 23; finding no rich cities, returns home, 23.
 Cortés, Hernando, 17-21, 22, 25, 33; invades Mexico, 17; sinks his ships, 17; armor of Cortés, 17; attacks the Indians, 18; takes Mexican capital, 18, 19; puts Montezuma to death, 19; conquers Mexico, 20; visits Spain, 20; shares Columbus's fate, 21; portrait of Cortés, 19.
 Cotton, raising, in the South, 208, 310; manufacture of cloth, 311; cotton-seed oil, 310.
 Cotton gin, invention of, 208-209.
 Cowpens, battle of the, 163-165.
 "Cradle of Liberty," 149.
 Creek Indians, 92, 93, 228.
 Crèvecoeur, Fort, built, 97.
 "Croatoan," 41.
 Crockett, Davy, at the Alamo, 256-258, 259; boyhood days, 258; enlisted under Jackson, 259; elected to Congress, 259; fights for Texas at the Alamo, 259; dies, 259.
 Cuba, discovered by Columbus, 11.
 Cumberland Gap, 239.
 Custis, George Washington Parke, 298.
 Custis, Martha, 111.
 Custis, Mary, 299.
 Cuzco, where Pizarro found fabulous riches, 22.
 DA GAMA, Vasco, rounds Africa, 26.
 Dare, Virginia, first white child of English parents born in America, 41.
 Davis, Jefferson, president of Confederacy, 296, 300, 303.
 Declaration of Independence, made, 156, 240; Samuel Adams worked for, 156, 240; Franklin appointed to help write, 135, 136; Jefferson, author of, 210, 213, 218.
 De Kalb, Baron Johann, with Washington at Valley Forge, 184; falls at Camden, 184.
 Democratic Party, split, 293.
 Democratic-Republican Party, formed by Thomas Jefferson, 215.
 De Soto, Hernando, portrait of, 23; makes an expedition to Florida, 23, 24; welcomed at Cuba, 23; extremely cruel to natives, 23; fights his way northward and inland, 24; discovers the Mississippi, 24, 25; crosses, and marches far northward and westward, 25; returns to the Mississippi and dies, 25; only half of army returns to Cuba, 25.
 Diego, son of Columbus, 5, 6.
 Digger Indians, 263.
 "Dogood Papers," 120.
 Dorchester Heights, 118.

- Douglas, Stephen A., debates with Lincoln, 291-293; nominated by northern Democrats, 294.
- Drake, Sir Francis, 34-38; portrait of, 34; ruined by Spaniards, he vows revenge on Spain, 34; returns to England with first capture of Spanish gold, 34; famous voyage around the world, 34-35; captures Spanish treasure ships in the Pacific, 35, 39; given title by Queen Elizabeth, 36; takes command of fleet to fight Spain, 36; destroys Spanish towns in Cuba, 37; sails into Cadiz and burns Spanish ships, 37; Spanish Armada sails for England, 37; Drake, aided by storm, destroys great fleet and permanently cripples power of Spain, 38; takes Raleigh's colony home, 41.
- "Drake," The, 173.
- Duquesne, Fort, 108, 109; captured, 111.
- Dutch, The, explorations, 49, 50; establish trading posts, 51; treaty with Indians, 51; fur trade, 52; settlement of New Netherland, 52, 53; governed by Stuyvesant, 54-57; surrender to the English, 57; Dutch ideas and customs, 58.
- Dutch traders, 51, 52.
- Dutch West India Company, 76.
- "EBENEZER," German colony in Georgia, 91.
- Edison, Thomas A., 248, 252; reads great books at twelve, 248; resourceful newsboy, 248, 249; experiments in telegraphy, 249; receives \$40,000 for his inventions before he is twenty-five, 250; builds first laboratory in Newark, 250; second at Menlo Park, N. J., 251; invents microphone, megaphone, and phonograph, 251; develops the electric light, 251; receives gold medals and diplomas from foreign powers, 252; builds greatest of laboratories at Orange, N. J., 252; portrait of, 250.
- "Elfinham," The, 180.
- Elliott, John, preaches to the Indians, 93.
- Elizabeth, Queen of England, knights Drake, 30; favors Raleigh, 39, 40; names Virginia, 40, 42.
- Emancipation Proclamation, 295.
- England, explorations made by, 30-42; reasons for claiming large part of North America, 32; quarrel between Spain and, 33-38; first permanent settlement in America, 54, 55; religious persecutions send to America Pilgrims and Puritans, 63-75; Quakers, 82-88; other Protestants, 91-92; English debtors, 89-92; French and Indian wars, 101, 106-110, 115; Revolutionary War, 101-183; War of 1812, 224-233.
- Erie the Red, 1; discovers Greenland, 1.
- Ericson, Leif, discovers Vinland, 1; Leif the Lucky, 1.
- Ericson, Thorvald, 1.
- Erie Canal, 239; effect of, 239.
- Erie, Lake, battle of, 224.
- Eutaw Springs, battle of, 167.
- FAIRFAX, Lord, 105, 106, 107, 113, 114; friend of Washington, 105; builds Georgetown Court, 106; makes Washington public surveyor, 106; returned to England, 125.
- Pair Oaks, battle of, 300.
- Faneuil Hall, 149.
- Fanning, General, 257.
- Farragut, Admiral, 308, 309; captures Confederate fleet and fort at Mobile Bay, 308, 309.
- Federalist Party, 215.
- Ferdinand and Isabella, 5, 13; Isabella, 7, 14.
- Ferguson, Colonel, 194, 195; defeated at King's Mountain, 196.
- Field, Cyrus W., 245-247; his early success, 245; becomes interested in telegraph lines, 245; conceives idea of connecting Europe and America, 245; aided by Peter Cooper and other wealthy men, 245; success after several failures, 246, 247; receives honors from many nations, 247; portrait of, 247.
- Filmore, President, 270.
- Firebrand of the Revolution, Samuel Adams, 146.
- Fitch, John, 235.
- Fletcher, Grace, 276.
- Florida, De Soto's expedition to, 23.
- Forbes, General, 111.
- Fort, see under names of forts.
- Franciscan friars, 260, 267.
- Franklin, Benjamin, 128-136; portrait of, 128; early life, 128; learns printing, reads books, 128, 129; writes for brother's paper, 129; goes to Philadelphia, 129, 130; Franklin in London, 130; 131; returns to Philadelphia editor of "Pennsylvania Gazette," 131; marries, 131; founds three great institutions, 131; invents stove, 131, forms first fire department in America, 131; "Poor Richard's Almanac," 131, 132; clerk of Pennsylvania Assembly, 132; postmaster general, 132; plans union of colonies, 133; becomes famed as scientist, 133; experiments with electricity, 133; sent to England to defend colonies, 134; appointed to help write Declaration of Independence, 135, 213, 214; sent to France, 135, 173; secures French aid for America, 135; helps make treaty of peace, 135; helps to make and signs Constitution, 135, 136.
- Fraunce's Tavern, 124.
- Frederica, 92.
- Fredericksburg, battle of, 300.
- Frederick the Great, 183.
- Fremont, John C., 209-205; portrait of, 261; early life, 260; goes to South America, 260; becomes a civil engineer, 260; loves the wild life, 261; marries Jessie Benton, 261; receives permission to explore the South Pass, 261; unfurls stars and stripes from summit of Fremont's Peak, 261; seeks more southerly route to Oregon and California, 261; reaches Great Salt Lake, 262; then goes to Fort Vancouver, 262; makes a circuit of Great Basin and crosses mountains to California, 262, 263; Fremont's third expedition, 264; in the Mexican War, 264; occupies Monterey, 264; elected to United States Senate, 265; makes his fifth expedition, 265; first Republican candidate for President, 265; major-general in Civil War, 265; governor of Arizona, 265; death, 265.
- Fremont's Peak, 261.
- French allies in Revolutionary War, 123, 180-184.
- French and Indian War, 101, 106-110, 115.
- French in North America, The, 44-48, 94-101, 106-110; discoverers and explorers, 44-48, 94-101; missionaries, 47-48, 94-101.
- Friends, see Quakers.
- Frontenac, Count, sends Joliet and Marquette to find the Mississippi, 47, 48; sends La Salle and Hennepin, 94.
- Frontenac, Fort, 94.
- Fulton, Robert, 235-238; starts life as portrait painter, 235; goes to England, meets James Watt, 235; becomes interested in driving power of steam, 235; makes trial steamboat in France, 236; associates himself with Livingston, 236; returns to America, builds the "Clermont," the first successful steamboat, 237; wonderful success of Fulton's invention, 237, 238.

Fur traders, 52, 94, 96, 100, 233.

GADSDEN, Christopher, 152.

Gage, General, 115, 161.

Gama, Vasco da, see *Da Gama, Vasco*.

George II, King of England, grants charter to Oglethorpe, 90.

George III, and the American Revolution, 119, 120, 125, 130, 140, 142, 143, 148, 152, 214.

Gettysburg, battle of, 301.

Gibault, Father, 201, 202.

Gilbert, Sir Humphrey, 39.

Gist, Christopher, 107, 108.

Gold, discovery of, 265.

Gold and silver mined, 313.

Gold Fleet, Spanish, 36.

Goliad, massacre of, 257.

Gooch, Daniel, 247.

Gore, Christopher, 276.

Grain elevators, 312.

Grant, Ulysses S., 305-307; at siege of Vicksburg, 306; made commander of Union army, 307; Lee surrenders to, 305; portrait of, 306.

Gray, Captain Robert, the first to carry the stars and stripes around the world, 218; discovers the Columbia River, 219.

Gray, —, invents telephone, 244.

Great Basin, Fremont explores, 262, 263.

Green Bay, 48.

Greene, Nathanael, 160-162, 165-168, 196; appointed to command of army in the South, 160; goes to Boston and meets Washington, 161; made one of Washington's generals, 161; portrait of, 161; divides his army, 162; Greene's great march, 165; at Guilford Court House, 165; drives British into Charleston, 167; honored by his country, 167; praises General Marion, 168.

Greenland, discovered by Northmen, 1.

Greenway Court, 106, 111.

Grenville, Sir Richard, 40.

Guatemotzin, statue of, 18.

Guilford Court House, battle of, 166.

HALE, Nathan, 118, 157-159; in college, 157; joins Washington, 158; captures British man-of-war, 158; passes safely through British lines, 159; captured, 159; dies, 159.

"Half Moon," 49.

Hamilton, General, 202, 204.

Hancock, John, 153, 156, 213.

Hanks, John, 288, 289, 293.

Harlem Heights, 118.

Harrison, Benjamin, 125, 213.

Harrison, William Henry, elected President, 278, 291.

Harvard Elm, 117.

Hawkins, Captain, 34.

Hayne, Senator, 277, 278.

"Hearts Content," 247.

Helm, Captain, 202.

Henderson, Richard, 187.

Hennepin, missionary, 94; his altar, 95.

Henry VII, King of England, 31-33.

Henry VIII, 33.

Henry, Patrick, 133, 139-146, 211, 214; portrait of, 139; birth and parentage, 140; opposes the Stamp Act, 139, 140; early failures, 141; succeeds as lawyer, 141; orator of the Revolution, 144, 140-146, 147; first great speech, 141, 142; elected to House of Burgesses, 142; speaks

against Stamp Act, 142; sent to Continental Congress, 143; meets Samuel Adams, 143, 152; offers resolutions for arming Virginia, 144; defends them in greatest speech, 144, 145; in forefront of struggle with England, 145, 146; statue of, 146; aided George Rogers Clark in raising an army, 199, 200.

Henry, Prince of Portugal, 3.

Hermitage, The, 233.

Hessians, The, 119, 120.

Hobkirk's Hill, 167.

Horseshoe Bend, battle of, 228, 254.

Houston, General Sam, 254-258; portrait of, 255; lives with the Cherokees, 254; wounded in battle of Horseshoe Bend, 254; studies law, 254; goes to Congress, 255; governor of Tennessee, 255; returns to Cherokees, 255; visits Washington, 255; goes to Texas, 256; in Texas war with Mexico, 256-258; commands the Texans, 257; at the battle of San Jacinto, 257, 258; elected first president of Texas, 258; wants Texas part of the United States, 258; sent to U. S. Senate, 258; dies, 258.

Howe, General, 118, 121.

Hudson Bay Company, 262.

Hudson, Henry, 49, 50; discovers Hudson River, 49; portrait, 49; Indians kind, Hudson cruel, 50; seeks northwest passage, 50; sailors send him adrift, 50.

Hudson River, 49.

ICELAND, discovered by Northmen, 1.

Illinois River, discovered, 48.

Inca, captured by Pizarro, 22.

Independence, Declaration of, see *Declaration of Independence*.

India, search for new route to, 3-14; Columbus discovers new world by sailing west to, 8-11; Magellan first to reach, by sailing west, 28; Cabot discovers coast of North America by sailing northwest to, 31-33; Hudson sails into Hudson River and Hudson Bay, trying to find northern sea route to, 49, 50.

Indian corn, taken to England, 41.

Indians, first seen by white men, 10; named by Columbus, 11; Cortés and the Mexican Indians, 17-20; great Indian city, 17-20; difference in Spanish and Indian fighting, 18; Indians cruelly treated by De Soto, 23, 24; Indians welcomed Raleigh's sailors, 40; Lane cruel to Indians, 40; why they became hostile to English settlers, 40; Algonquins and Iroquois bitter foes, Champlain, friendly with Algonquins, helped fight Iroquois and caused Iroquois to hate the French, 44-47; Marquette loved by Indians, 48; carried his remains to Mackinac, 48; Indians friendly with Hudson, he repaid them with cruelty, and turned their friendship to hatred, 49, 50; Indians liked and traded with Dutch, 51, 52; but robbed and murdered by some traders they retaliated, 53; Indians and the Jamestown colony, 56-60; Pilgrims lived in friendship with Indians, 68-70; John Eliot and the Indians, 73; King Philip, story of, 73, 74; Penn's treaty with Indians, 86-87; Oglethorpe made treaty with Indians, 92; Iroquois displeased with La Salle, 95; Illinois Indians friendly to French, 97-99; Iroquois foes of Illinois Indians, 98, 99; Canadian Indians took side of French, and Iroquois that of English in French and Indian War, 100; French trappers

- and the Indians, 100, 101; Indian war dance, 105; Indians fight for French, 100-111; Indians visited by Lafayette, 180; Boone's early troubles with Indians, 186, 187; they captured his daughter, 189; they fought with British in Revolutionary War, 189-191; took Boone prisoner, 190; attacked Booneboro, 190, 191; Sevier and the Indians, 192-194, 196; Clark and the Indians in Virginia and Kentucky, 198, 199; Jackson broke power of the Creeks, 228; Seminole War, 231; Houston and the Cherokee, 254-256; Indians friendly to Lewis and Clark, 219-222; statue of Sacajawea, 221; Nez Percé, 221, 223; Digger Indians, 263.
- Indigo**, 93.
- Iron mines**, 314; manufacture of iron products, 314, 315.
- Iroquois Indians**, 45-47, 51, 95, 97-98, 100, 133.
- Isabella**, Queen of Spain, see **Ferdinand and Isabella**.
- Italians**, 91.
- JACKSON, Andrew**, 225-233, 250, 278, 295; early life, 225; taken prisoner by the English, 226; loses mother, 226; lawyer before twenty, 226; emigrates to Tennessee, 226, 227; appointed United States Senator, 227; Jackson in War of 1812, 227-230, 254; winning name of "Old Hickory," 228; fights Indians, breaks power of the Creeks, 228; sent to guard New Orleans, 229; battle of New Orleans, 229, 230; twice elected President, 231; Jackson and the United States Bank, 231, 232; nullification, 232; orders war vessels to South Carolina, 232; dies at the "Hermitage," 233.
- Jackson, General "Stonewall,"** 300, 307-308; at Bull Run, 307; at Chancellorsville, 307; death, 308.
- James I**, King of England put Raleigh to death, 42; gave London Company a charter, 54.
- Jamestown**, settled, 54; life in the colony, 54-58; negro slaves brought to, 62; tobacco raised at, 62.
- Jefferson, Thomas**, 210-218; early life, 210; studies law, 211; meets Patrick Henry, 211; member of House of Burgesses, 211; marries, 212; "committee of correspondence," 212; Jefferson and the Declaration of Independence, 213, 214; governor of Virginia, 214; minister to France, 214; first Secretary of State, 215; leader of Democratic-Republican Party, 215, 272; elected President, 215; purchases Louisiana, 216, 217; sends out Lewis and Clark Expedition, 217; elected President second time, 218; "Sage of Monticello," 218; portrait of, 216.
- Johnson, President**, 217.
- Johnson, General Joseph E.**, 300, 303.
- Johnson, Sarah Bush**, stepmother of President Lincoln, 287.
- Joliet**, 47, 48, 94; with Marquette sets out to find the Mississippi, 48; sails down the river, 48.
- Jones, John Paul**, 171-175; portrait of, 171; early life, 171; enters American navy, 172; shows his mettle in West Indies, 172; sent to France, 173; his dash into Whitehaven, 173; fine sea-fighting on English coast, 173; captain of "Bon Homme Richard," 173; famous sea-fight with "Serapis," 174, 175; great naval hero, 175; bones brought to America, 175.
- KANSAS-NEBRASKA Bill**, 291-293.
- Kaskaskia**, Clark's surprise at, 201, 202.
- Keith, Sir William**, 130.
- Kieft, Governor**, 53.
- King Philip**, Indian Chief, 73-74.
- Kings Mountain**, battle of, 161, 195, 196.
- Knox, General**, 178.
- Kosciuszko, Tadeusz**, 183; colonel of engineers, 183; fortifies Bemis Heights and plans forts at West Point, 183; fights for his native Poland, 183; at Savannah, 183.
- LABRADOR**, discovered by John Cabot, 31.
- Lachine**, 94.
- Lafayette, Marquis de**, 178, 180-183; portrait of, 180; comes to America, 180; made general by Congress, 180; joins Washington's army, 180; wounded at Brandywine, 121, 180; at Valley Forge, 180; aids Washington to capture Cornwallis, 123, 166, 181; visits Washington after the war, 181; Lafayette's part in French Revolution, 181, 182; prisoner in Austria, 182; freed by Napoleon, 182; visits United States, 182, 183; rewarded by Congress, 183; dies, 183; monument for him given by American school children, 183.
- Lake Superior iron "ranges,"** 314.
- Lane, Ralph**, 40.
- La Salle, Robert Cavalier, Sieur de**, 94-100; seeks Canada, 94; helps build Fort Frontenac, 94; returns to France and gets permission to explore Mississippi Valley, 95; builds the "Griffin," first ship on Great Lakes, 95-97; sets out for Mississippi, 96; builds Fort Crèvecoeur, 97; plans union of Indian tribes, 98; journeys to mouth of Mississippi, 99; takes possession for France, 99; builds Fort St. Louis on Starved Rock, 99; returns to France and brings over colony, 100; killed by disappointed colonists, 100.
- "Lawrence,"** The Perry's flagship, 224.
- Lee, Henry**, "Light Horse Harry," 162, 298.
- Lee, Richard Henry**, 114, 152, 156, 213.
- Lee, Robert E.**, 298-304; holds honor rank at West point, 298; marries Mary Custis, 299; comes into possession of Arlington, 299; wins fame and honor in Mexican War, 299; in charge at West Point, 299; in the Civil War, goes with his state, 299; in charge of Confederate army at Richmond, 300; defeats McClellan, 300; retreats from Maryland after battle of Antietam, 300; defeats Union army at Fredericksburg and Chancellorsville, 300; defeated at battle of Gettysburg, 301; holds his own in the "Wilderness," 302; holds Grant at bay in Petersburg, 303; plans to join Johnston, 303; Sheridan blocks the way, 303; surrenders to Grant, 303, 305; president of Washington College, Lexington, Va., 304; death, 304; portrait of, 303.
- Leif the Lucky**, 1.
- Lewis and Clark Expedition**, 219-223; sent to explore Louisiana Purchase, 217, 218, 219; start from St. Louis, 219; Lewis and Clark hold meeting with the Indians, 219; portrait of Captain Merriwether Lewis, 219; portrait of Captain William Clark, 220; explorers spend winter with Indians, 220; resume journey in spring, cross Rocky Mountains, 220; suffer from hunger and cold, 221; reach Columbia River, 221; reach the Pacific, 222; stay on Pacific coast, 222; return to St. Louis after two years' absence, 222; rewarded by Congress, 223;

- Lewis made Governor of Louisiana Territory, Clark of Missouri Territory, 223.
- Lewis, Merriwether, see Lewis and Clark Expedition.
- Lexington, battle of, 115, 154, 161.
- "Lexington," The, 176.
- Lincoln, Abraham, 286-296; born in Kentucky backwoods, moves to Indiana, 286; industrious boy, 286, 287; Lincoln and his mother, 287; has a wise stepmother, 287; educates himself, 287, 288; hard worker and good story-teller, 288; goes to Illinois, 288, 289; takes flatboat to New Orleans, 289; what he saw there and what he said, 289; clerk in a store, 289; Lincoln in the Black Hawk War, 289, 290; goes to Illinois legislature, 290; likes stump speaking, 290; speaks for General Harrison and Henry Clay, 291; goes to Congress, 291; the champion against Douglas, 291; in the United States Senate, 291, 292; the Lincoln-Douglas debates, 292, 293; nominated for President, 293; elected, 294; inaugural address, 294, 295; calls for troops, 295; offers Lee promotion to fight for Union, 299; issues Emancipation Proclamation, 295; goes to Richmond, 296; assassinated, 296; monuments, 296; portrait, 295.
- Lincoln, General, 160.
- Lincoln, Nancy Hanks, 287.
- Livingston, Robert R., helps draw up Declaration of Independence, 213; helps make Louisiana Purchase, 216, 217; aids Fulton, 236, 237.
- Locomotive, invented, 240.
- Loe, Thomas, 82.
- London Company, The, formed, given charter by King James, 54.
- "Lone Star Republic," 258.
- Longstreet, William, 235.
- "Lost Colony," The, 41, 42.
- Louisiana Purchase, 216-218; explored by Lewis and Clark, 310-322.
- Louisiana Purchase Exposition, 218.
- "Luzerne," The, 178.
- McCLELLAN, General, defeated by Lee, 300; defeats Lee at Antietam, 300.
- Mace, Samuel, 41.
- Madison, James, 146, 229.
- Magellan, Ferdinand, portrait of, 26; first to sail around earth and prove it round, 26-28; sails westward to India, 26; rounds South America, 27; first to cross and name Pacific Ocean, 27, 28; visits the Philippines, 28; killed defending his sailors, 28.
- Magellan, Strait of, discovered, 27; Drake sails through, 34.
- Manhattan Island, trading posts established on, 51; purchase of, 52, 53.
- Marconi, invents wireless telegraphy, 244.
- Mariannes, 28.
- Marion, Francis, 162, 167, 168; portrait of, 167; the "Swamp Fox," 167, 168; Marion's "brigade," 167-169; how they fought, 168; sets free 150 prisoners, 168; honored by friends, 168, 169; the potato feast, 169.
- Marquette, Father, 47-48, 99; mission at Mackinac, 48; joins Joliet, 48; falls ill, 48; dies, 48; his bones carried by Indians to mission at Mackinac, 48.
- Massachusetts Bay, Colony of, 72.
- Massasoit, Indian Chief, 68, 69, 74.
- "Mayflower," Pilgrims sail in, 64, 65, 67, 71, 265.
- Meat packing, 313.
- Mexican Indians, 17-20.
- Mexico, invaded and conquered by Cortés, 17-21; mines of, 21; war with United States, 256-259, 272, 283; California in Mexican War, 264; Lee in Mexican War, 299.
- "Mill Boy of the Slashes," 269.
- Mim's Fort, massacre at, 228.
- Mines and mining, 313, 314.
- Minuit, Peter, first governor of New Netherland, 52, 53.
- Minutemen, 152-154, 161.
- Mississippi River, discovered by De Soto, 24, 25; explored by Joliet and Marquette, 47, 48; La Salle reached mouth of, 99; western boundary of United States, 216.
- Missouri Compromise, 271, 291.
- Missouri River, Falls of the, 220.
- "Mohawks," 150, 151.
- Monmouth, battle of, 122, 183.
- Monroe, James, 182, 216, 217, 281.
- Montezuma, 19.
- Monticello, home of Jefferson, 212, 214, 215, 218.
- Moravians, 91.
- Morgan, General, 162, 163-166, 196, 254; fights French and Indians, 163; helps capture Burgoyne, 163; complimented by Burgoyne, 163; at battle of Cowpens, 163-165; portrait of, 164; joins Greene, 165; last days, 165, 166.
- Morse, Samuel F. B., 241-244; early life, 241; paints portraits but is interested in electricity, 241; plans instrument, 241; meets helper in Alfred Vail, 242; invention completed, 242, 243; Morse gets government aid, 243, 244; receives rewards and honors 244; portrait of, 244.
- Moultrie, Colonel, 160.
- Mount Vernon, 103, 105, 107, 109, 111, 112, 123-125, 181, 182, 212.
- Murray, Mrs., entertains Lord Howe, 118.
- NAPOLEON, sells Louisiana Territory to the United States, 216, 217, 229.
- Necessity, Fort, 108.
- Negro slaves, in English colonies, 62.
- New Amsterdam, 53; becomes New York, 79.
- New England, colonies planted in, 54, 65, 71; industries, manners, and customs, 74-75.
- New France, 47; fall of, 100; trappers, soldiers, and missionaries, 100, 101.
- New Netherland, settlement of, 52, 53; industries, manners, and customs, 80-81.
- New Orleans, battle of (War of 1812), 229, 230.
- Newport, Captain, 54, 56.
- New York, New Amsterdam becomes, 79; William and Mary give representative Assembly to, 79; British in, 118, 122, 123; Washington inaugurated in, 126, 127.
- Nez Percé Indians, 221, 223.
- "Niagara," The, 224, 246.
- "Nina," 8, 11.
- "Nolichucky Jack," 194, 196, 197.
- "No-Man's Land," 180.
- North Carolina, visited by John Cabot, 32.
- Northmen, voyages of, 1; in Iceland and Greenland, 1; discover Vinland, 1.
- "North River," The, originally the "Clermont," 237.
- Nullification, and President Jackson, 232, 282.
- Webster's great speech on, 277, 278; Calhoun favors, 281; South Carolina and, 232, 282.

- OGLETHORPE, James**, 80-92; portrait of, 90; friend of the unfortunate, 80, 90; gets grant from George II. settles Georgia, 80-92; industries, manners, and customs of southern planters, 92, 93.
- "**Old Hickory**," 228, 259.
- Old North Church**, 153.
- Old South Church**, 149, 150.
- Orange, Fort**, 53, 70.
- Oregon country**, Lewis and Clark Expedition sent to, 219, 222, 223; sought by fur traders and missionaries, 223; United States and Great Britain occupy, 223; northern boundary established, 223; Benton speaks on the, 261.
- "**PACIFICATOR**," The, 272.
- Pacific Ocean**, named and first sailed by Magellan, 27; Drake first Englishman to see, 34.
- Pakenham, General**, 230.
- Palos**, 6, 8, 11, 12.
- Parker**, —, 223.
- Parsons' Case**, The, 14, 142.
- Patagonia**, 26, 34.
- Patroons**, The, 53, 77.
- "**Pelican**," The, Drake's ship, 34, 35.
- Penn, Admiral**, 82, 83, 84.
- Penn, William**, 82-87; portrait, 83; becomes a Quaker and is expelled from college, 82; his father sends him to Paris and Ireland to cure him, without success, 83; King Charles and, 83, 84; driven from home by father, his mother makes peace, 84; founds Pennsylvania as home for Quakers, 84; invites all persecuted people, 85; founds Philadelphia, 85; famous treaty with the Indians, 86, 87; crowds of settlers from Germany, 87; dies, 87.
- Penn's Woods**, 87.
- "**Pennsylvania Dutch**," 87.
- Pennsylvania** founded, 84; Quaker ways, 87-88.
- "**Pennsylvania Gazette**," 131.
- Pen of the Revolution**, Samuel Adams, 146.
- Perry, Oliver Hazard**, 224-225; portrait of, 224; midshipman at fourteen, 224; lieutenant in war against Barbary pirates, 224; ordered to Lake Erie, War of 1812, 224; builds ships, 224; battle of Lake Erie, 224-225; Perry highly honored, 225.
- Peru**, Pizarro in, 21, 22; riches in, 22.
- Petersburg**, siege of, 303.
- Philadelphia**, founded, 85, 86; first Continental Congress met at, 151; Second Continental Congress met at, 155; Declaration of Independence, 150; British at, 121, 122.
- Philippines**, Magellan visits, 28.
- Phonograph**, The, 251.
- Pickett, General George E.**, 301.
- Pierce, President**, 215.
- Pilgrims**, the, 63, 71; persecuted, seek Holland, 63; come to America, 64, 65; land in America, 65-69; settle at Plymouth, 67, 68; build homes in the forest, 67; make friends with Indians, 68-70; Thanksgiving, 69, 70.
- "**Pinta**," The, 8, 9, 11.
- Pinzon**, 7; sails with Columbus, 8.
- Pitt, Fort**, 111.
- Pitt, William**, 111, 134, 142, 213.
- Pittsburg Landing**, 248.
- Pizarro, Francisco**, 21-22; marches army to Cuzco and finds vast wealth, 22; killed by his men, 22.
- Plymouth**, landing place of Pilgrims, 67.
- Plymouth Rock**, 67.
- Pocahontas**, 57-61; rescues John Smith, 57; carries corn to settlers, 58; warns them of danger, 58; marries John Rolfe, 60; received as a princess in England, 60, 61; portrait of, 61; dies, 61; her son returns to America, 61.
- Ponce de Leon**, 15-16; takes possession of Florida, 16; dies, 16.
- "**Poor Richard's Almanac**," 131, 132.
- Pope, General**, 300.
- Port Royal** founded, 44.
- Potato**, white, taken to England, 41.
- Powhatan**, famous Indian chief, 57-60.
- Prescott, Colonel**, 154.
- Princeton**, 121.
- "**Priscilla**," 64.
- "**Puffing Billy**," 240.
- Pulaski, Casimir**, given command of cavalry, 183; attacks Savannah, 183; mortally wounded, 183.
- Puritans**, 71, 72, 84; in England, 71; seek America, 71; colony at Salem, 71; found Boston, 71, 72; colony of Massachusetts Bay, 72; what they gave up, 72.
- QUAKERS**, 82-88; industries, manners, and customs, 87-88.
- Quebec**, founded, 44; expedition against, 111; fall of, 101.
- RAILROADS**, 230, 240; the first railroad, 230, 240; George Stephenson, 240; locomotive invented, 240; railroads to the Pacific coast, 240.
- Raleigh, Sir Walter**, 38-42, 54, 55; portrait of, 39; as student, soldier, seaman, 38; wins favor with Queen Elizabeth, 39; plants colonies in America, 39-42; Roanoke Island Colony carried back to England by Drake, 37; turkeys, potatoes, and Indian corn taken to England, 41; the lost colony, 41-42; James I puts Raleigh to death, 42.
- "**Raleigh**," The, 177.
- "**Ranger**," The, Paul Jones's first ship, 173.
- "**Ranges**," of Lake Superior, 314.
- Reed, Deborah**, wife of Franklin, 130, 131.
- Refrigerator cars**, 313.
- Republican Party**, 265, 291.
- Resources and industries of our country**, 310-315; cotton fields and factories, 310, 311; the wheat belt of America, 311; export of wheat, 312; cattle raising and meat packing, 312-313; fattening of cattle, 313; meat-packing plants, 313; refrigerator cars, 313; mines, 313; coal, 314; iron, 314; manufactures, 314, 315.
- Revere, Paul**, 151-153; midnight ride, 153.
- Rice**, in the South, 93.
- Roanoke Island**, 40, 41.
- Rochambeau, Count**, sent to America, 181.
- Rocky Mountains**, 220, 223, 261.
- Rolfe, John**, 50, 60.
- Rolfe, Thomas**, 61.
- Rumsey, James**, 235.
- "**Sage of Monticello**," 218.
- St. Lawrence River**, French on, 44-47.
- St. Louis, Fort**, 90.
- Salem**, colony at, 71, 72.
- Samoset**, 68.
- San Antonio**, 250.
- San Jacinto**, battle of, 257.
- San Salvador**, discovered by Columbus, 70, 11.
- Santa Anna**, General, 254, 257, 259.
- "**Santa Maria**," 8.
- Savannah**, founded, 91; captured by British, 160.

- Scott, General, 232, 263.
 Seminole Indians, 31.
 "Serapis," The, 174.
 Serra, Junipero, 266.
 Sevier, John, 192-197, 226; portrait of, 192; goes to school at Fredericksburg, 192; famous Indian fighter, 192; captain in Washington's regiment, 192; personality, 192, 193; joins Robertson on the Watauga, 193; siege of Fort Watauga, 193; story of Kate Sherrill, 193, 194; moves to the Nolichucky, 194; lavish hospitality, 194; in the Revolution, 194-196; with backwoodsmen fights battle of Kings Mountain, 195, 196; destroys Indian towns, 196; most famous of Indian fighters, 196; governor of Tennessee, 196; dies while working, 197.
 Shawnee Indians, 198.
 Shelby, Colonel, 194.
 Sherman, Roger, 213.
 Sherrill, Kate, 193.
 Smith, John, 55-59, 67; portrait, 55; as a soldier, 55; queer coat of arms, 55; comes to Virginia, 55; taken prisoner by the Indians, 56; condemned to death by Powhatan, and saved by Pocahontas, 57; returns to Jamestown and restores order there, 57, 59; makes Indians feed settlers during the winter, but makes settlers work in the spring, 53, 59; accidentally wounded, returns to England, 59; on last visit to America, explores coast of, and names New England, 59; meets Pocahontas in England, 60, 61.
 "Soldier's Rest," Morgan's home, 165.
 "Sons of Liberty," 143, 148.
 South Pass, 223, 261.
 Spain, claim to America through Columbus, 9-14; through Cortés and Pizarro in Mexico and South America, 17-22; Coronado and De Soto in North America, 22-25; why Spain took less interest in what is now United States than in Mexico and South America, 25; Englishmen check progress of Spain in North America, 33-38, 92; Spanish missions in the Southwest, 265-267.
 Spanish Armada, The, 37, 38, 41.
 Spanish Missions in the Southwest, 265-267; in San Diego, 266; in California, 266; life at, 266, 267; treatment of Indians at the missions, 267; end of and present condition, 267.
 "Speedwell," The, 64, 65.
 Spottsylvania, battle of, 302.
 Squanto, friend of Pilgrims, 68-70.
 Stamp Act, 114, 134, 139, 142, 147, 211.
 Standish, Miles, 63, 64, 66, 67, 68, 70; portrait, 68.
 Starved Rock, 97, 98, 99, 100.
 Steamboat, the, invented by Fulton, 235-237, 238.
 Steel, manufacture of, 314.
 Steuben, Baron von, 183; on staff of Frederick the Great, 183; joins Washington and drills the Continental Army, 122, 183; spends his fortune for soldiers, 183.
 Steuben bayonet charge, 122, 183.
 Stephenson, George, 240.
 Stewart, Boone's companion, 186, 187.
 Strait of Magellan, see Magellan.
 Stuyvesant, Peter, 76-80; portrait of, 77; in West Indies, 76; governor of New Amsterdam, 77-79; makes strict laws, 77; disputes with people, 78; surrenders to English, 79-80.
 Sumter, Fort, 295.
 Sumter, Thomas, 162.
 Sutter, Colonel, 263.
 Sutters Fort, 263.
 TARIFF law, compromise, 271, 272.
 Tarleton, Colonel, sent to capture Morgan, 162; defeated at the battle of the Cowpens, 163-165; stories of, 164; sent to capture Marion, 168; Andrew Jackson and, 226.
 Tea tax, 114, 142, 143, 148-151, 211.
 Tecumseh, 228.
 Telegraph, the, invented by Morse, 241-244; wireless by Marconi, 244.
 Telephone, the, invented by Bell and Gray, 244.
 Texas, annexation of, 258, 259.
 Thanksgiving, the first American, 69, 70.
 Ticonderoga, 45, 117.
 Tobacco, chief crop of Virginia planters, 62.
 Tonti, comes to America with La Salle, 95; goes to hunt "Griffin," 97, 98; put in command of Fort St. Louis, 99; seeks La Salle's ill-tated colony, 100; returns to Starved Rock, 100.
 Tories, 148, 168.
 Trade routes to Asia, old, 2; Turks destroy, 3.
 "Traveler," Lee's famous horse, 304.
 Treaties: Treaty of 1783 (Revolutionary War), 123, 135; Treaty of Ghent (War of 1812), 230, 271; Treaty of 1846 (Northern Boundary of United States established), 223.
 Trenton, 119, 121.
 Turkey, wild, found in America, 41.
 Tyler, President, 278, 283.
 "UNITED STATES," The, 179.
 United States Bank, and President Jackson, 231, 232.
 United States, Resources and Industries of, 310-315.
 VAIL, Alfred, 242, 243.
 Valley Forge, 121, 122, 183.
 Van Buren, President, 233.
 Vancouver, Fort, 262.
 Van Rensselaer, a patroon, 53.
 Vernon, Admiral, 103.
 Vespucci, Amerigo, 14.
 Vicksburg, siege of, 306.
 Victoria, Queen, 246.
 Vincennes, campaign against, 200-204.
 Vinland, visited by the Northerners, 1.
 Virginia, named by Queen Elizabeth, 40; colony planted in, 42, 54; life in the colony, 62; slavery introduced into, 62; Virginia sends her best men to Continental Congress, 114, 143; arms her men for the Revolution, 145; old days in Virginia, 111, 112; the change in Virginia, 125; industries, manners, and customs, 61-62.
 WAR OF 1812, heroes of the, 224-233; Perry in, 224, 225; Jackson in, 227-233; Clay's part in, 270-271; Webster's part in, 276; Calhoun's work in, 281; treaty of peace made at Ghent, 271.
 Warren, General Joseph, 155.
 Washington, Augustine, 102.
 Washington, Colonel, 162, 163-165.
 Washington, George, 101-127, 133, 146, 152, 158, 160, 161, 171, 180, 216, 298; birthday and birthplace, 101; his mother, 102, 103; Lawrence Washington, 103; George a hard student and an athlete, 103; skilled horseback rider and a woodsman, 104; meets Lord Fairfax, 105; as a surveyor, 105,

- 106, 133; life in the wilderness and at Greenway Court, 106; as a soldier against the French, 106-110; sent to order the French out of Virginia territory, 107, 108; builds Fort Necessity, 108, 109; joins Braddock's army, 109; Braddock's defeat, 110; Colonel Washington visits Boston, 110; meets Martha Custis, 111; Fort Duquesne captured, 111; Washington married, 111, 112; elected to House of Burgesses, 112; life at Mount Vernon, 113, 114; mutterings of war, 114, 115; Washington sent to Continental Congress, 114; made Commander-in-chief of American armies, 115, 134, 155, 156; appreciation by John Adams, 115, 116; Washington's modesty, 113, 116; takes command of army, 117; appoints Schuyler to take command in New York, 117; outwits Howe, 118; British capture New York, 118; Washington retreats but fights, 119; his victory at Trenton, 119-121; defeats British at Princeton, 121; battle of the Brandywine, 121; Washington at Valley Forge, 121, 122; victory at Yorktown, 123, 181; peace with England, 123; Washington bids farewell to army and returns to Mount Vernon, 124, 125; chairman of meeting to make Constitution, 125, 136; elected first President, 125, 215; the people show their love for "The Father of His Country," 126, 127; re-elected President and refuses third term, 127, 218; character of Washington's administration, 127; intercedes with French government for Lafayette, 182; dies, 127; portrait, 123.
- Washington, Lawrence, 103, 104, 106.
- Washington, William, 162.
- Watauga, Fort, 193.
- Watt, James, 235, 236.
- Webster Daniel, 275-280, 295; early life, 275; best student at Dartmouth, 275; loved public speaking, 275; studied law, married, 276; Webster in Congress, 276; in the Senate, 231, 277; opposed nullification, 277, 278, in Harrison's cabinet, 278; supported the Compromise of 1850, 278, 279; Secretary of State, 279; dies at Marshfield, 280.
- Wellington, Duke of, 230.
- West, Benjamin, 235.
- West Indies, Columbus discovers and explores 11, 13; devastated by Drake, 37; Paul Jones expedition to, 172.
- West Point, Lee at, 298, 299.
- Wheat belt of America, 311; agricultural machinery, 311, 312; grain elevators, 312.
- Whig Party, The, 272, 291, 293.
- White, John, 41.
- White Plains, 118.
- Whitehaven, Paul Jones's exploit at, 173.
- Whitman, —, missionary, 223.
- Whitney, Eli, 207-209; in his father's tool shop, 207; goes to Savannah, 207; invited to Mulberry Grove, 207; becomes interested in cotton, 208; experiments with machine to pick seed from cotton, 208-209; invents cotton gin, 209; effect of invention, 209, 310.
- Wilderness, fighting in the, 302.
- "Wilderness Road," 188.
- William and Mary, 79.
- Williamsburg, 139, 140, 143, 210, 211.
- Winthrop, John, 71-72, 84, 128.
- Wolfe, General, 111, 133; fall of Quebec, 101, 111, 133.
- Wyeth, Nathaniel, 223.
- YADKIN RIVER, Greene crosses, 165; Boone on the Yadkin, 185, 187.
- York, Duke of, 78.
- Yorktown, victory at, 123, 166, 167, 181, 183.

LIBRARY OF CONGRESS



0 011 527 009 6



Wholesale Price. 35c.

Exchange Price. 17 1/2c.

"The price fixed herein is fixed by State contract and any deviation therefrom shall be reported to your County Superintendent of Public Instruction, or the State Superintendent at Nashville."